



Owner's Manual

RX 300 / RX 350 / RX 350L



©2019 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

2 TABLE OF CONTENTS

For your information	6
Reading this manual	10
How to search	11
Pictorial index	12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use	
Before driving	38
For safe driving	39
Seat belts	40
SRS airbags	44
Front passenger occupant classification system	53
Exhaust gas precautions	58
1-2. Child safety	
Airbag manual on-off system	59
Riding with children	60
Child restraint systems (except for Korea)	61
Child restraint systems (for Korea)	96
1-3. Theft deterrent system	
Engine immobilizer system	106
Double locking system	109
Alarm	110

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster	
Warning lights and indicators	116
Gauges and meters	121
Multi-information display	125
Head-up display	134
Fuel consumption information	138

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information	
Keys	142
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors	
Side doors	146
Back door	151
Power back door	154
Smart entry & start system	166
3-3. Adjusting the seats	
Front seats	179
Rear seats	180
Driving position memory	193
Head restraints	196
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors	
Steering wheel	199
Inside rear view mirror	200
Outside rear view mirrors	201
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof	
Power windows	204
Moon roof	207
Panoramic moon roof	209

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving	
Driving the vehicle	216
Cargo and luggage	222
Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)	223

Trailer towing (for South Africa)	224		
4-2. Driving procedures			
Engine (ignition) switch	229		
Automatic transmission.....	233		
Turn signal lever	238		
Parking brake	239		
Brake Hold.....	242		
4-3. Operating the lights and wipers			
Headlight switch.....	244		
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System).....	247		
Automatic High Beam	251		
Fog light switch	253		
Windshield wipers and washer	255		
Rear window wiper and washer	260		
4-4. Refueling			
Opening the fuel tank cap.....	261		
4-5. Using the driving support systems			
Lexus Safety System +	264		
PCS (Pre-Collision System).....	270		
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist).....	278		
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control).....	287		
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range.....	295		
Dynamic radar cruise control	304		
Cruise control	312		
Stop & Start system.....	314		
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	320		
PKSA (Parking Support Alert)	330		
Lexus parking assist-sensor	332		
RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) function	339		
PKSB (Parking Support Brake)	344		
Parking Support Brake function (static objects).....	350	1	
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles).....	356		2
Driving mode select switch	360		
All-wheel drive lock switch.....	362		
GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system.....	363		3
Driving assist systems	364		
4-6. Driving tips			4
Winter driving tips	370		
Eco-friendly driving tips.....	373		5
Utility vehicle precautions.....	375		
5 Interior features			6
5-1. Remote Touch/Display			7
Remote Touch.....	378		
Center Display.....	380		
5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge			8
Lexus Climate Concierge	383		
5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger			
Front automatic air conditioning system.....	384		
Rear automatic air conditioning system.....	396		
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators	399		

4 TABLE OF CONTENTS

5-4. Using the interior lights	
Interior lights list.....	402
5-5. Using the storage features	
List of storage features	405
Luggage compartment features	411
5-6. Using the other interior features	
Other interior features	416
Garage door opener.....	425

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care	
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior	432
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	435
6-2. Maintenance	
Maintenance requirements	438
Scheduled maintenance	440
6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance	
Do-it-yourself service precautions	451
Hood	453
Positioning a floor jack.....	453
Engine compartment.....	455
Tires	464
Tire inflation pressure.....	475
Wheels.....	477
Air conditioning filter.....	478
Windshield wiper inserts	480
Electronic key battery	482
Checking and replacing fuses	484
Light bulbs.....	485

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information	
Emergency flashers	496
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency	496
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water	497
7-2. Steps to take in an emergency	
If your vehicle needs to be towed	499
If you think something is wrong	503
Fuel pump shut off system	504
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds.....	505
If a warning message is displayed	514
If you have a flat tire	517
If the engine will not start	531
If you lose your keys.....	533
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened	533
If the electronic key does not operate properly	534
If the vehicle battery is discharged	537
If your vehicle overheats.....	541
If the vehicle becomes stuck ...	544

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications	
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)	546

Fuel information.....	558
8-2. Customization	
Customizable features	559
8-3. Initialization	
Items to initialize	573
Index	
What to do if... (Troubleshooting)	576
Alphabetical Index	579

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine (for Korea)

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine

Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

- Engine speed/Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems, such as the ABS and pre-collision system

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder (except for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder (for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various safety systems in your vehicle (e.g., the airbags, seat belts and ABS) were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

The EDR can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, personal data acquired during a defect investigation could be used to manage crash records. A person provided by the

Minister of Land Infrastructure and Transport could extract and analyze EDR data for official purpose.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the

SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.



WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or panoramic moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

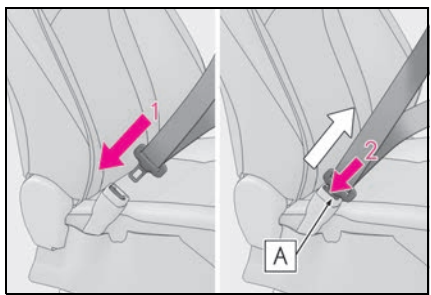
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual.

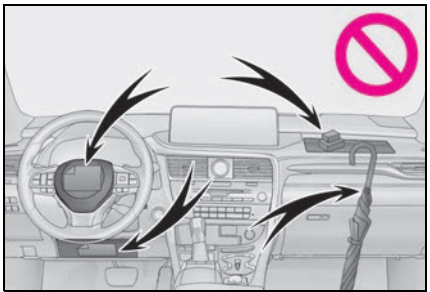
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

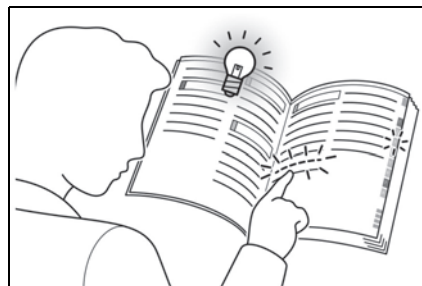
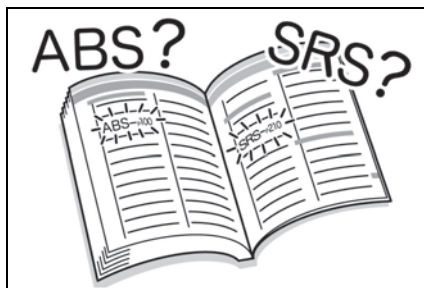


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means Do not , Do not do this , or Do not let this happen .

How to search

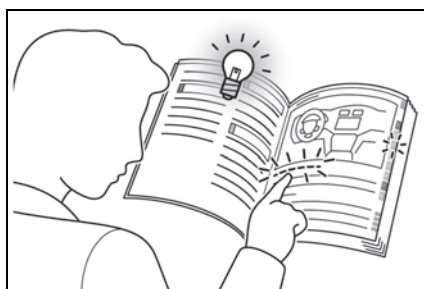
■ Searching by name

- Alphabetical index: →P.579



■ Searching by installation position

- Pictorial index: →P.12



■ Searching by symptom or sound

- What to do if... (Troubleshooting):
→P.576

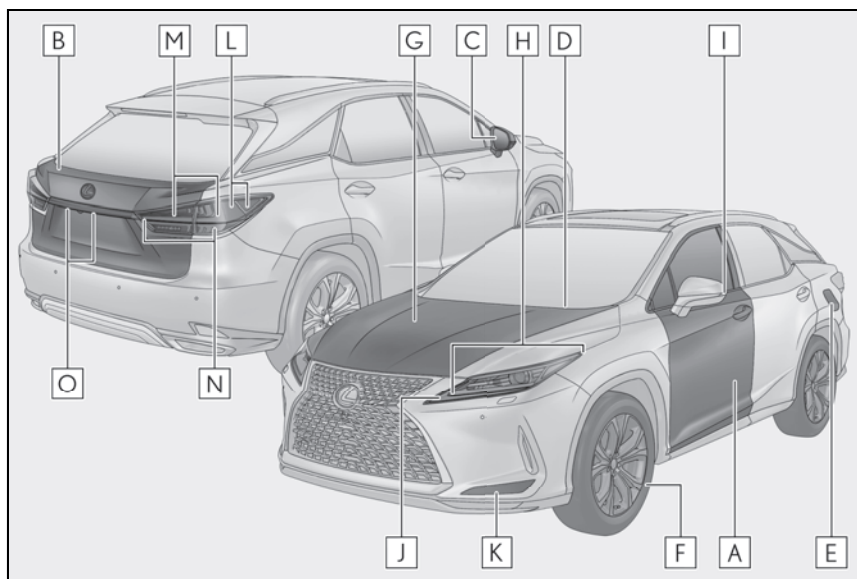


■ Searching by title

- Table of contents: →P.2

Pictorial index

■ Exterior



The shape of the lights may differ depending on the grade, etc.

A	Side doors	P.146
	Locking/unlocking.....	P.146
	Opening/closing the side windows.....	P.204
	Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key.....	P.534
	Warning lights/warning messages.....	P.505, 514
B	Back door	P.151, 154
	Opening from inside the cabin *	P.156
	Opening from outside.....	P.152, 156
	Warning lights/warning messages.....	P.505, 514
C	Outside rear view mirrors	P.201
	Adjusting the mirror angle.....	P.201
	Folding the mirrors	P.202
	Driving position memory *	P.193
	Defogging the mirrors *	P.384

D	Windshield wipers	P.255
	Precautions for winter season.....	P.370
	To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer) *	P.391
	Precautions for car wash.....	P.433
E	Fuel filler door	P.261
	Refueling method	P.261
	Fuel type/fuel tank capacity	P.549
F	Tires	P.464
	Tire size/inflation pressure	P.464, 554, 556
	Winter tires/tire chains	P.370
	Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system *	P.464
	Coping with flat tires	P.517
G	Hood	P.453
	Opening	P.453
	Engine oil.....	P.549
	Coping with overheating	P.541
	Warning messages	P.514

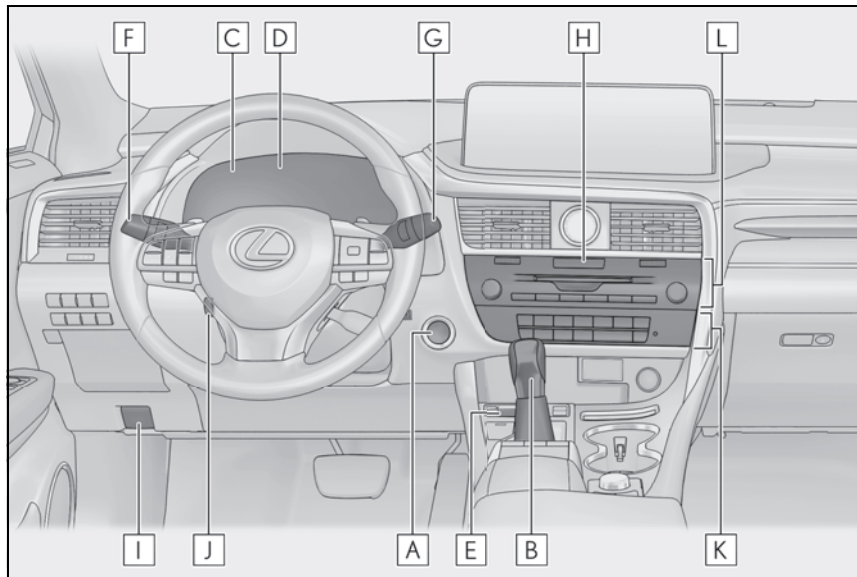
Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.485, Watts: P.557)

H	Headlights/front turn signal lights	P.238, 244
I	Side turn signal lights	P.238
J	Front position lights/daytime running lights	P.244
K	Front fog lights/cornering lights *	P.244, 253
L	Rear side marker lights	P.244
M	Stop/tail lights	P.244
	Emergency brake signal *	P.365
N	Back-up lights/rear turn signal lights/rear fog lights *	P.238, 244, 253
	Shifting the shift lever to R.....	P.233
O	License plate lights	P.244

14 Pictorial index

*: If equipped

■ Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



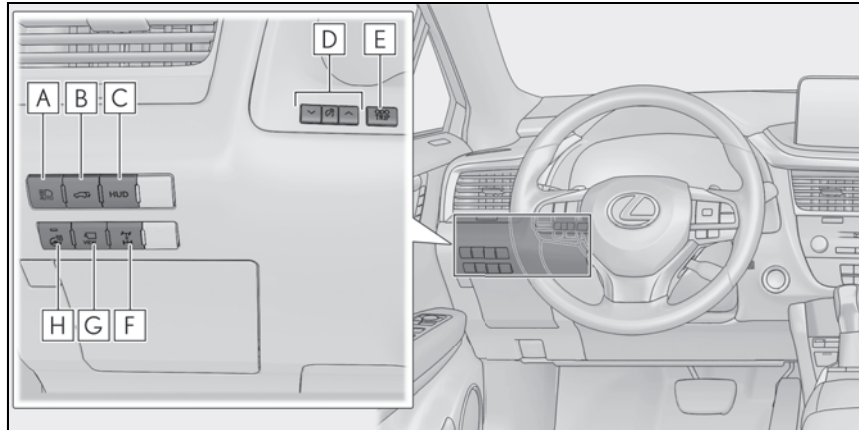
- A Engine switch**..... P.229
 - Starting the engine/changing the modes..... P.229
 - Emergency stop of the engine P.496
 - When the engine will not startP.531
 - Warning messagesP.514
- B Shift lever**..... P.233
 - Changing the shift position..... P.234
 - Precautions for towing P.499
 - When the shift lever does not move P.234
- C Meters** P.121
 - Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lightP.121, 124
 - Warning lights/indicator lights P.116
 - When a warning light turns on..... P.505
- D Multi-information display**P.125
 - Display.....P.125

	When the warning messages are displayed	P.514
E	Parking brake switch	P.239
	Applying/releasing	P.239
	Precautions for winter season.....	P.371
	Warning buzzer/messages	P.514
F	Turn signal lever	P.238
	Headlight switch	P.244
	Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/rear side marker lights/license plate lights/daytime running lights	P.244
	Front fog lights/ rear fog lights ^{*1}	P.253
G	Windshield wiper and washer switch	P.255, 260
	Usage	P.255, 260
	Adding washer fluid.....	P.463
	Warning messages	P.514
H	Emergency flasher switch	P.496
I	Hood lock release lever	P.453
J	Tilt and telescopic steering control switch	P.199
	Adjustment.....	P.199
	Driving position memory ^{*1}	P.193
K	Air conditioning system	P.384
	Usage	P.384
	Rear window defogger	P.384
L	Audio system ^{*2}	

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

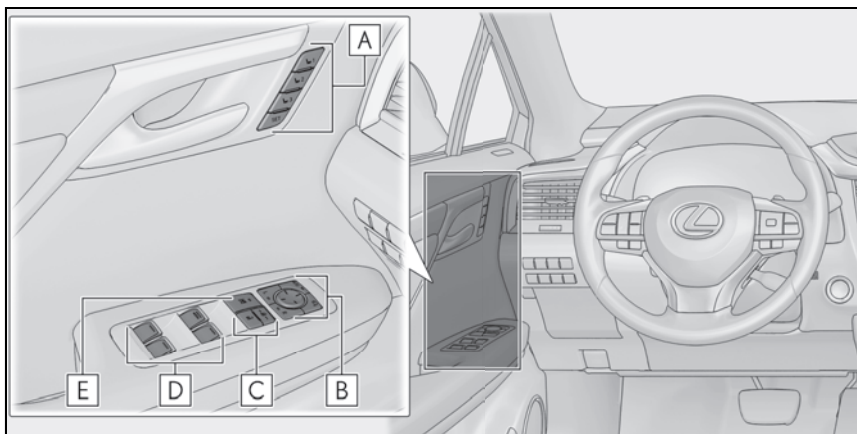
■ Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)



- A** Adaptive High-beam System switch^{*1} P.247
- Automatic High Beam switch^{*1} P.251
- B** Power back door switch^{*1} P.156
- C** HUD (Head-up display) switch^{*1} P.135
- D** Instrument panel light control switches P.124
- E** "ODO TRIP" switch P.124
- F** All-wheel drive lock switch^{*1} P.362
- G** Camera switch^{*1, 2}
- H** Heated steering wheel switch^{*1} P.399

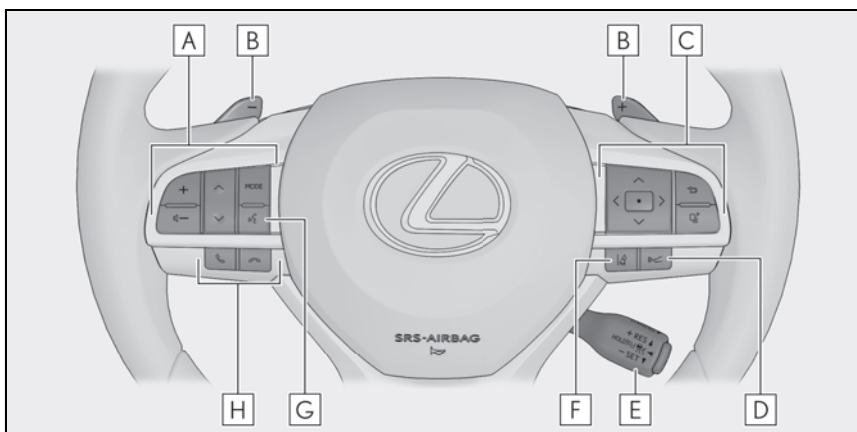
^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".



- A** Driving position memory switches *P.193
- B** Outside rear view mirror switches P.201
- C** Door lock switches P.148
- D** Power window switches P.204
- E** Window lock switch..... P.206

* : If equipped

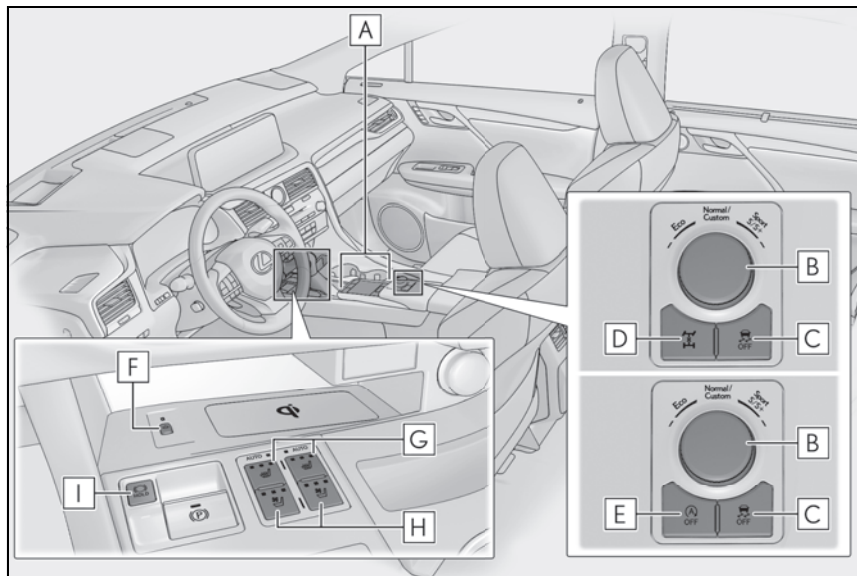


- A** Audio remote control switches^{*1}
- B** Paddle shift switches P.235
- C** Meter control switchesP.126

- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch ^{*2} P.299, 308
- E** Cruise control switch
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range ^{*2} P.295
 - Dynamic radar cruise control ^{*2} P.304
 - Cruise control ^{*2} P.312
- F** LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch ^{*2} P.283
- G** Talk switch ^{*1}
- H** Phone switch ^{*1}

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped



- A** Remote Touch ^{*1} P.378
- B** Driving mode select switch P.360
- C** VSC OFF switch P.365
- D** All-wheel drive lock switch ^{*2} P.362
- E** Stop & Start cancel switch ^{*2} P.315

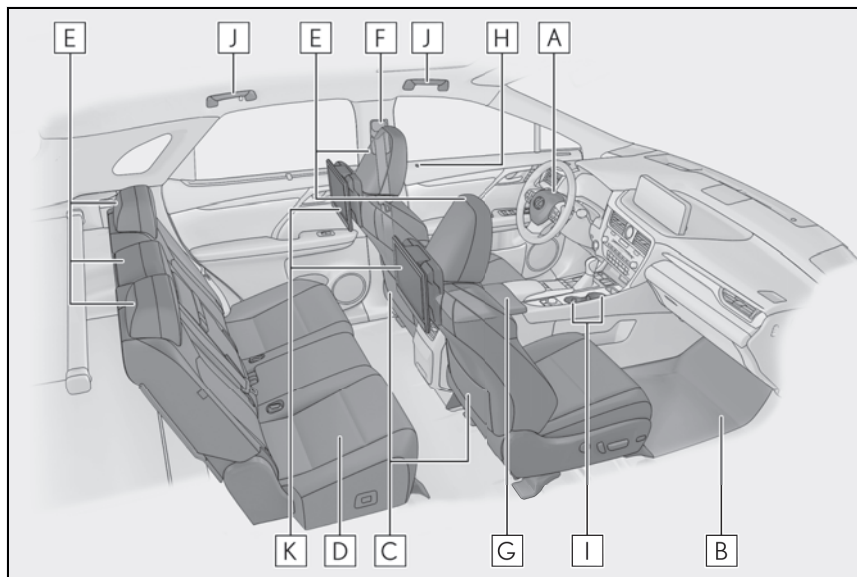
F	Wireless charger switch ^{*2}	P.417
G	Front seat heater switches ^{*2}	P.399
H	Seat ventilator switches ^{*2}	P.401
I	Brake hold switch	P.242

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped

■ Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)

► RX350

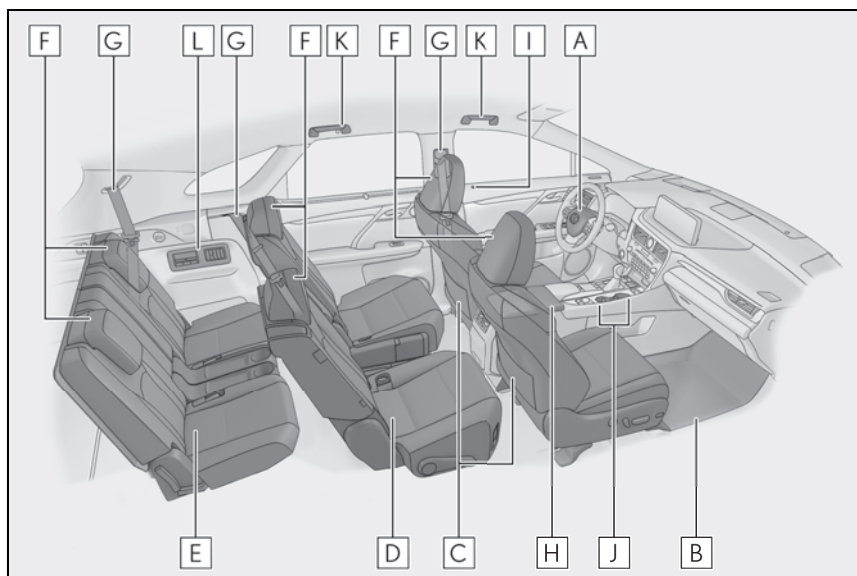


A	SRS airbags.....	P.44
B	Floor mats.....	P.38
C	Front seats.....	P.179
D	Rear seats.....	P.180
E	Head restraints.....	P.196
F	Seat belts.....	P.40
G	Console box.....	P.407
H	Inside lock buttons.....	P.149
I	Cup holders.....	P.408
J	Assist grips.....	P.422
K	Rear seat entertainment system ^{*1,2}	

^{*1}: If equipped

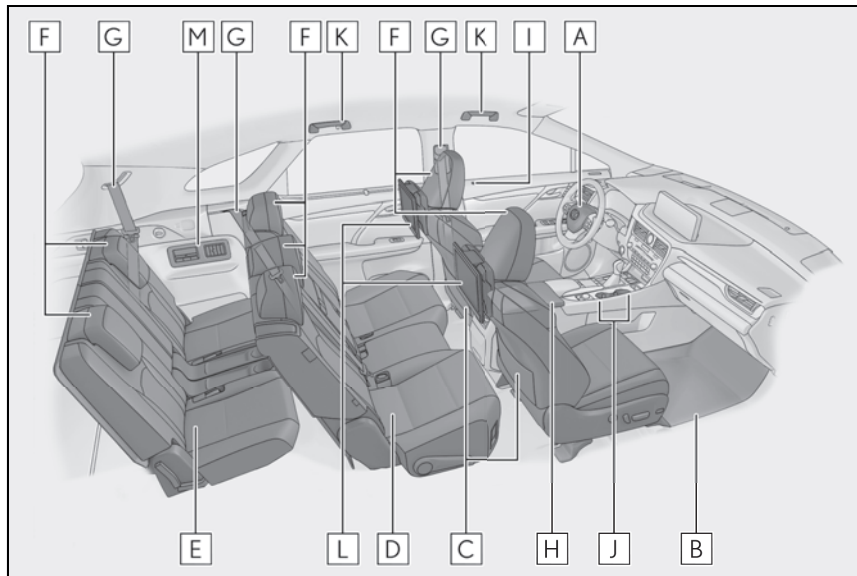
^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

► RX350L (vehicles with separate-type second-row seats)



A	SRS airbags	P.44
B	Floor mats	P.38
C	Front seats	P.179
D	Second-row seats	P.180
E	Third-row seats	P.180
F	Head restraints	P.196
G	Seat belts	P.40
H	Console box	P.407
I	Inside lock buttons	P.149
J	Cup holders	P.408
K	Assist grips	P.422
L	Rear automatic air conditioning system	P.396

► RX350L (vehicles with bench-type second-row seats)

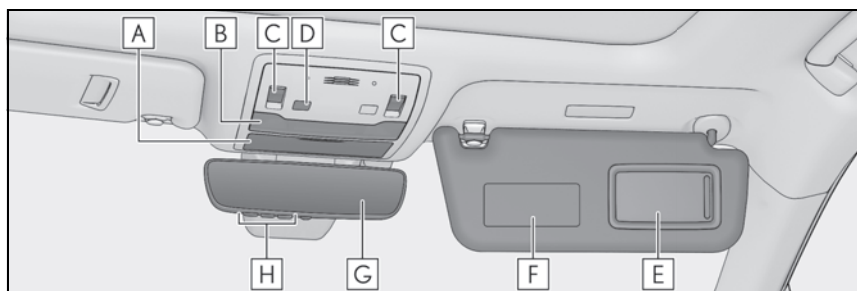


A	SRS airbags	P.44
B	Floor mats	P.38
C	Front seats	P.179
D	Second-row seats	P.180
E	Third-row seats	P.180
F	Head restraints	P.196
G	Seat belts	P.40
H	Console box	P.407
I	Inside lock buttons	P.149
J	Cup holders	P.408
K	Assist grips	P.422
L	Rear seat entertainment system ^{*1,2}	
M	Rear automatic air conditioning system	P.396

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ Ceiling (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A	Auxiliary box.....	P.410
B	Interior light ^{*1}	P.403
	Personal lights ^{*1}	P.403
C	Moon roof switches ^{*2}	P.207
	Panoramic moon roof switches ^{*2}	P.209
D	Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch ^{*2}	P.112
E	Vanity mirrors.....	P.424
F	Sun visors ^{*3}	P.424
G	Inside rear view mirror.....	P.200
H	Garage door opener switches ^{*2}	P.425

^{*1}: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

^{*2}: If equipped

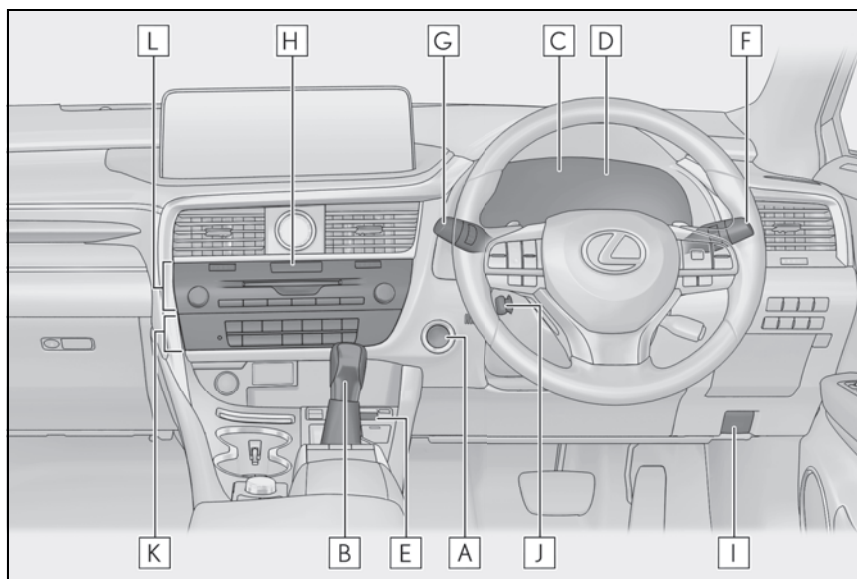
^{*3}: Except for Taiwan and Korea: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.63)



*3: For Taiwan: DONOT carry baby, infant and children on the front passenger seat. Except for the front passenger seat, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.63)



■ Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



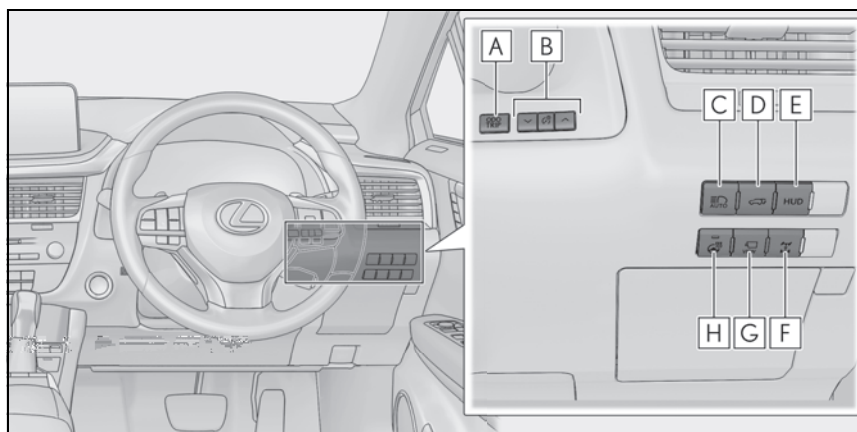
- A Engine switch**..... P.229
 - Starting the engine/changing the modes..... P.229
 - Emergency stop of the engine..... P.496
 - When the engine will not startP.531
 - Warning messagesP.514
- B Shift lever**..... P.233
 - Changing the shift position..... P.234
 - Precautions for towing P.499
 - When the shift lever does not move P.234
- C Meters**..... P.121
 - Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lightP.121, 124
 - Warning lights/indicator lights P.116
 - When a warning light turns on..... P.505
- D Multi-information display**P.125
 - Display.....P.125

	When the warning messages are displayed	P.514
E	Parking brake switch	P.239
	Applying/releasing.....	P.239
	Precautions for winter season.....	P.371
	Warning buzzer/messages	P.514
F	Turn signal lever	P.238
	Headlight switch	P.244
	Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/rear side marker lights/license plate lights/daytime running lights	P.244
	Front fog lights/ rear fog lights ^{*1}	P.253
G	Windshield wiper and washer switch	P.255, 260
	Usage	P.255, 260
	Adding washer fluid.....	P.463
	Warning messages	P.514
H	Emergency flasher switch	P.496
I	Hood lock release lever	P.453
J	Tilt and telescopic steering control switch	P.199
	Adjustment.....	P.199
	Driving position memory ^{*1}	P.193
K	Air conditioning system	P.384
	Usage	P.384
	Rear window defogger	P.384
L	Audio system ^{*2}	

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

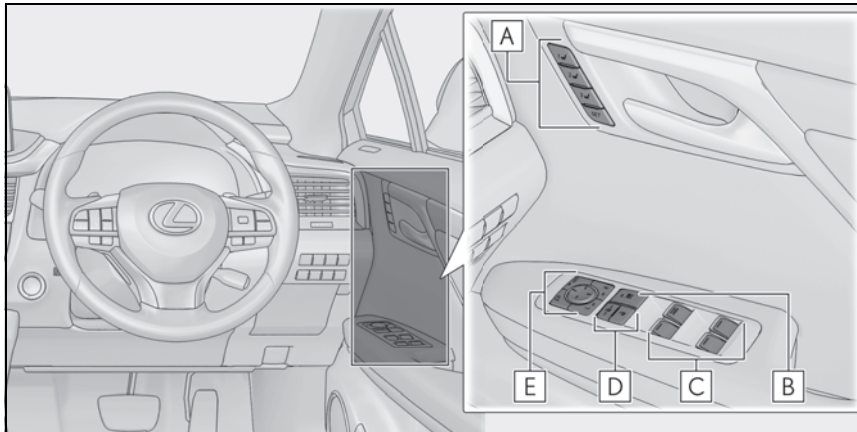
■ Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)



- A** "ODO TRIP" switchP.124
- B** Instrument panel light control switchesP.124
- C** Adaptive High-beam System switch^{*1}P.247
- Automatic High Beam switch^{*1}P.251
- D** Power back door switch^{*1}P.156
- E** HUD (Head-up display) switch^{*1}P.135
- F** All-wheel drive lock switch^{*1} P.362
- G** Camera switch^{*1,2}
- H** Heated steering wheel switch^{*1} P.399

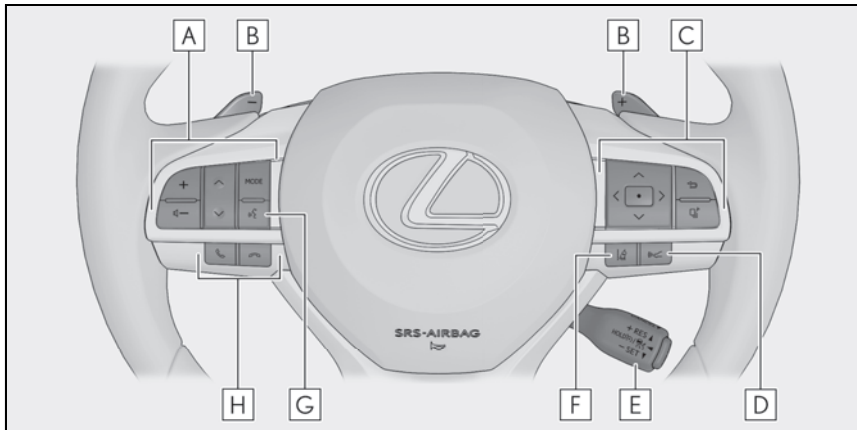
^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".



- A** Driving position memory switches *P.193
- B** Window lock switch..... P.206
- C** Power window switches P.204
- D** Door lock switches P.148
- E** Outside rear view mirror switches P.201

* : If equipped

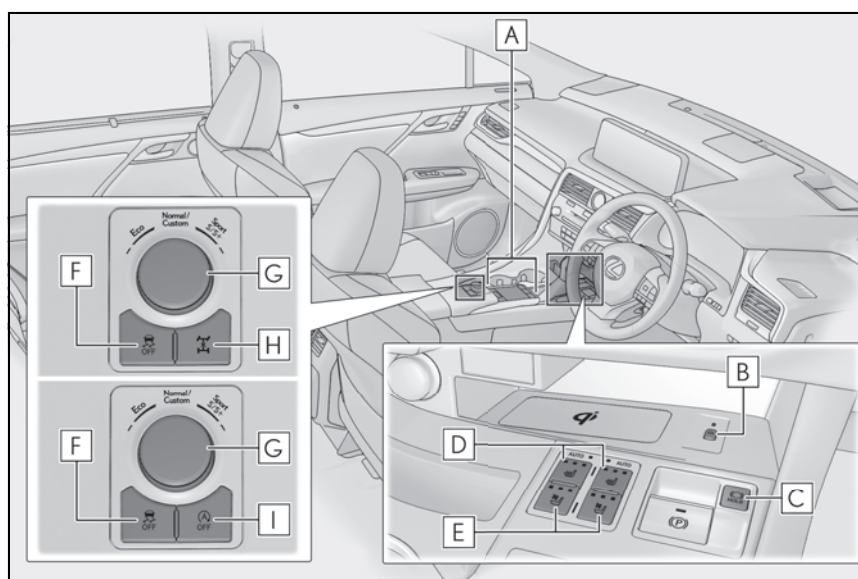


- A** Audio remote control switches^{*1}
- B** Paddle shift switches P.235
- C** Meter control switchesP.126

- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch ^{*2} P.299, 308
- E** Cruise control switch
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range ^{*2} P.295
 - Dynamic radar cruise control ^{*2} P.304
 - Cruise control ^{*2} P.312
- F** LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch ^{*2} P.283
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch ^{*2} P.291
- G** Talk switch ^{*1}
- H** Phone switch ^{*1}

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped



- A** Remote Touch ^{*1} P.378
- B** Wireless charger switch ^{*2} P.417
- C** Brake hold switch P.242
- D** Front seat heater switches ^{*2} P.399

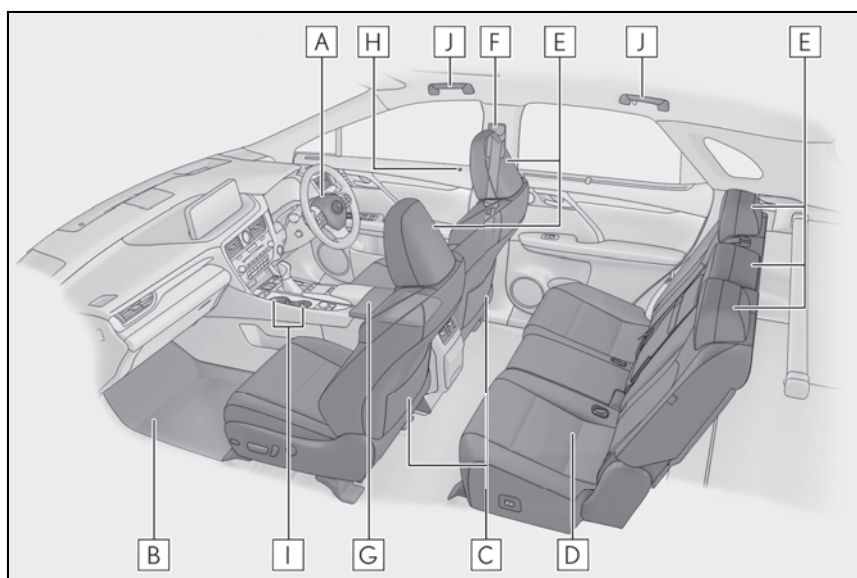
E	Seat ventilator switches ^{*2}	P.401
F	VSC OFF switch	P.365
G	Driving mode select switch	P.360
H	All-wheel drive lock switch ^{*2}	P.362
I	Stop & Start cancel switch ^{*2}	P.315

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped

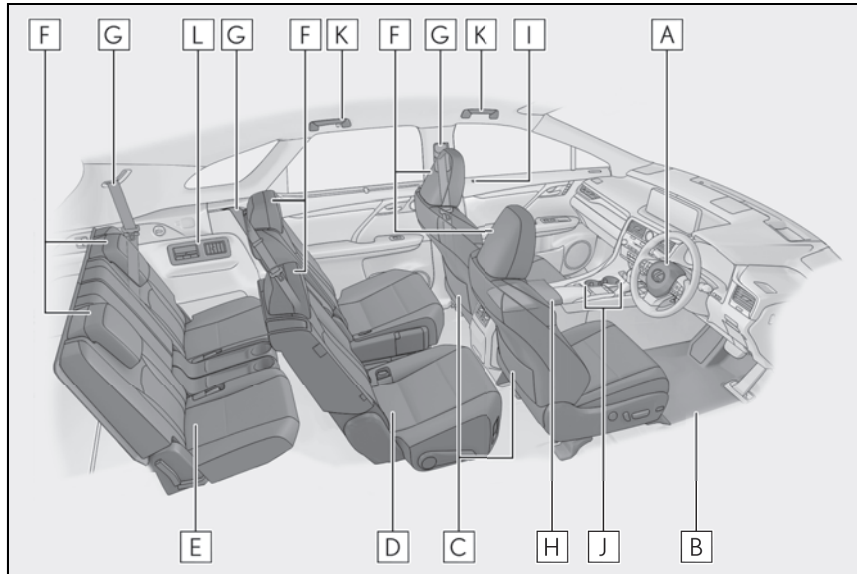
■ Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)

► RX350



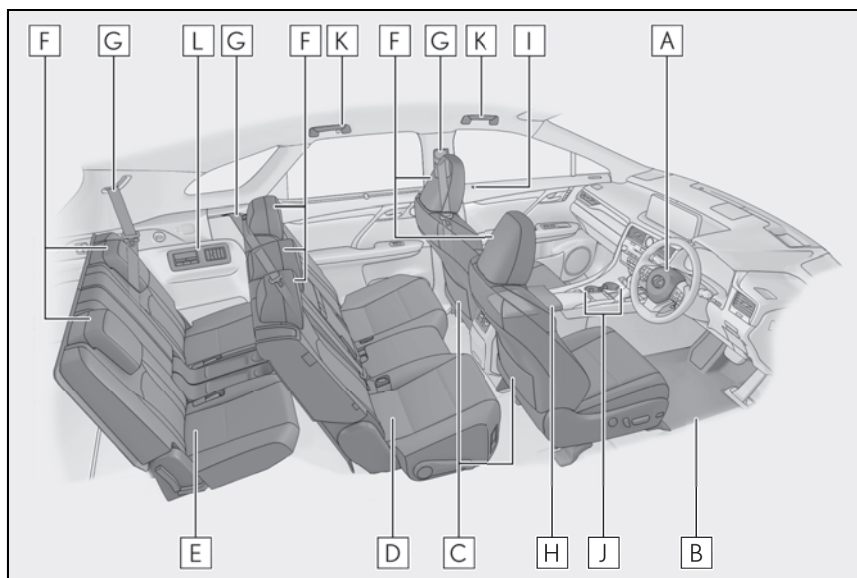
A	SRS airbags.....	P.44
B	Floor mats.....	P.38
C	Front seats.....	P.179
D	Rear seats.....	P.180
E	Head restraints.....	P.196
F	Seat belts.....	P.40
G	Console box.....	P.407
H	Inside lock buttons.....	P.149
I	Cup holders.....	P.408
J	Assist grips.....	P.422

► RX350L (vehicles with separate-type second-row seats)



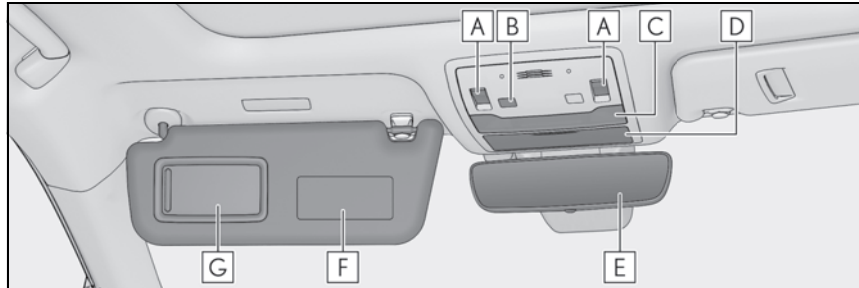
A	SRS airbags	P.44
B	Floor mats	P.38
C	Front seats	P.179
D	Second-row seats	P.180
E	Third-row seats	P.180
F	Head restraints	P.196
G	Seat belts	P.40
H	Console box	P.407
I	Inside lock buttons	P.149
J	Cup holders	P.408
K	Assist grips	P.422
L	Rear air conditioning system	P.396

► RX350L (vehicles with bench-type second-row seats)



A	SRS airbags	P.44
B	Floor mats	P.38
C	Front seats	P.179
D	Second-row seats	P.180
E	Third-row seats	P.180
F	Head restraints	P.196
G	Seat belts	P.40
H	Console box	P.407
I	Inside lock buttons	P.149
J	Cup holders	P.408
K	Assist grips	P.422
L	Rear air conditioning system	P.396

■ Ceiling (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A	Moon roof switches ^{*1}	P.207
	Panoramic moon roof switches ^{*1}	P.207
B	Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch ^{*1}	P.112
C	Interior light ^{*2}	P.403
	Personal lights ^{*2}	P.403
D	Auxiliary box	P.410
E	Inside rear view mirror	P.200
F	Sun visors ^{*3}	P.424
G	Vanity mirrors	P.424

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

^{*3}: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.63)



For safety and security**1****1-1. For safe use**

Before driving	38
For safe driving	39
Seat belts	40
SRS airbags	44
Front passenger occupant classification system	53
Exhaust gas precautions	58

1-2. Child safety

Airbag manual on-off system	59
Riding with children	60
Child restraint systems (except for Korea)	61
Child restraint systems (for Korea)	96

1-3. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system	106
Double locking system	109
Alarm	110

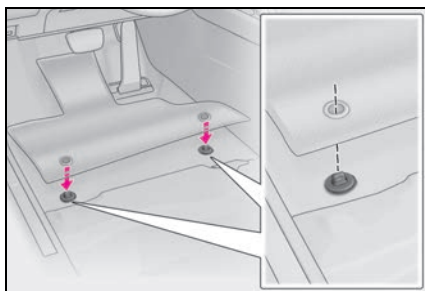
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

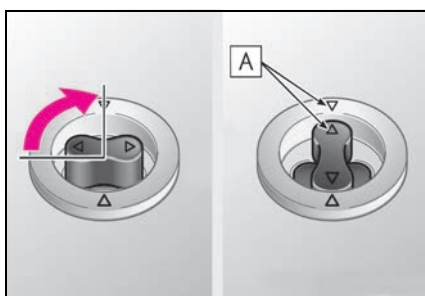
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

- 1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



- 2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the $\triangle$ marks **A**.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

tion.



WARNING

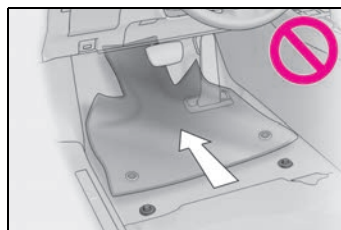
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

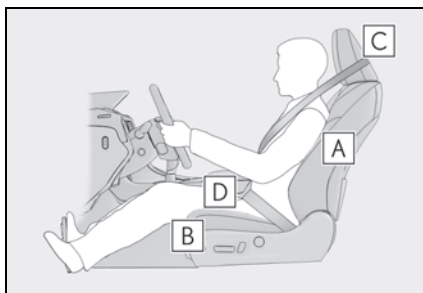


- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



- A** Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.179)
- B** Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.179)
- C** Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.196)
- D** Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.40)

⚠ WARNING

■ For safe driving

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving. Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback. A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats. Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired. Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.40)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.61, 96)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly.

(→P.200, 201)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.



WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

⚠ WARNING

- **RX350L:** Do not let third-row seat passengers to use second-row seat seat belts.

**■ Pregnant women**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.41)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.41)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.93, 102

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the

neck or slide off the shoulder.

- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Child seat belt usage

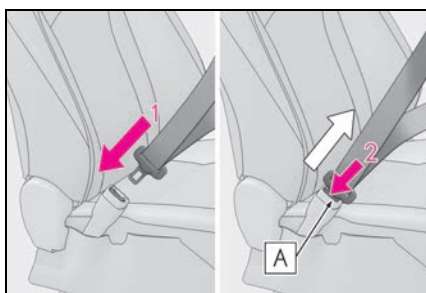
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.61, 96)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P.40)

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



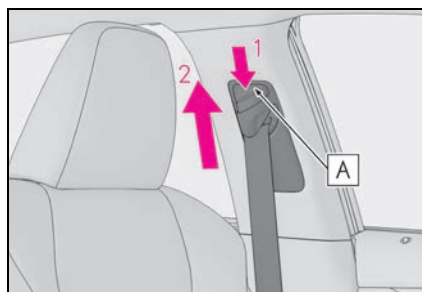
- 1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
- 2 To release the seat belt, press the

release button **A**.

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



- 1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button **A**.
- 2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

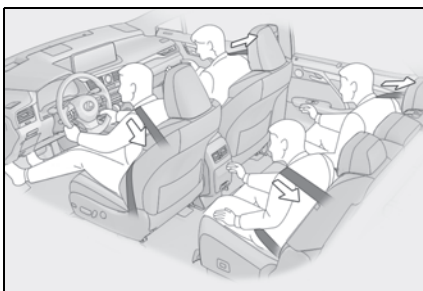
⚠ WARNING

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Seat belt pretensioners (front seats and outboard second-row seats)

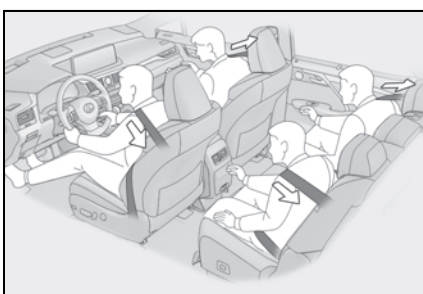
- Vehicles without front passenger occupant classification system



The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.

- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system



The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of

severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

⚠ WARNING

■ Seat belt pretensioners

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

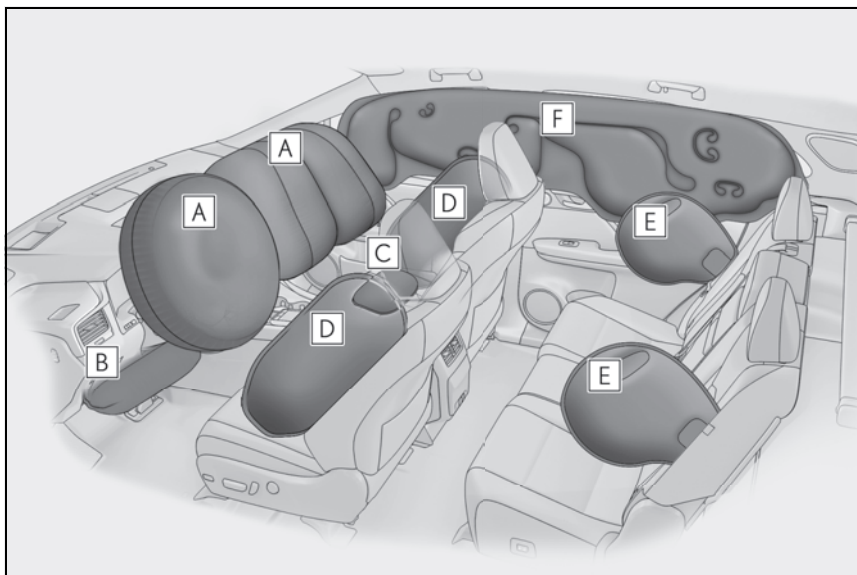
SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags

► RX300/RX350



► SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbag

Can help provide driver protection

C SRS seat cushion airbag

Can help restrain the front passenger

► SRS side and curtain shield airbags

D SRS front side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

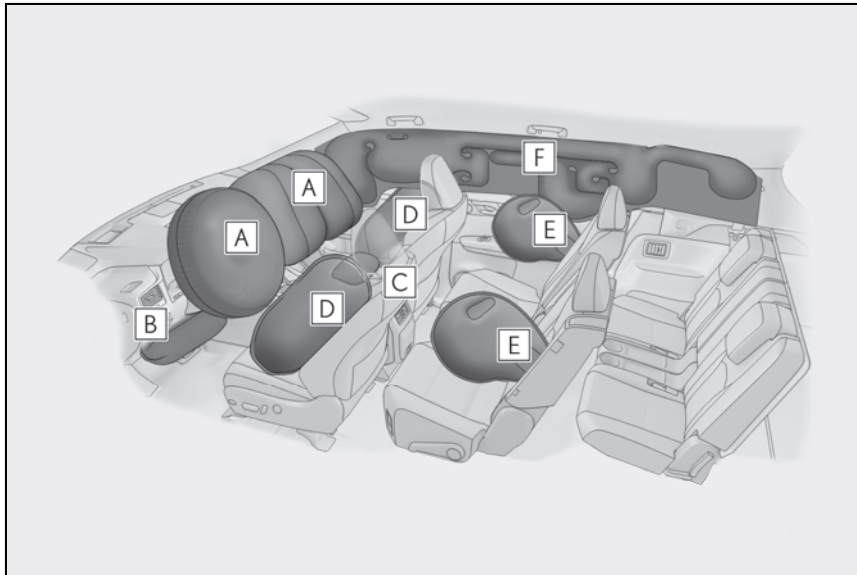
E SRS rear side airbags

Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

F SRS curtain shield airbags

- Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats
- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Can help prevent the occupants from being thrown from the vehicle in the event of vehicle rollover

► RX350L



► SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbag

Can help provide driver protection

C SRS seat cushion airbag

Can help restrain the front passenger

► SRS side and curtain shield airbags

D SRS front side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

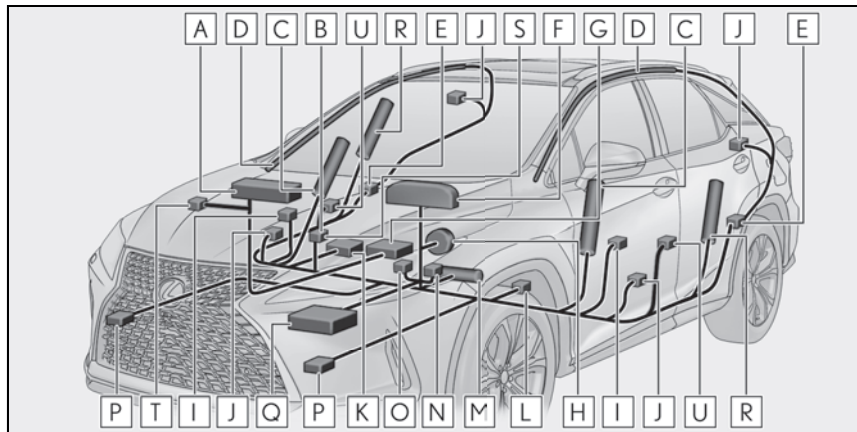
E SRS rear side airbags

Can help protect the torso of occupants in the outboard second-row seats

F SRS curtain shield airbags

- Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats
- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Can help prevent the occupants from being thrown from the vehicle in the event of vehicle rollover

■ **SRS airbag system components**



- A** Front passenger airbag
- B** “AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light (if equipped)
- C** Front side airbags
- D** Curtain shield airbags
- E** Side impact sensors (rear)
- F** SRS warning light
- G** Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors) (if equipped)
- H** Driver airbag
- I** Side impact sensors (front door)
- J** Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
- K** Seat cushion airbag
- L** Driver’s seat position sensor
- M** Driver’s knee airbag
- N** Driver’s seat belt buckle switch
- O** Front passenger’s seat belt buckle switch

- P** Front impact sensors
- Q** Airbag sensor assembly
- R** RX300/RX350: Rear side airbags
RX350L: Rear side airbags (outboard second-row seats)
- S** "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator light (if equipped)
- T** Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped)
- U** Side impact sensors (front) (if equipped)

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.147)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.365)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.404)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.496)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.504)

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corre-

sponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the SRS front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied.
- The SRS seat cushion airbag on the front passenger seat will not operate if the occupant is not wearing a seat belt.

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that

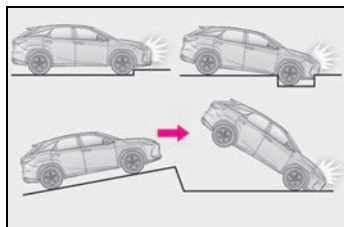
exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Both SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of vehicle rollover.
- All SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

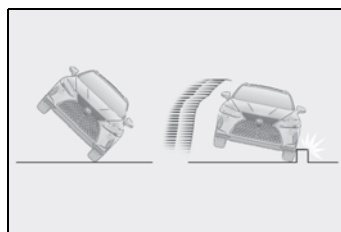
The SRS front airbags and SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.

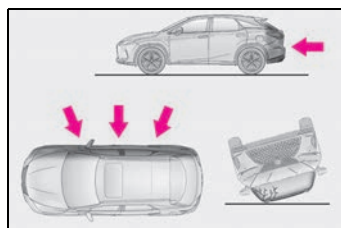
- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits a curb stone.



■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)**

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

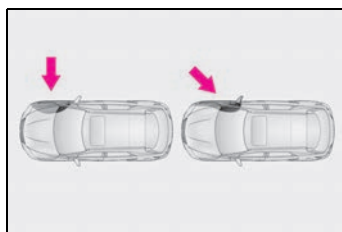
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

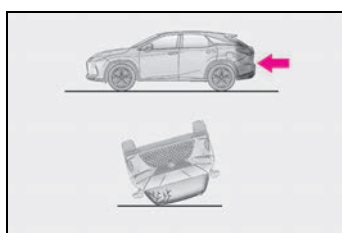
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



Vehicles without front passenger occupant classification system: The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

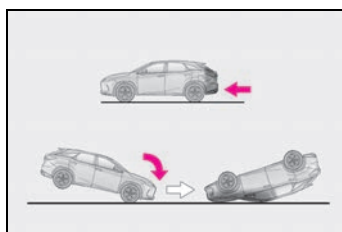
Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

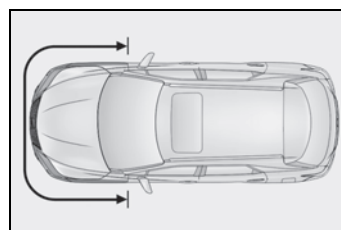
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end



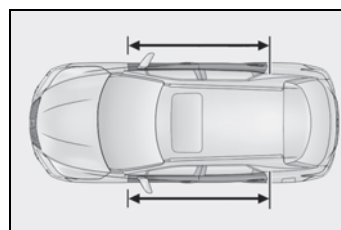
■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

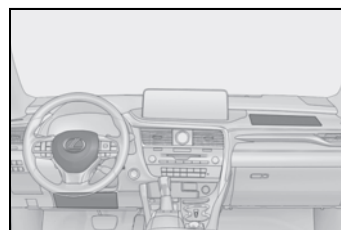
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

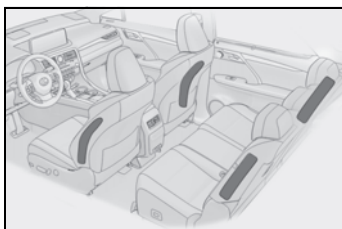


- The front passenger's seat cushion sur-

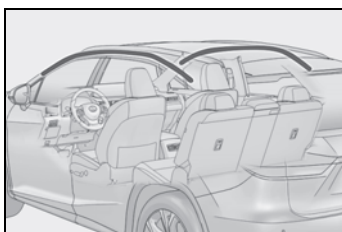
face is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

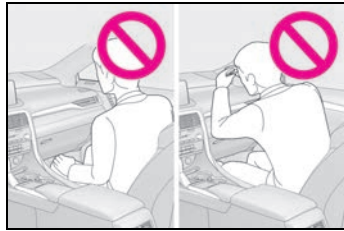
- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

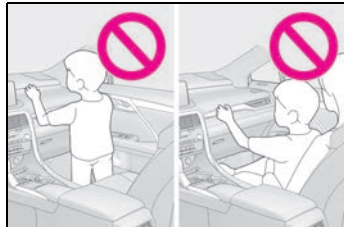
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

⚠ WARNING

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.96, 61)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

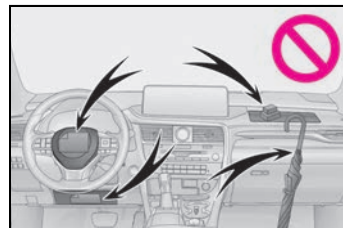
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



WARNING

- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side windows, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the front doors. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front airbags for the front passenger may not deploy in the event of a collision.

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars, roof side rails, front door panels, front door trims or front door speakers
- Modifications to the front door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment

**WARNING**

- Vehicles without front passenger occupant classification system: Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Vehicles with front passenger occupant classification system: Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches or roof luggage carrier
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Front passenger occupant classification system*

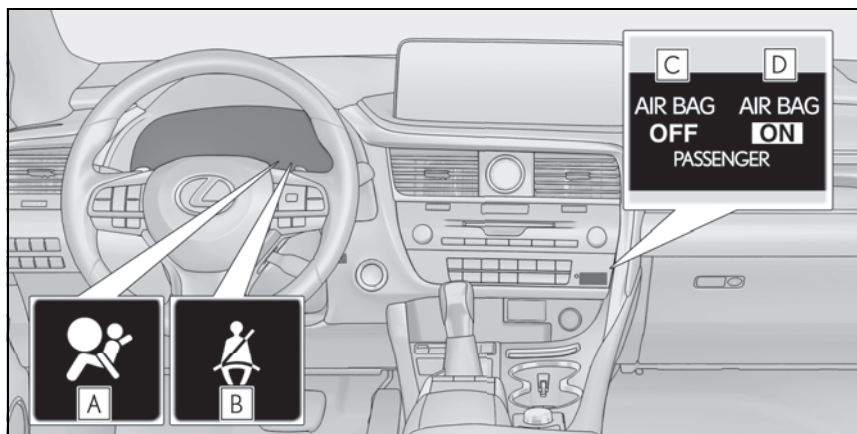
*: If equipped

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for the front passenger.

1

For safety and security

System components



- A** SRS warning light
- B** Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light
- C** "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
- D** "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

! WARNING

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt plate has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pocket).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.

- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the SRS airbags for the front passenger will not activate in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

**WARNING**

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P.98)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the front passenger occupant classification system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion and seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

■ Adult^{*1}

Indicator/warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Seat cushion airbag in the front passenger side	Activated ^{*2} or deactivated ^{*3}

■ Child^{*4}

Indicator/warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" or "AIR BAG ON" ^{*4}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated or activated ^{*4}
	Seat cushion airbag in the front passenger side	Deactivated or activated ^{*4, 2}

■ Child restraint system with infant^{*5}

Indicator/warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" ^{*6}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off ^{*2} or flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Seat cushion airbag in the front passenger side	

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Seat cushion airbag in the front passenger side	

■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Seat cushion airbag in the front passenger side	

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger is wearing a seat belt.

*3: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*4: For some children, child in seat, child in booster seat or child in convertible seat, the system may not recognize him/her as a child. Factors which may affect this can be the physique or posture.

*5: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P.96)

*6: In case the indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P.98)

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

 WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time. If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

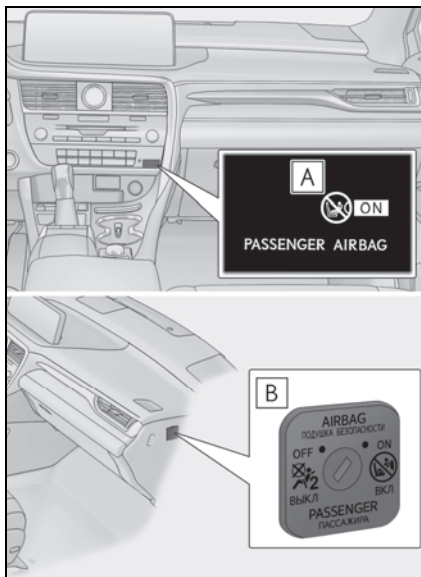
The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag manual on-off system*

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and seat cushion airbag. Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

System components



A "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

The "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

B Airbag manual on-off switch

Deactivating the front seat passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

⚠ WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".

If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

**WARNING****■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat**

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".

If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P.149, 206)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats etc.

**WARNING****■ When children are in the vehicle**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or panoramic moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems (except for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a second-row seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.61

When using a child restraint system: P.62

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.67, 72, 77, 81, 86

Child restraint system installation method

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.91
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: P.93
- Using a top tether anchorage: P.94

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations

exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.

- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles. Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.67, 72, 77, 81, 86)



WARNING

When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the second-row seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the second-row seat than in the front seat.

**WARNING**

- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.67, 72, 77, 81, 86) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat (except for Taiwan)

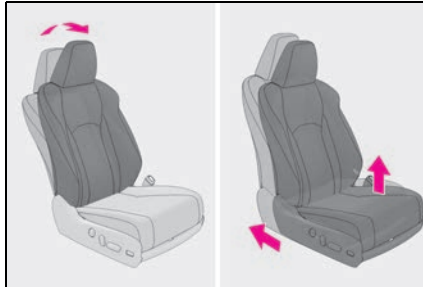
For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to second-row seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Move the seat fully rearward
- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- Move the seat height to the upper most position
- If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

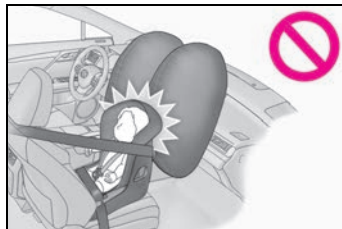


⚠ WARNING

■ When using a child restraint system (except for Taiwan)

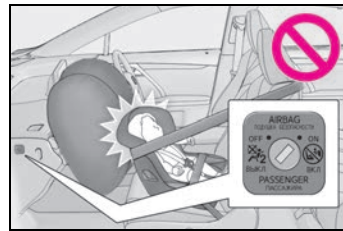
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.

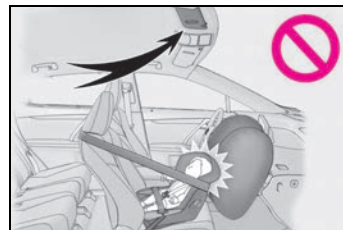


- Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P.59)

The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



! WARNING

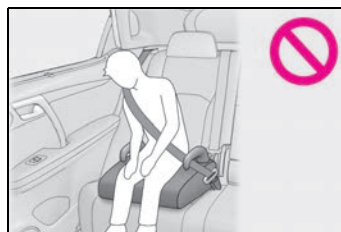


! WARNING

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



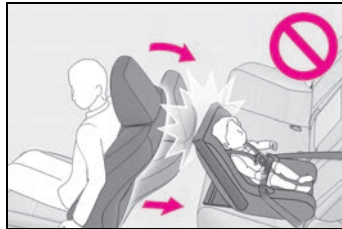
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

⚠ WARNING

- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).

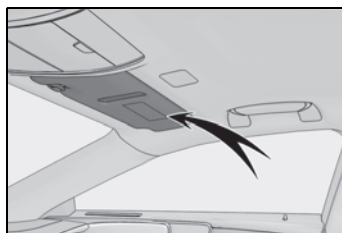


- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

■ When using a child restraint system (for Taiwan)

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

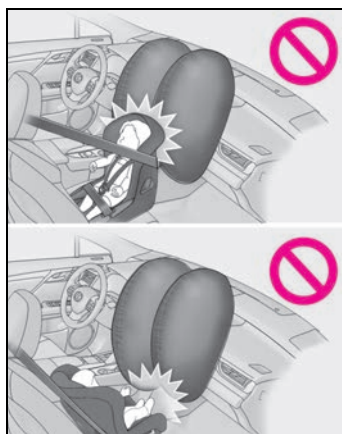


! WARNING

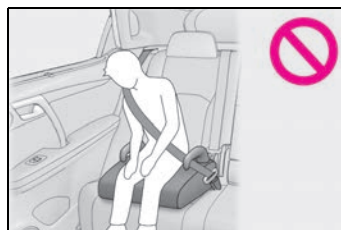


! WARNING

- Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



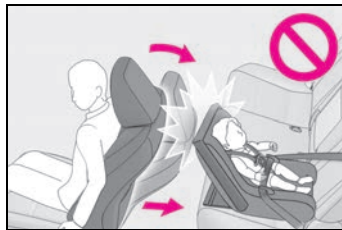
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.

! WARNING

- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (except for ASEAN countries*, South Africa, Argentina and Taiwan) (vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch)

* : Brunei, Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines and Viet Nam

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.68) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following

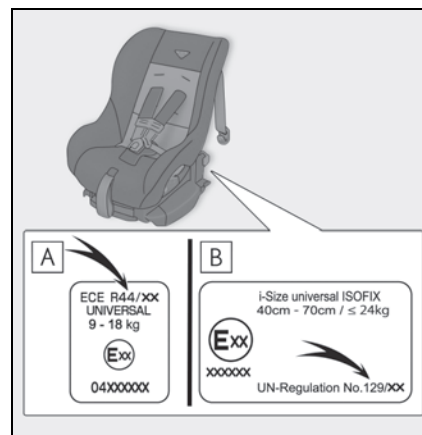
[Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems
1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44^{*1} or UN(ECE) R129^{*1,2}.

The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

- A** UN(ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.
- B** UN(ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}
The height range of the child who is

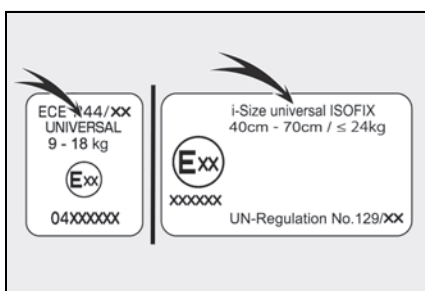
applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



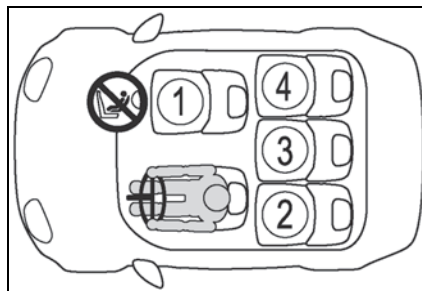
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

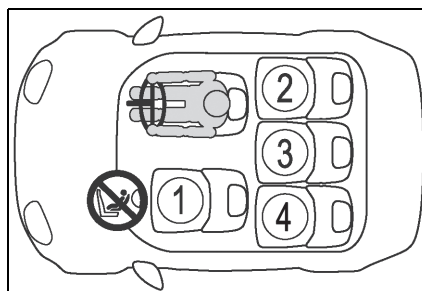
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

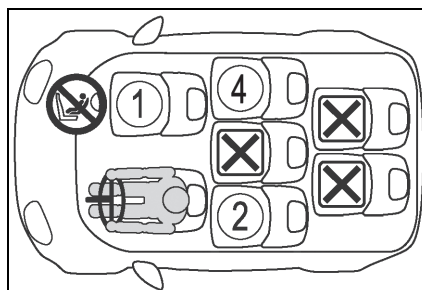
- Left-hand drive vehicles without third-row seats



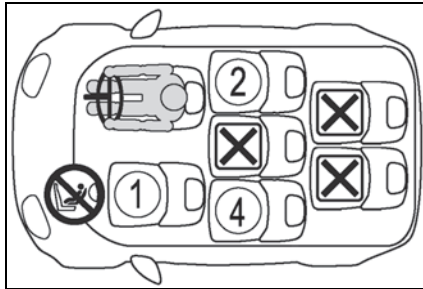
- Right-hand drive vehicles without third-row seats



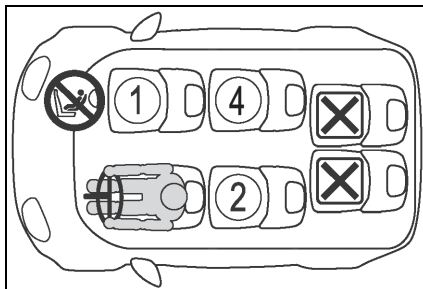
- Left-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



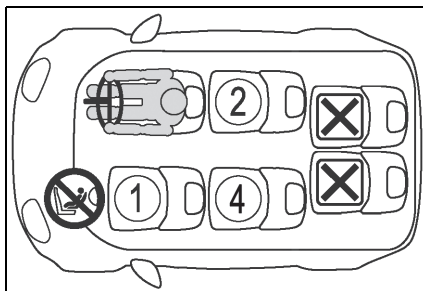
- Right-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



- Left-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



- Right-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



① *1, 2, 3	U *4
② *2, 3	U i Anchor icon
③ *2, 3	U
④ *2, 3	U i Anchor icon



Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.



Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.



Includes a top tether anchorage point.



Not suitable for child restraint system.

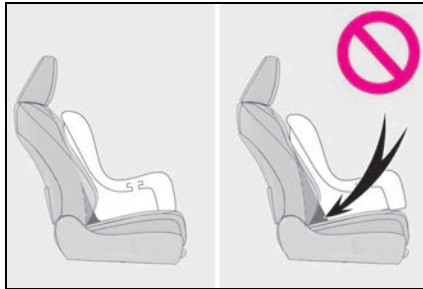


Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle

until good contact is achieved.



^{*3}: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

^{*4}: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

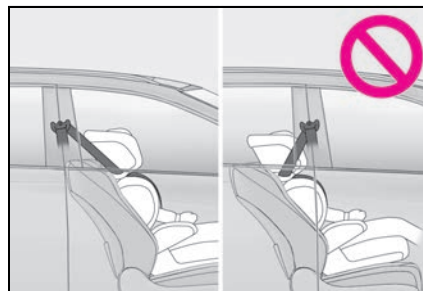
Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide,

move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for ASEAN countries*) (vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch)

*: Brunei, Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines and Viet Nam

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.73) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.

Otherwise, check [Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table] for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.76)

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

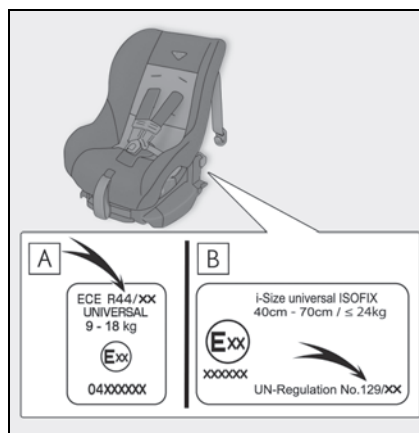
1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44*¹ or UN(ECE) R129*^{1,2}.

The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems

which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*³
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

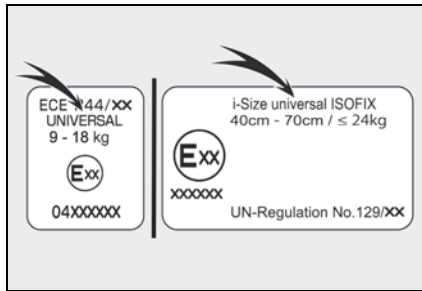
B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*³
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- “universal”
- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



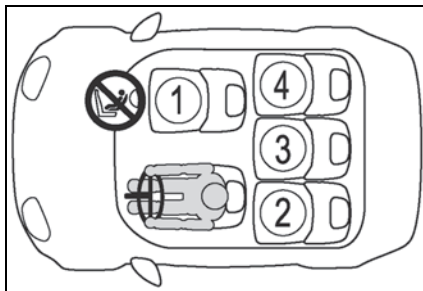
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

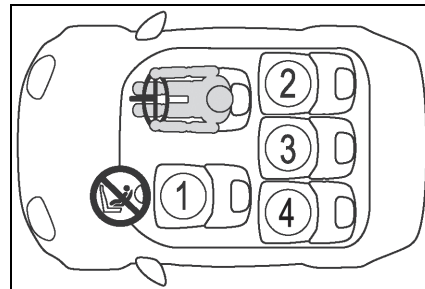
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

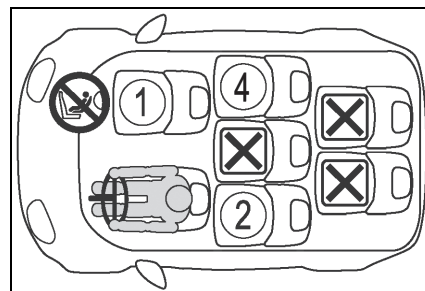
- Left-hand drive vehicles without third-row seats



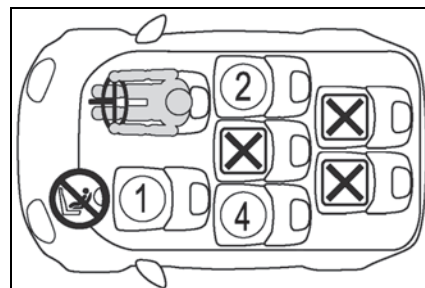
- Right-hand drive vehicles without third-row seats



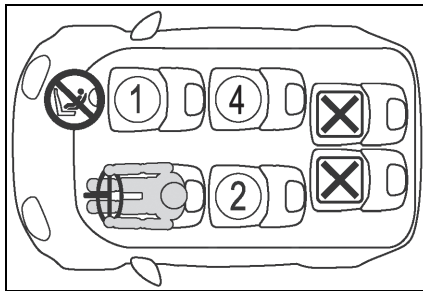
- Left-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



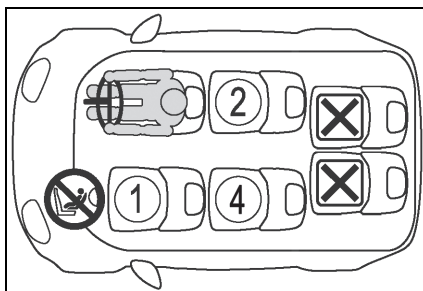
- Right-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



- Left-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



- Right-hand drive vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



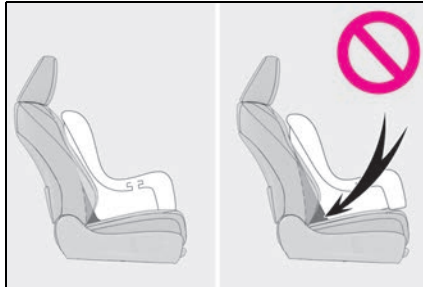
① *1,2,3	U *4
② *2,3	U L i anchor

③ *2,3	U
④ *2,3	U L i anchor

- U** Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.
- L** Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P.76).
- i** Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.
- anchor** Includes a top tether anchorage point.
- X** Not suitable for child restraint system.
- No Child Seat** Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

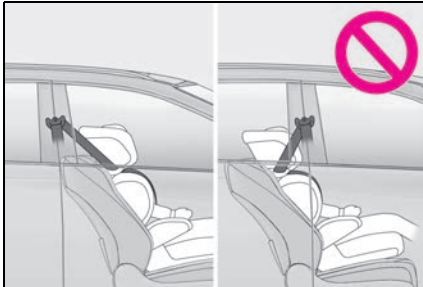
■ Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table

	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position			
		①	②	③	④
i-Size child Restraint systems	i-Size MIDI (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the ASEAN area.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for South Africa) (vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch)

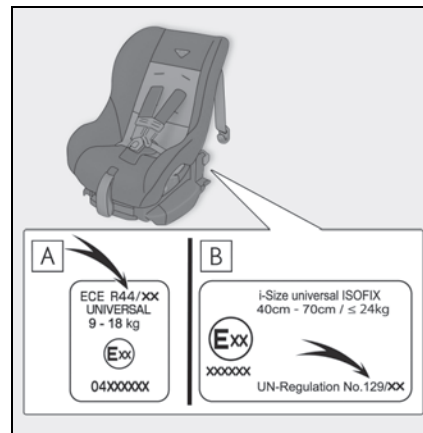
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.78) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

- 1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44^{*1} or UN(ECE) R129^{*1,2}.
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

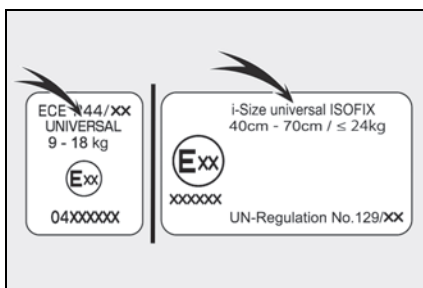
- A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.
- B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- “universal”
- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



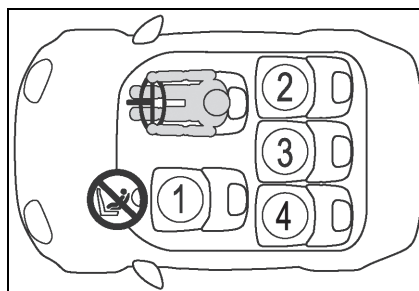
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

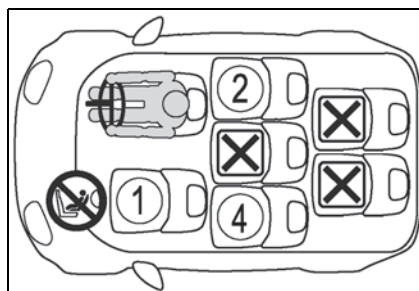
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

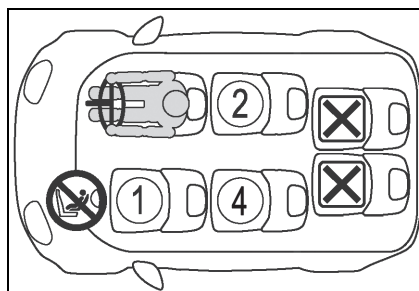
► Vehicles without third-row seats



► Vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



► Vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



① *1,2,3	U *4	
② *2,3	U Anchor icon	i-Size icon
③ *2,3	U	
④ *2,3	U Anchor icon	i-Size icon



Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.



Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.



Includes a top tether anchorage point.



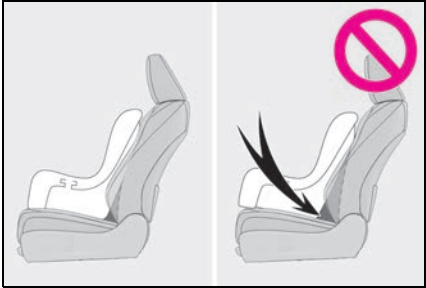
Not suitable for child restraint system.



Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

- *1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.
- *2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the

seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



- *3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.
- *4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position					
Seat position number	①		②	③	④
	Airbag manual on-off switch				
	ON	OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

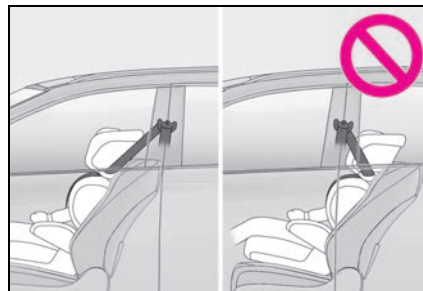
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Argentina)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.83) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your

child can be selected.

Otherwise, check [Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table] for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.85)

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

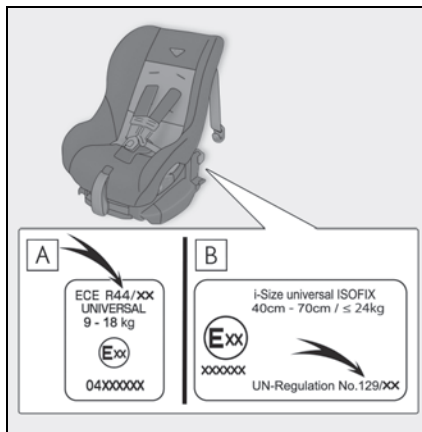
■ **Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44^{*1} or UN(ECE) R129^{*1, 2}.

The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation num-

ber

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}

The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}

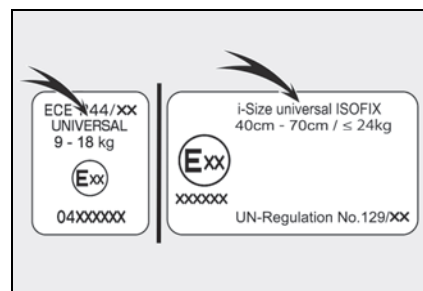
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- “universal”
- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



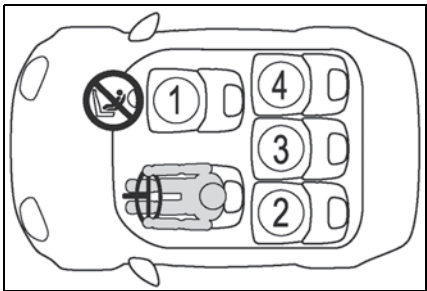
^{*1}: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

^{*2}: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of

the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



① *1,2,3	U *4	
② *2,3	U i	L Anchor
③ *2,3	U	
④ *2,3	U i	L Anchor



Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.



Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P.85).



Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.



Includes a top tether anchorage point.



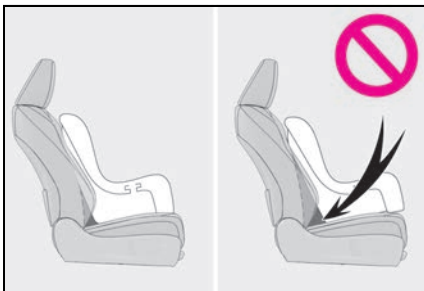
Not suitable for child restraint system.



Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture	Description
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

■ Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table

Mass groups	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position			
		①	②	③	④
0, 0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)	MIDI 2 (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)	MIDI 2 (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes

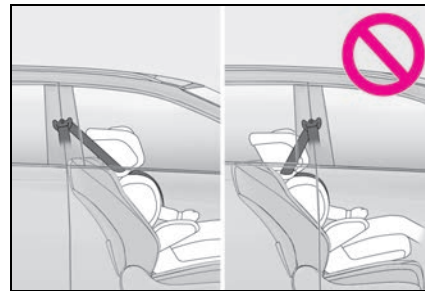
The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the LATIN area.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latch-

ing it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.

- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Taiwan)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

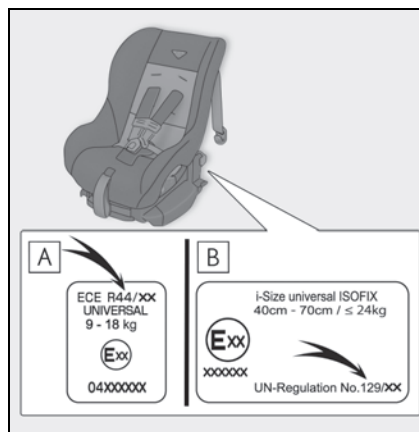
Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.87) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

- 1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44^{*1} or UN(ECE) R129^{*1, 2}.
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

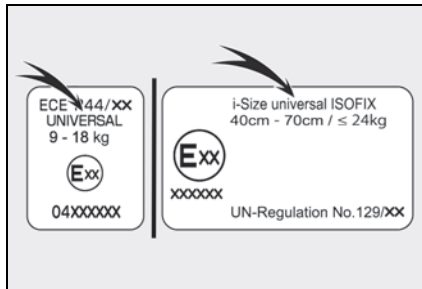
attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation number

- A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.
 - B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.
- 2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.
 - "universal"
 - "semi-universal"

- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



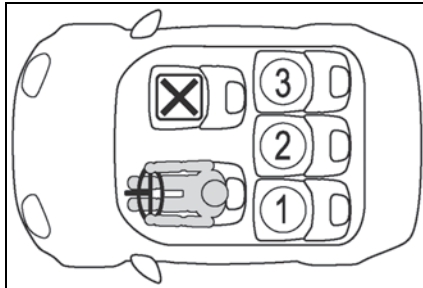
*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

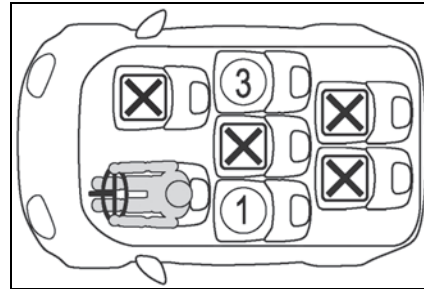
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

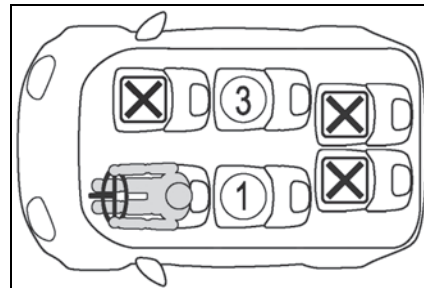
- Vehicles without third-row seats



- Vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row bench seat)



- Vehicles with third-row seats (Second-row separate seat)



① *1,2	U 	
② *1,2	U	
③ *1,2	U 	



Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.



Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

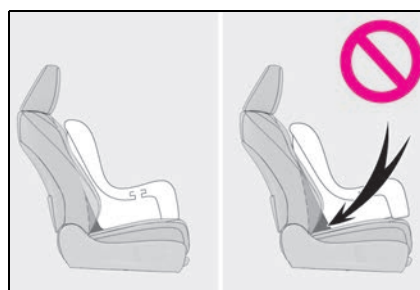


Includes a top tether anchorage point.



Not suitable for child restraint system.

^{*1}: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



^{*2}: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.

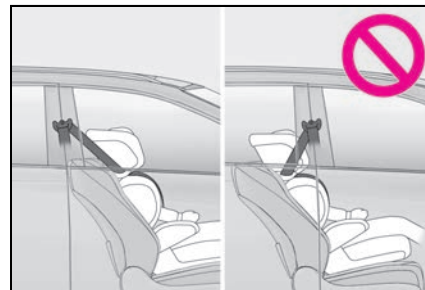
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.

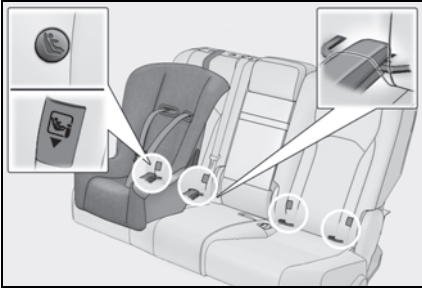
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.91
ISOFIX lower anchorages attachment		P.93

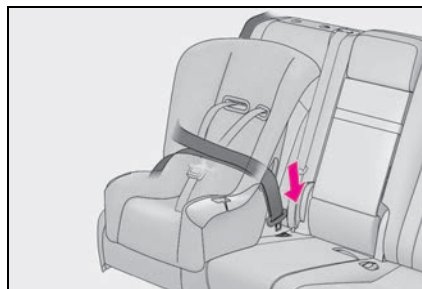
not within the “universal” category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the “Vehicle List” provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.67, 72, 77, 81, 86)

- 1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.62 for the front passenger seat adjustment.
- 2 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

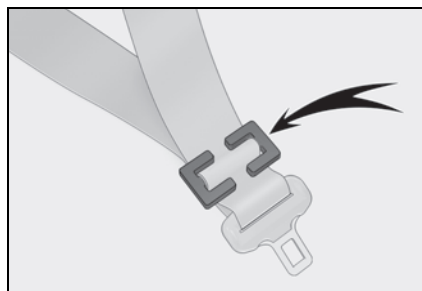
When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- 3 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.196)
- 4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions

enclosed with the child restraint system.



- 5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



- 6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.93)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

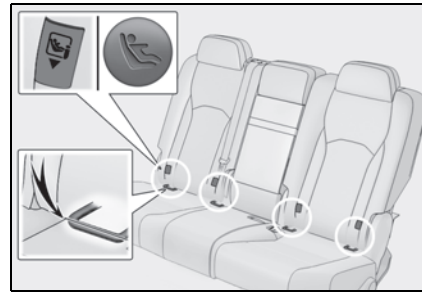
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with ISOFIX lower anchorages

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchorages are provided for the outboard second-row seats. (Tags or Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.67, 72, 77, 81, 86)

- 1 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

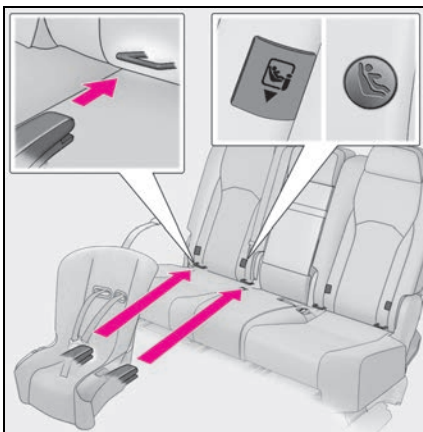
When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat

and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- 2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.196)

- 3 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



- 4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.93)



WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.

- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.

- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

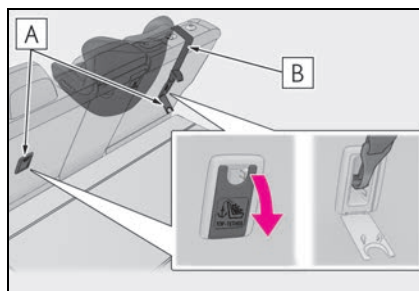
Using a top tether anchorage

■ Top tether anchorages

Top tether anchorages are provided for the following seats:

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.

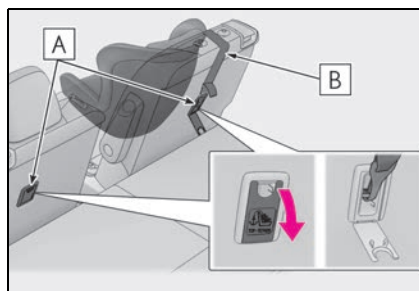
- Bench-type second-row seats



A Top tether anchorages

B Top strap

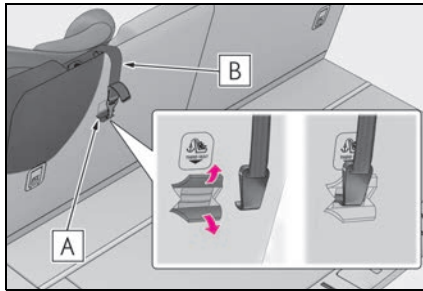
- Separate-type second-row seats



A Top tether anchorages

B Top strap

► Third-row left side seat *

**A** Top tether anchorage**B** Top strap

*: The third-row seats are not equipped with ISOFIX lower anchorages.

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorages (second-row outboard seats)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

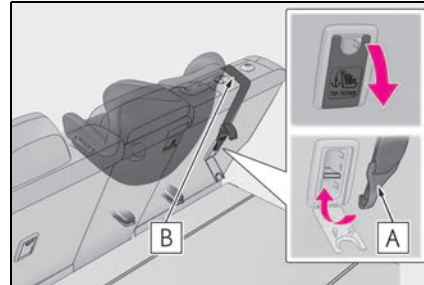
- 1 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P.196)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

- 2 Open the top tether anchorage cover, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.93)

When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.

**A** Hook**B** Top strap

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorage (third-row left side seat)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

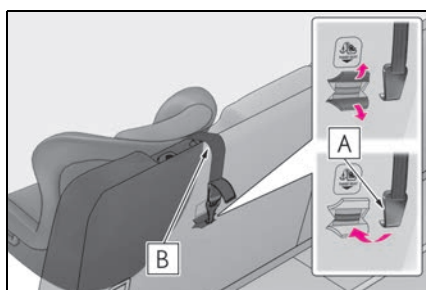
- 1 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P.196)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

- 2 Latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.93)

When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



A Hook

B Top strap

WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorage of the seat the child restraint system is installed to.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the top tether anchorage has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

NOTICE

■ **Top tether anchorages**

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Child restraint systems (for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.96

Child restraint system: P.98

When using a child restraint system: P.99

Child restraint system installation method

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.101
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: P.103
- Using a top tether anchorage: P.104

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system

installation.

- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.



WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

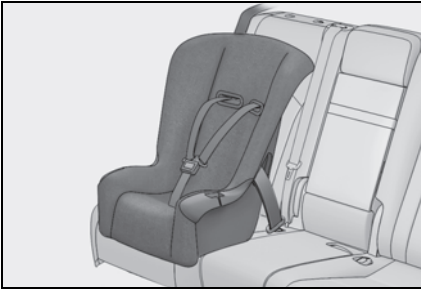
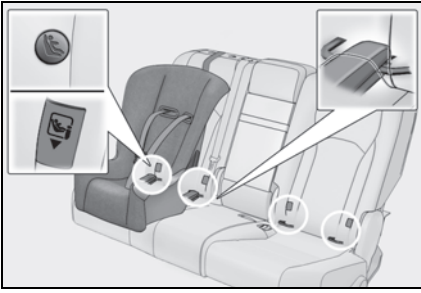
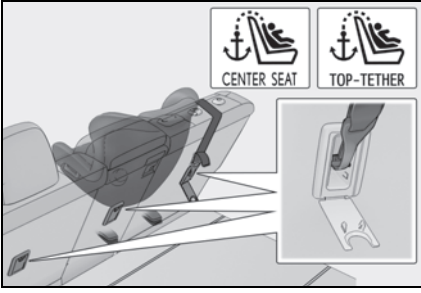
- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.101, 103) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

Child restraint system

Install the available child restraint system in vehicle upon confirming the following items.

■ Types of child restraint system installation methods

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.101
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.103
Top tether anchorage attachment		P.104

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to rear seats. When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the installation of the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

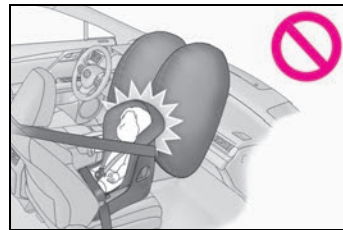


⚠ WARNING

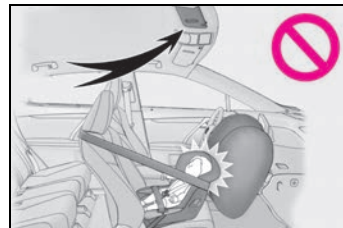
■ When using a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



! WARNING



! WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchorage for the front passenger seat.

- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, raise the seatback as much as possible, move the seat to the rearmost position, and raise the seat to the highest position, even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated.

If the head restraint interferes with the installation of the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

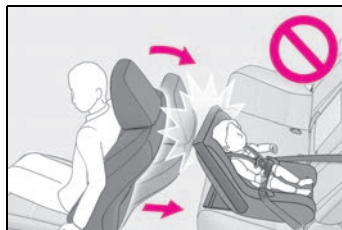


⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt**■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seat

- ▶ When using the front passenger seat

If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.99 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

- ▶ When using the rear seat

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

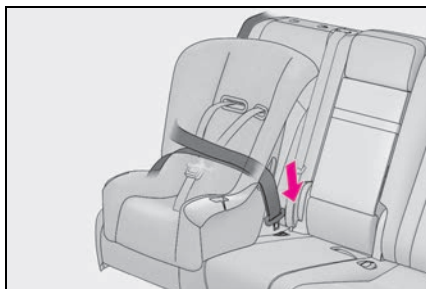
2 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P.196)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

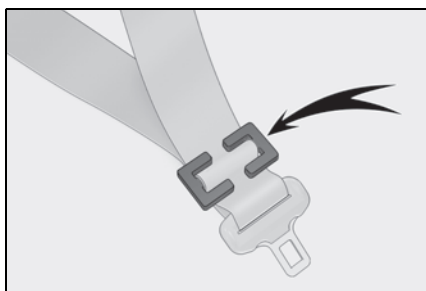
3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint

system.



- 4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



- 5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.102)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

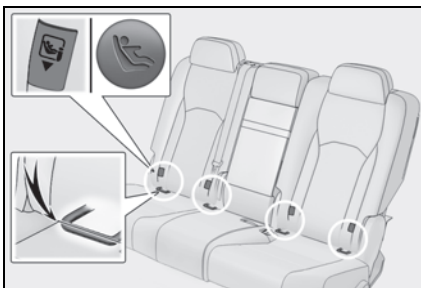
WARNING

- When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
- When installing a child restraint system in the rear center seat, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. The seatbacks must be adjusted to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Tags or Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



■ When installing in the rear outboard seats

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the seat

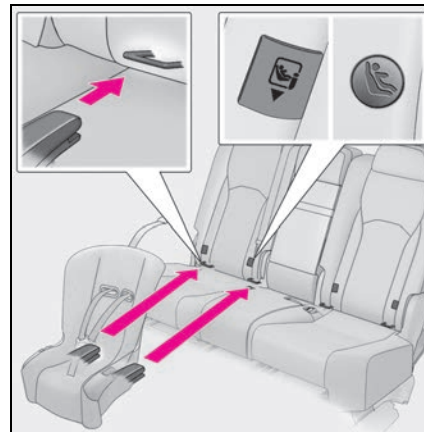
If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

2 Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P.196)

If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

3 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.102)

1

For safety and security

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

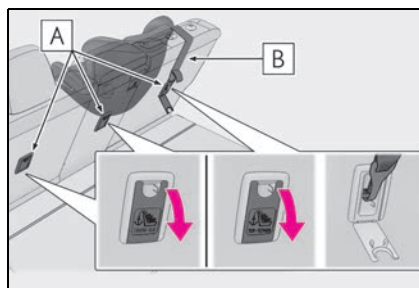
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
- If the seat is adjusted, reconfirm the security of the child restraint system.

Using a top tether anchorage

■ Top tether anchorages

Top tether anchorages are provided for the each rear seat.

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.



A Top tether anchorages

B Top strap

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorage

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

- 1** Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system. (→P.196)

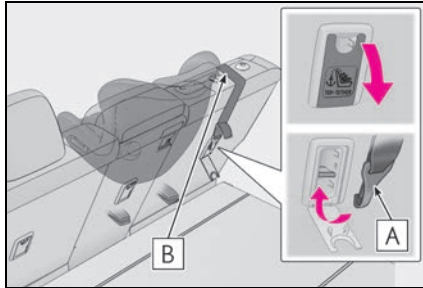
If the head restraint cannot be removed, raise it to the uppermost position.

- 2** Open the top tether anchorage cover, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.102)

When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath

the head restraint.



A Hook

B Top strap



NOTICE

Top tether anchorages

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.



WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorage of the seat the child restraint system is installed to.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the top tether anchorage has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

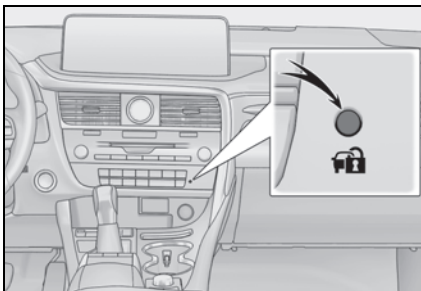
Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system



■ Certification for the engine immobilizer system



상호명/제조사
기자재의 명칭(모델명)
제조년월/제조국
식별부호

: Toyota Motor Corporation
: 미약전계강도 무선기기(TMIMB-3K6)
: Shown on product./Japan
: NI4-TMIMB-3K1

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

1

For safety and security

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



 NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

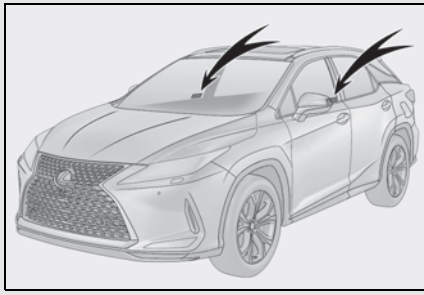
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system *

*: If equipped

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side window of both front doors.



Setting/canceling the double locking system

■ Setting

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function: Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  twice within 5 seconds.

■ Canceling

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle or press the back door opener button.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  .



WARNING

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

1

For safety and security

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- Except for Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.) (if equipped)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)
- Any of the windows are broken. (if equipped)

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

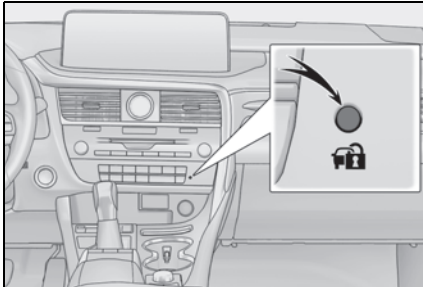
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows, moon roof (if equipped) and panoramic moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Setting

Except for Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



■ Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Except for Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Unlock the doors.
- For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Except for Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

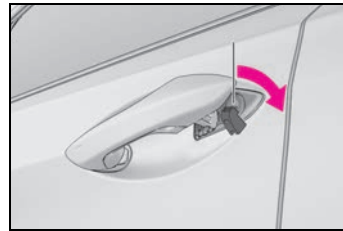
■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

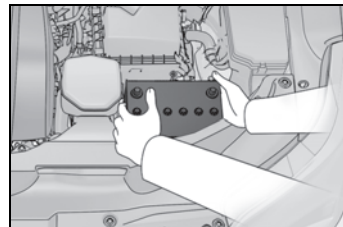
- For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia: The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.539)



■ Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery

**NOTICE**

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor (if equipped) and tilt sensor (if equipped)

■ **The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection**

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ **Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.110)

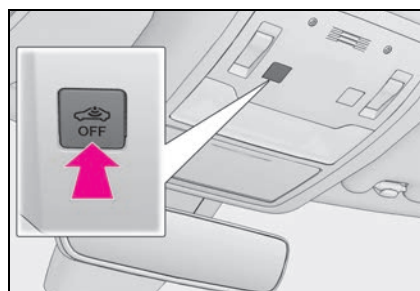
■ **Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
- 2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



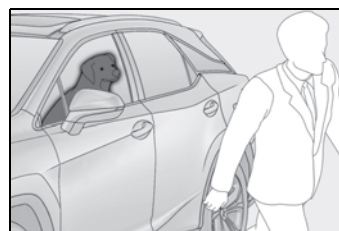
■ **Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor (if equipped) and tilt sensor (if equipped)**

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

■ **Intrusion sensor detection considerations (if equipped)**

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- People or pets are in the vehicle.

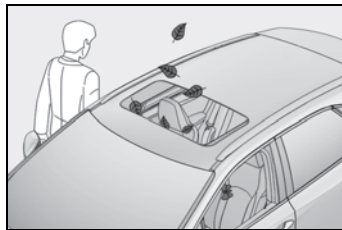


- A window or the moon roof (if equipped),

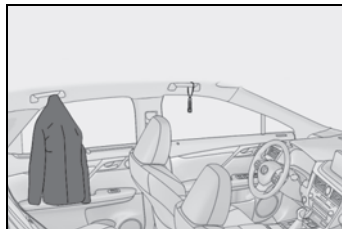
panoramic moon roof (if equipped) is open.

In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

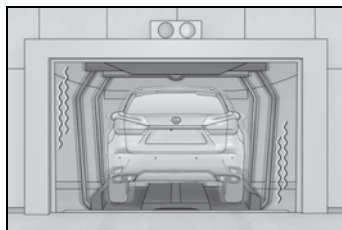
- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



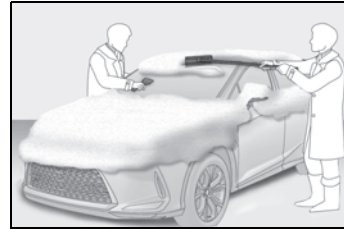
- Small insects such as moths or flies are in the vehicle.
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations (if equipped)

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

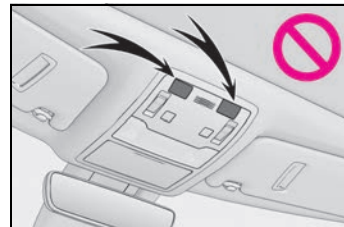
- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.



NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly (if equipped)

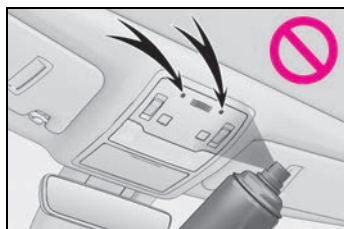
- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.





NOTICE

- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.
- The intrusion sensor may be canceled when the electronic key is near the vehicle.

		115
Vehicle status information and indicators	2	
2-1. Instrument cluster		
Warning lights and indicators	116	
Gauges and meters	121	
Multi-information display	125	
Head-up display	134	
Fuel consumption information	138	

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Warning lights and indicators displayed on the instrument cluster

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustrations display all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

► Except F SPORT models



► F SPORT models



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.



Brake system warning light^{*1}
(→P.505)



Brake system warning light^{*1}
(→P.505)



High coolant temperature
warning light^{*2} (→P.505)



Charging system warning
light^{*3} (→P.505)



Low engine oil pressure warn-
ing light^{*2} (→P.506)



Malfunction indicator lamp^{*1}
(→P.506)



SRS warning light^{*1} (→P.506)



ABS warning light^{*1} (→P.506)



Brake Override System warn-
ing light/Drive-Start Control
warning light^{*2} (→P.507)



Electric power steering system
warning light^{*1} (→P.507)



Electric power steering system
warning light^{*1} (→P.507)



Low fuel level warning light
(→P.507)



Driver's and front passenger's
seat belt reminder light
(→P.508)



Rear passengers' seat
belt reminder light^{*4} (if
equipped) (→P.508)



Tire pressure warning light^{*1} (if
equipped) (→P.509)



LTA indicator (if equipped)
(→P.509)



Stop & Start cancel indicator^{*1},
⁵ (if equipped) (→P.509)



Lexus parking assist-sensor
OFF indicator^{*1} (if equipped)
(→P.509)



RCTA OFF indicator^{*1} (if
equipped) (→P.510)



PKSB OFF indicator^{*1} (if
equipped) (→P.510)



PCS warning light^{*1} (if
equipped) (→P.510)



Slip indicator^{*1} (→P.511)



Parking brake indicator
(→P.511)



Brake hold operated indicator^{*1}
(→P.511)



Master warning light^{*1} (→P.511)

^{*1}: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

2

Vehicle status information and indicators

- *2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.
- *3: Except F SPORT models: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.
F SPORT models: This light illuminates on the meter.
- *4: This light illuminates on the center panel.
- *5: When the start-up display is displayed on the multi-information display, this light may not turn on even though the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode.

**WARNING**

■ **If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning lights not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator (→P.238)



Tail light indicator (→P.244)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P.246)



Adaptive High-beam System indicator*¹ (if equipped) (→P.248)



Automatic High Beam indicator*¹ (if equipped) (→P.251)



Front fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.253)



Rear fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.253)



PCS warning light*^{1,2} (if equipped) (→P.272)



Cruise control indicator (→P.301, 309, 312)



Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (if equipped) (→P.295, 304)



Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P.295, 304, 312)



LTA indicator (if equipped) (→P.283)



LDA indicator (if equipped) (→P.291)



LTA indicator (if equipped) (→P.283)



LDA indicator (if equipped) (→P.291)



LTA indicator (if equipped) (→P.283)



LDA indicator (if equipped) (→P.291)



BSM outside rear view mirror indicators*^{3,4} (if equipped) (→P.320, 339)



BSM indicator (if equipped) (→P.320)



Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator*^{1,2} (if equipped) (→P.333)



RCTA OFF indicator*^{1,2} (if equipped) (→P.339)

	PKSB OFF indicator ^{*1,2} (if equipped) (→P.344)
	Stop & Start indicator ^{*1,5} (if equipped) (→P.314)
	Stop & Start cancel indicator ^{*1,2,5} (if equipped) (→P.315)
	All-wheel drive lock indicator ^{*1} (AWD models only) (→P.362)
	Slip indicator ^{*1} (→P.365) (flashes)
	VSC OFF indicator ^{*1,2} (→P.365)
	Smart entry & start system indicator ^{*6} (→P.229)
	Gear Shift Indicator ^{*1} (if equipped) (→P.237)
	Parking brake indicator (→P.239)
	Brake hold standby indicator ^{*1} (→P.242)
	Brake hold operated indicator ^{*1} (→P.242)
	Eco Driving Indicator Light ^{*1} (→P.128)
	Low outside temperature indicator ^{*7} (→P.121)
	Security indicator ^{*8} (→P.106, 110)
	"AIR BAG ON/OFF" indicator ^{*1,8} (if equipped) (→P.54)
	"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator ^{*1,8} (if equipped) (→P.59)

● Drive mode indicators

► Except F SPORT models

	Customize mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.360)
	Eco drive mode indicator (→P.360)
	Sport mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.360)
	Sport S mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.360)
	Sport S+ mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.360)

► F SPORT models

	Customize mode indicator (→P.360)
	Eco drive mode indicator (→P.360)
	Sport S mode indicator (→P.360)
	Sport S+ mode indicator (→P.360)

^{*1}: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

^{*2}: This light comes on when the system is turned off.

^{*3}: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

- When the BSM function is enabled on  of the multi-information display, the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the BSM function is enabled on  of the multi-information display.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds. If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system. If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*4: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*5: When the start-up display is displayed on the multi-information display, this light may not turn on even though the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode.

*6: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*7: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, this indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

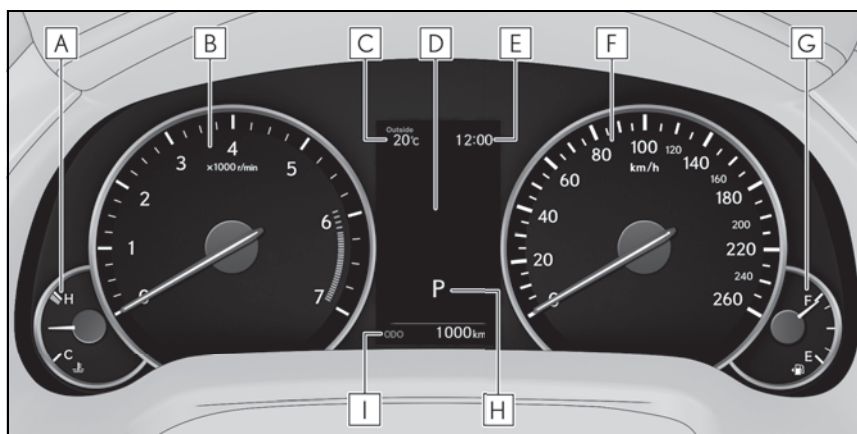
*8: This light illuminates on the center panel.

Gauges and meters

Meter display

■ Locations of gauges and meters

► Except F SPORT models



A Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

B Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

C Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

D Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.125)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.514)

E Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the instrument panel. (→P.422)

F Speedometer

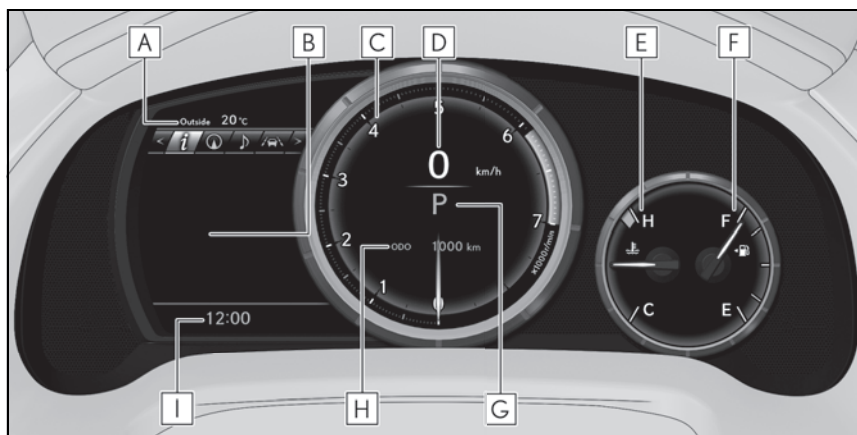
G Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

H Shift position display (→P.233)

I Odometer and trip meter display (→P.124)

► F SPORT models



A Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

B Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.125)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.514)

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

When sport mode is selected for the driving mode, the periphery of the tachometer will change color and the scale of the tachometer will be emphasized.

D Speedometer

E Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

F Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

G Shift position display (→P.233)

H Odometer and trip meter display (→P.124)

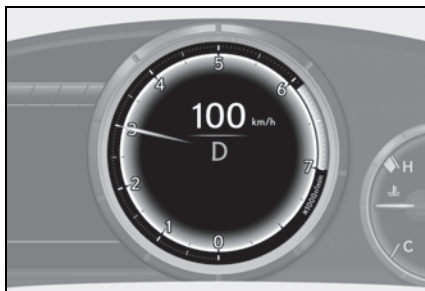
I Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the instrument panel. (→P.422)

■ **Rev indicator (F SPORT models)** When the engine speed reaches a set

speed, a ring-shaped indicator will be displayed on the tachometer.

The desired engine speed at which the Rev indicator will begin to be displayed can be set on  of the multi-information display. (→P.125)



■ Rev peak (F SPORT models)

The engine speed reaches or exceeds 5000 rpm, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 1 second.



■ The meters and display illuminate when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Outside temperature display

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
 - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])

- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ Customization

The gauges and meters can be customized on  of the multi-information display. (→P.131)



WARNING

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.

**NOTICE**

- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.541)

Odometer and trip meter display

■ Display items

● Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

● Trip meter A/trip meter B

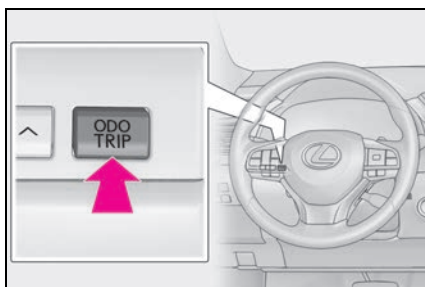
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

● Distance until next engine oil change (if equipped)

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

■ Changing the display

Each time the “ODO TRIP” switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.



■ Pop-up display

In some situations the following will be temporarily displayed:

● Stop & Start system operation time (current) (if equipped) (→P.314)

This display will be displayed when the engine is stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system.

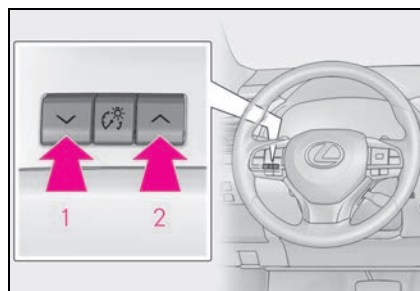
● Distance until next engine oil change (if equipped)

Displays the distance until the next engine oil change. This display will be displayed in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



- 1 Darker
- 2 Brighter

■ Brightness of the meters (day mode and night mode)

The brightness of the meters is changed between day mode and night mode.

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

Multi-information display

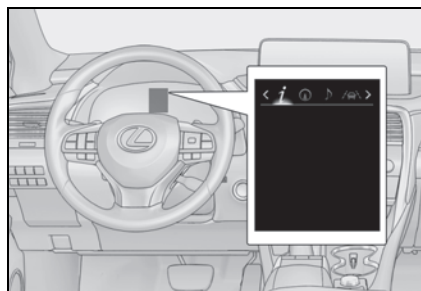
Display and menu icons

■ Display

► Except F SPORT models

By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

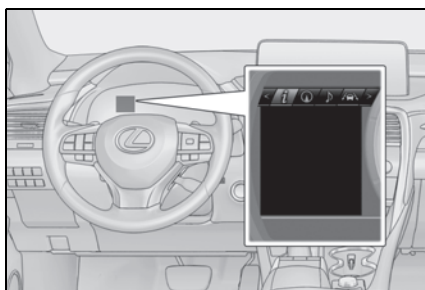
Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.



► F SPORT models

By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.



■ Menu icons

Select a menu icon to display its content.

-  Driving information (→P.127)
-  Navigation system-linked display (if equipped) (→P.130)
-  Audio system-linked display (→P.130)
-  Driving assist system information (if equipped) (→P.130)
-  Stop & Start system information (if equipped) (→P.130, 314)
-  Warning message display (→P.514)
-  Settings display (→P.131)

■ Liquid crystal display

→P.123

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.

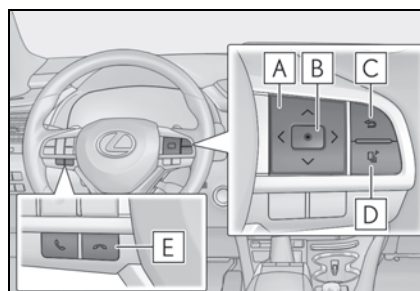
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

■ The information display at low temperatures

→P.123

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



- A** < > : Select menu icons
 ^ v : Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor
- B** Press: Enter/Set
 Press and hold: Reset
- C** Return to the previous screen
 Pressing and holding the switch will display the first screen of the selected menu icon.
- D** Press: Display the top screen
 Press and hold: Register current screen as the top screen
- E** Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details

regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Registering a top screen

The displayed top screen can be changed to a registered screen of your choice. To register a screen as the top screen, display the desired screen and press and hold .

- A message asking to confirm if registration is desired will be displayed. If the selected screen cannot be registered, a registration failure message will be displayed.
- When no screen has been registered, the drive information screen will be displayed.

Drive information

■ Content displayed as drive information

Displays drive information such as the following:

- Drive information 1
 - Current fuel consumption
 - Average fuel economy (after reset)
- Drive information 2
 - Distance (driving range)
 - Average vehicle speed (after reset)
- Drive information 3
 - Average fuel economy (after refuel)
 - Elapsed time (after start)

Displayed items (listed below) can be

changed on . (→P.131)

● Current fuel consumption

Displays instantaneous current fuel consumption

● Average fuel economy

After reset: Displays average fuel consumption since the display was reset^{*1,2}

After start: Displays average fuel consumption since engine start^{*2}

After refuel: Displays average fuel consumption since refuel^{*2,3}

● Average vehicle speed

After reset: Displays average vehicle speed since the display was reset^{*1}

After start: Displays average vehicle speed since engine start

● Elapsed time

After reset: Displays elapsed time since the display was reset^{*1}

After start: Displays elapsed time since engine start

● Distance

Driving range: Displays driving range with remaining fuel^{*3,4}

After start: Displays drive distance since vehicle start

● Other

Blank: No item

^{*1}: To reset, display the desired item and press and hold  of the meter control switch.

If both of the displayed items are resettable, a message will be displayed asking which item(s) to reset.

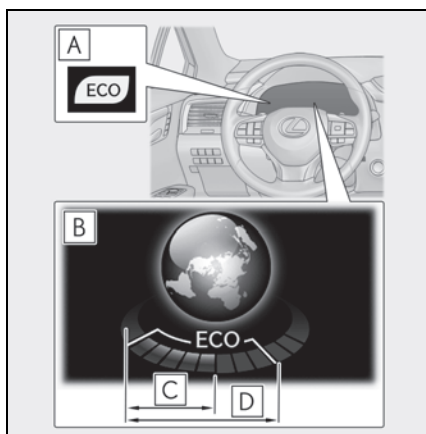
*2: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference.

*3: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

*4: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of

Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

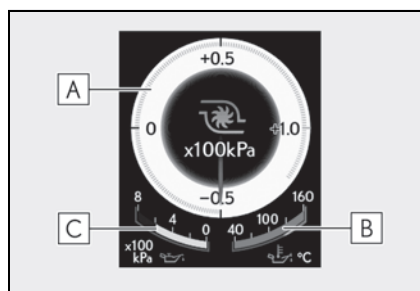
D Zone of Eco driving

■ AWD Control (if equipped)

Displays the driving force applied to each wheel using segments.

The greater the number of segments displayed, the greater the driving force applied.

■ Boost gauge/engine oil temperature gauge/engine oil pressure gauge (if equipped)



A Boost gauge

Displays the boost pressure. The display will change color if the specified pressure is exceeded.

B Engine oil temperature gauge

Displays the engine oil temperature. The display will flash if the engine oil temperature exceeds 140 °C (284 °F).

C Engine oil pressure gauge

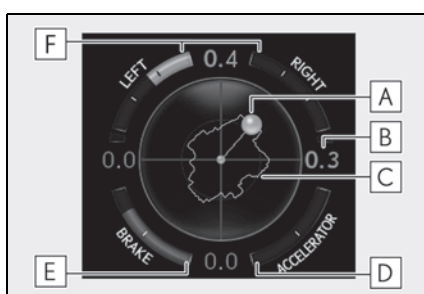
Displays the engine oil pressure. A buzzer will sound and warning message will be displayed if the engine oil pressure becomes low. (→P.514)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual

condition of the vehicle.

■ G-force (if equipped)

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle. Also displays, around the periphery of the G-force display, the left and right steering amount, accelerator pedal input, and brake fluid pressure.



- A** Acceleration G-force on the vehicle
- B** Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)
- C** Record of the maximum G-forces
- D** Accelerator pedal input
- E** Brake fluid pressure
- F** Steering amount

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

- Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

Press and hold  of the meter control switch to reset the record.

- Peak hold function

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are

generated, the G-force value display will turn amber and be held for 2 seconds.

■ Tire pressure (if equipped)

→P.466

■ Blank (No items)

Displays no drive information contents.

■ Eco Driving Indicator

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Sport mode is selected.
- The driving mode is set to customized mode and the powertrain control is set to power (→P.360)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

■ G-force display (if equipped)

- The G-force values may not be zero even when the vehicle is parked, such as when it is parked on an incline.
- Depending on the vehicle usage conditions, the brake fluid pressure display may not reach its maximum reading even though the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

■ Tire pressure (vehicles with a tire inflation pressure display function)

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- “---” may be displayed if the tire position information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.

- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance
- Compass display (heading-up display)

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

Driving assist system information

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.278)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped) (→P.287)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.295)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.304)
- Cruise control (if equipped) (→P.312)

Stop & Start system information (if equipped)

■ Stop & Start system operation time (current)/status notification

Displays the current amount of time the engine has been stopped due to the operation of the Stop & Start system.

Also shows the status of the Stop & Start system with a pop-up display. (→P.314)

■ Stop & Start system total operation time/amount of fuel saved

Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ of the meter control switch to display the following items:

- Stop & Start system operation time (after start/after reset)

Displays the accumulated total of the following:

- Stop & Start system operation time since engine start
- Stop & Start system operation time since display was reset
- Amount of fuel saved (after start/after reset)

Displays the accumulated total of the following:

- Amount of fuel saved since engine start
- Amount of fuel saved since display was reset

Use the displayed amount of saved fuel for reference only.

■ Stop & Start system settings

Press  of the meter control switch

to display the Stop & Start system settings screen.

On this screen, the following operations can be performed:

- Stop & Start

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the "A/C" switch of the air conditioning system is on can be set to 2 different levels. This setting can also be changed on .

- Reset

Select to reset the Stop & Start system operation time/amount of fuel saved display.

To reset, move the cursor to "Reset", and then press and hold .

Settings display

■ Meter display settings that can be changed

- Clock

Select to switch between 12-hour display and 24-hour display.

- Language

Select to change the language displayed.

- Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed.

- Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P.128)

Select to enable/disable the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

- Switch settings

Select to display how to change the top

screen.

- Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Select to select up to 2 items (→P.127) that will be displayed on each Drive information screen (Drive information 1 screen, Drive information 2 screen, and Drive information 3 screen) respectively.

- Pop-up display

Select to enable/disable the pop-up display.

- Intersection guidance (if equipped)

- Incoming calls

-  Duration (if equipped)

-  Status (if equipped)

- Brightness adjustment

- Color (except F SPORT models)

Select to set the color of the cursor on the multi-information display.

- Needle (F SPORT models)

Select to set the tachometer needle color.

- Rev indicator (F SPORT models) (→P.122)

- Select to enable/disable the Rev indicator.

- Select to set the desired engine speed at which the Rev indicator will begin to be displayed.

Selectable engine speed range:

RX300: 2000 r/min to 6100 r/min

RX350: 2000 r/min to 6500 r/min

- Rev peak (F SPORT models) (→P.123)

Select to enable/disable the Rev peak.

- Default setting

Select to reset the meter display settings to the default setting.

- Vehicle functions and settings that can be changed

→P.559

- Background color of the indicator/shift position display area (except F SPORT models)

The background color of the indicator/shift position display area is changed according to the driving mode as follows (→P.360):

- Eco drive mode: Blue
- Sport mode: Red

- Suspension of the settings display

- Some settings cannot be changed while driving. When changing settings, park the vehicle in a safe place.
- If a warning message is displayed, operation of the settings display will be suspended.



WARNING

- Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.



NOTICE

- While setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. To select a response to a displayed suggestion, use the meter control switches.

- Suggestion to enable the power back door (if equipped)

If the power back door system is disabled (setting on  set to off) and the power back door switch on the instrument panel is operated, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to enable the power back door system.

To enable the power back door system, select "Yes".

After enabling the power back door system, press the power back door switch again to open or close the power back door.

- Suggestion to turn off the headlights

If the headlights are left on for a certain amount of time after the engine switch has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to turn the headlights off.

To turn the headlights off, select "Yes".

If a front door is opened after the engine switch is turned off, this suggestion message will not be displayed.

- Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)

If the windshield wipers are operated

with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows.

To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to engine switch operation)**

If the engine switch is turned off with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows.

To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Customization**

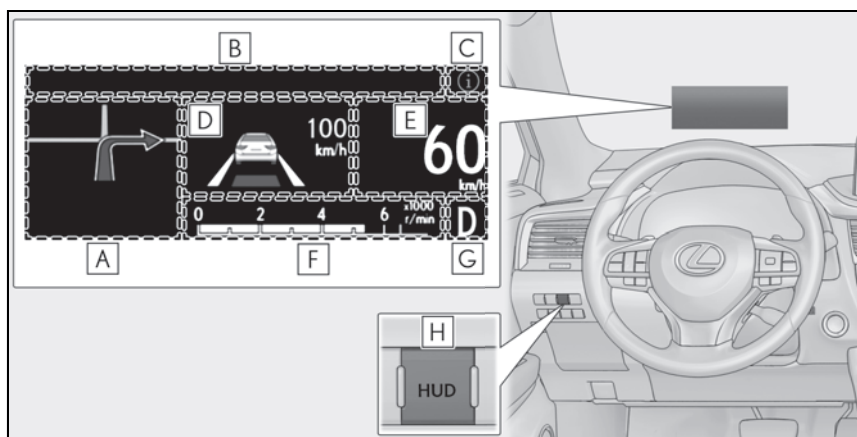
Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display is linked to the meters and navigation system (if equipped) and projects a variety of information in front of the driver, such as the current vehicle speed and route guidance to a set destination.

System components



Illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed by the head-up display.

A Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped) (→P.137)

B Message display area (→P.137)

Displays the following items:

- Warning/Message (if equipped)
- Audio system operation status
- Outside temperature

Displays the following item, which are linked to the navigation system:

- Street name

C   icon (→P.136)

D Driving assist system status display area (if equipped)

Displays the operational status of the following systems:

- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P.304)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.295)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (→P.287)

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.278)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.332)
- Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) (→P.350)

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanations of each system.

- E** Vehicle speed display
- F** Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer (→P.138)
- G** Shift position display (→P.233)
- H** HUD (Head-up display) switch (→P.135)

■ **Head-up display**

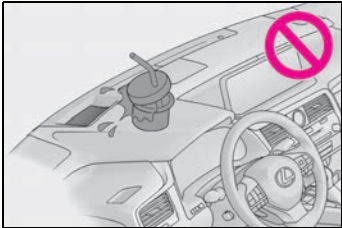
The head-up display may seem dark or hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

 **WARNING**

- **Before using the head-up display**
- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

 **NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to components**
- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.

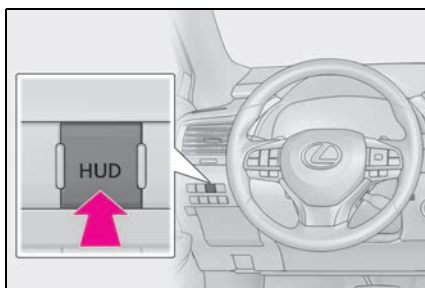


- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

Using the head-up display

■ **Enabling/Disabling the head-up display**

Press the HUD (Head-up display) switch.



■ Changing settings of the head-up display

Select  on the multi-information display (→P.559) to change the following settings:

● Display brightness/position

Select to adjust the brightness and position of the head-up display.

● Display content

Select to enable/disable the following items:

- Route guidance to destination (if equipped)
- Driving assist system status (if equipped)
- Compass (if equipped)
- Audio system operation status

● Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer

Select to display Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer/no content.

● Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ Enabling/disabling of the head-up display

If the head-up display is disabled, it will remain disabled when the engine switch is turned off then back to IGNITION ON mode.

■ Display brightness

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on  of the multi-information display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ Automatic adjustment of the head-up display position (if equipped)

A desired head-up display position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.193)

■ When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

WARNING

■ Caution for changing settings of the head-up display

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while the changing the settings of the head-up display.

Information icon/Master warning icon

Displays the following multi-information display linked icons:

 : Master warning icon

Displayed when a warning message is dis-

played on the multi-information display.
(→P.514)

: Information icon

Displayed when a suggestion/advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.132)

Message display area

Displays the following items in the appropriate situation:

■ Warning/Message (if equipped)

Displays the following system warning/messages:

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
(→P.270)
- Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) (→P.350)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range/Dynamic radar cruise control (→P.295, 304)
- Brake Override System (→P.217)
- Drive-Start Control (→P.217)

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of each system.

■ Audio system operation status

Displayed when the audio system is operated.

■ Outside temperature

Displayed in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode

- When the low outside temperature indicator is flashing

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of the outside temperature display on the multi-information display.
(→P.123)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

■ Street name

The name of the street that the vehicle is currently driving on is displayed on the bottom of the display area.

When the navigation system is performing route guidance, the name of the next street will be displayed on the top of the display area.

■ Street name display (vehicles with a navigation system)

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

■ Route guidance to destination

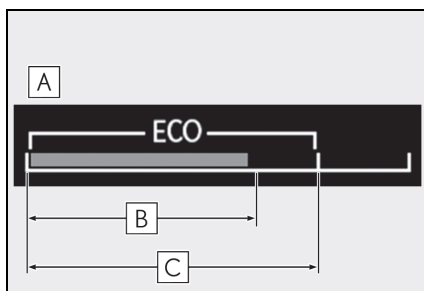
Displayed when the navigation system is performing route guidance. When approaching an intersection, an arrow will be displayed to indicate the suggested direction of travel.

■ Compass

Displays the direction of travel.

Eco Driving Indicator/Tachometer

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

C Zone of Eco driving

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P.128.

Tachometer

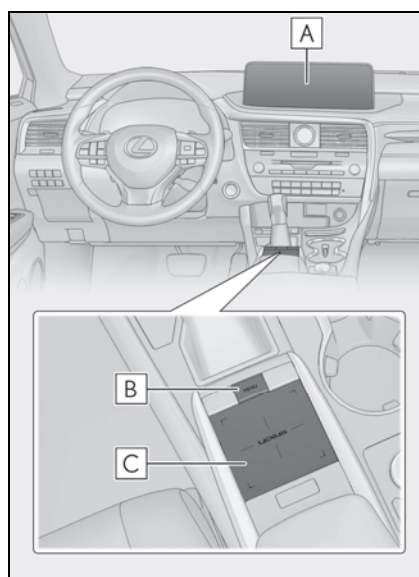
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Center Display.

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display:
The fuel consumption information can be displayed and operated on the side display.

System components



A Center Display

B "MENU" button

C Touchpad

Consumption

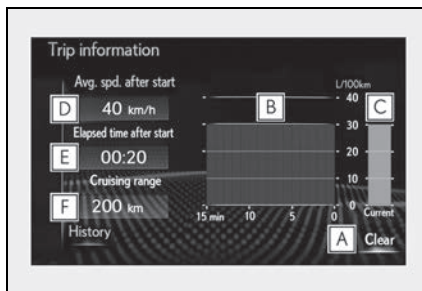
Trip information

Press the "MENU" button on the

Remote Touch, then select  on the menu screen.

If a screen other than "Trip information" is displayed, select "Trip information".

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.



- A** Resetting the consumption data
- B** Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes
- C** Current fuel consumption
- D** Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.
- E** Elapsed time since the engine was started.
- F** Cruising range

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

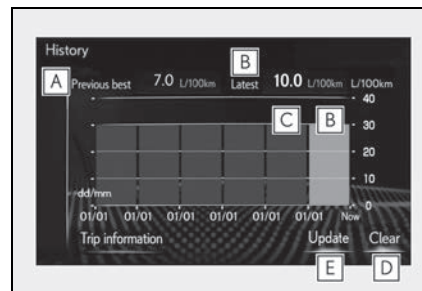
■ History

Press the "MENU" button on the

Remote Touch, then select  on the menu screen.

If a screen other than "History" is displayed, select "History".

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.



- A** Best recorded fuel consumption
- B** Latest fuel consumption
- C** Previous fuel consumption record
- D** Resetting the history data
- E** Updating the latest fuel consumption data

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Updating the history data

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ Resetting the data

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear".

■ Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.

As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

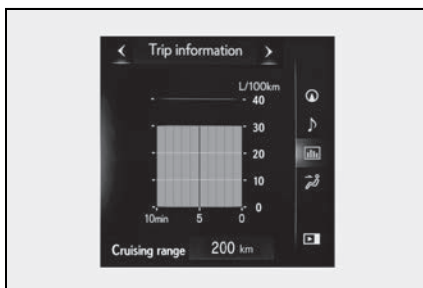
Using the side display (vehicles with a 12.3-inch display)

Display the vehicle information on the side display (→P.381), and then select **<** or **>** to display the desired screen.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Trip information (type A)

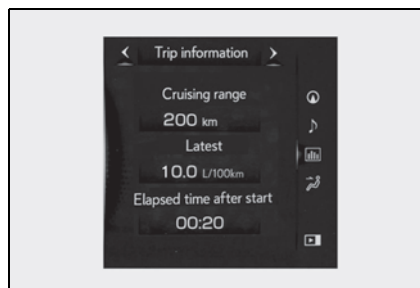
Displays the average fuel consumption for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.



Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Trip information (type B)

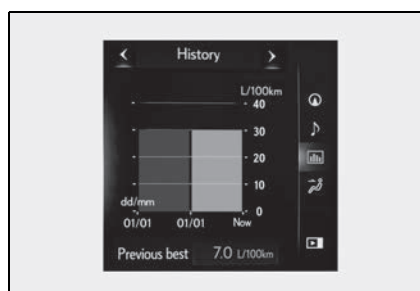
Displays the cruising range, latest fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the engine was started.



Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ History

Displays the average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.



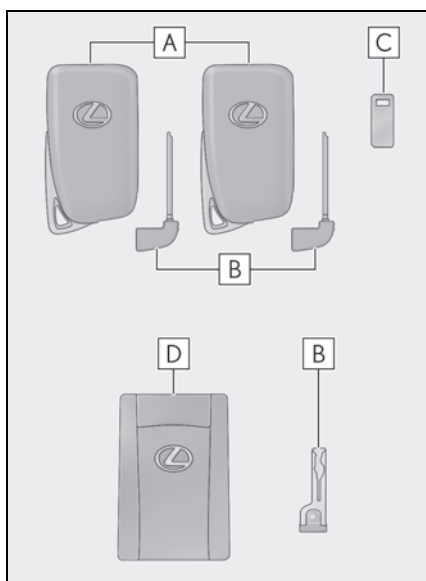
Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

3-1. Key information	
Keys	142
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors	
Side doors	146
Back door	151
Power back door	154
Smart entry & start system	166
3-3. Adjusting the seats	
Front seats	179
Rear seats	180
Driving position memory	193
Head restraints	196
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors	
Steering wheel	199
Inside rear view mirror	200
Outside rear view mirrors	201
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof	
Power windows	204
Moon roof	207
Panoramic moon roof	209

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.166)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P.144)

B Mechanical keys

C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

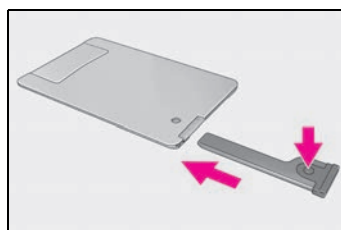
Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.166)

■ Card key (if equipped)

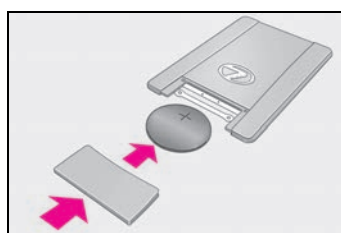
- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a

problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.

- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip, etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin, etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine is

stopped.

- To reduce key battery depletion when the electronic key is to not be used for long periods of time, set the electronic key to the battery-saving mode. (→P.167)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary.
 - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
 - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Table lamps
 - Induction cookers

■ Replacing the battery

→P.482

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

■ If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately one week after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your

possession) has been registered.



NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.534

■ When an electronic key is lost

→P.533

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.

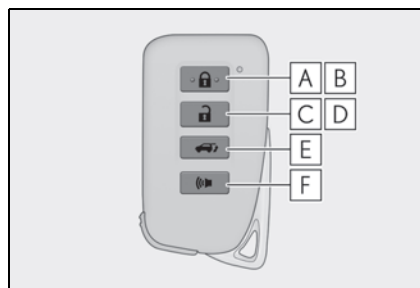


NOTICE

- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working. If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
 - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
 - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
 - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



- A** Locks all the doors (→P.146)
- B** Except for Korea: Closes the windows^{*2} and the moon roof^{*1, 2} or panoramic moon roof^{*1, 2} (→P.146)
- C** Unlocks all the doors (→P.146)
- D** Except for Korea: Opens the windows^{*2} and the moon roof^{*1, 2} or panoramic moon roof^{*1, 2} (→P.146)
- E** Opens and closes the power back door^{*1} (→P.156)
- F** Sounds the alarm^{*1}

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Theft deterrent panic mode (if equipped)

When  is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

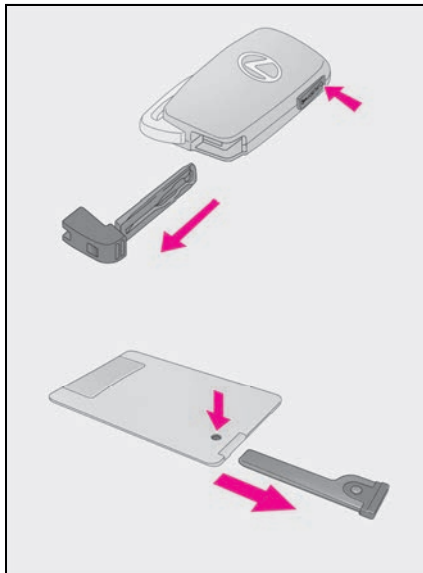


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.534)



■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P.407)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ If you lose your mechanical keys

→P.533

■ If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

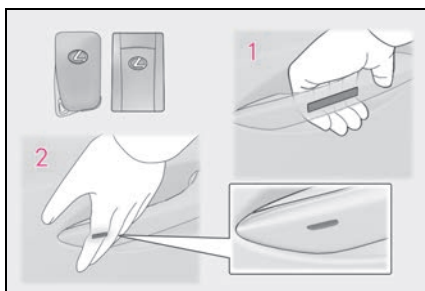
Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



- 1** Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.*

Some models: Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip any passenger door handle to unlock all the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

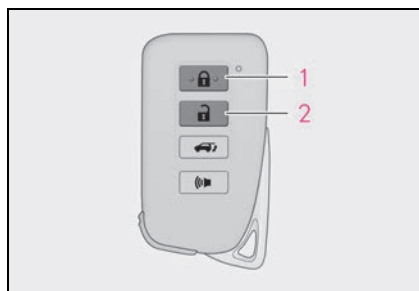
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

- 2** Touch the lock sensor (indentation on the surface of the door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

Wireless remote control



- 1** Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Except for Korea: Press and hold to close the windows*² and the moon roof*^{1,2} or panoramic moon roof*^{1,2}

- 2** Unlocks all the doors

Some models: Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Except for Korea: Press and hold to open the windows*² and the moon roof*^{1,2} or panoramic moon roof*^{1,2}

*¹: If equipped

*²: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

- 1** Turn the engine switch off.
- 2** Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (if equipped) (→P.112)
- 3** When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold ,  or  (if equipped) for

approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
 (Right-hand drive vehicles) Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Holding any of the passenger door handles unlocks all the doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds

after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.111)

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked.

Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Operation signals

Doors:

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Some models: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof or panoramic moon roof:

Except for Korea: A buzzer sounds.

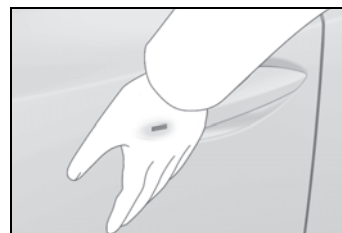
■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle

When the door cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm.

When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Setting the alarm

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.110)

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P.168

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.534)

Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.482)

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The doors cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key. (→P.534)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

! WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.

- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.

Vehicles without double locking system: Be especially careful for the driver's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.

Vehicles with double locking system: Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.

- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

■ **When opening or closing a door**

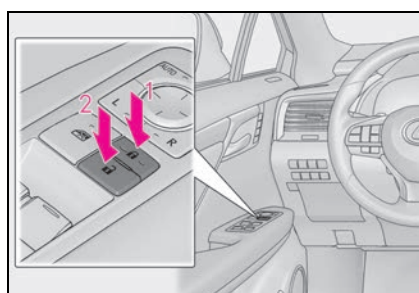
Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof**

Except for Korea: Operate the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ **Door lock switches (to lock/unlock)**

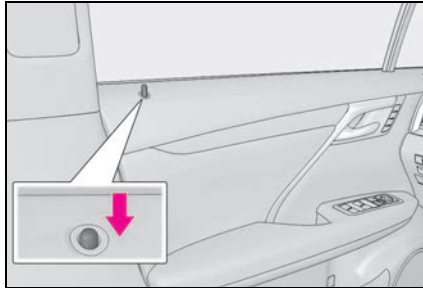


- 1 Locks all the doors

- 2 Unlocks all the doors

■ Inside lock buttons (to lock)

Push down the inside lock button to lock the door.



■ Inside door handles (to unlock)

- Vehicles without double locking system

For the driver's door: Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

For the passenger doors: Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

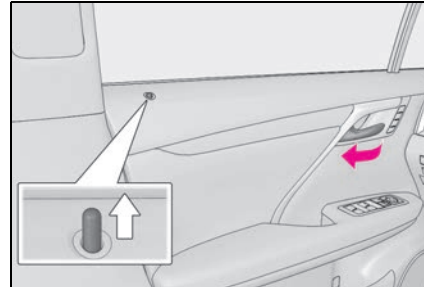
- Vehicles with double locking system

For the front doors: Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

For the rear doors: Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.



■ Locking the doors from the outside without a key

- For the front doors

- 1 Push down the inside lock button.
- 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle. However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

- For the rear doors

- 1 Push down the inside lock button.
- 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle. However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

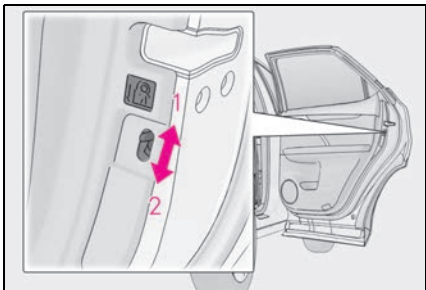
■ Open door warning buzzer

If the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that door(s) or the hood is not fully closed.

The open door(s) or hood is displayed on the multi-information display.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.



- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:
For instructions on customizing, refer to P.559.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever out of P.

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

Back door*

* : If equipped

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.

If the back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.

In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.

- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.

If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.

- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.

Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, arms, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

■ Operating the back door

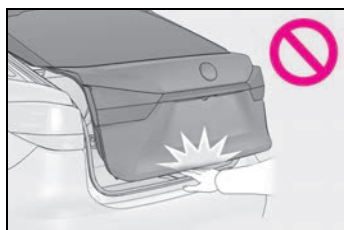
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



! WARNING

- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.



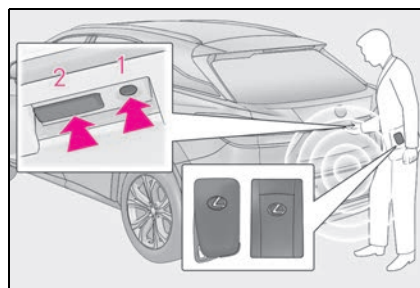
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the back door damper stay (→P.153) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.

Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Unlocking and locking the back door from the outside**■ Smart entry & start system**

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.

**1 Locks all the doors**

Check that the door is securely locked.

2 Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

■ Wireless remote control

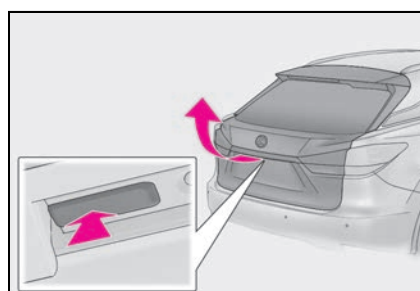
→P.146

Locking and unlocking the back door from the inside**■ Door lock switch**

→P.148

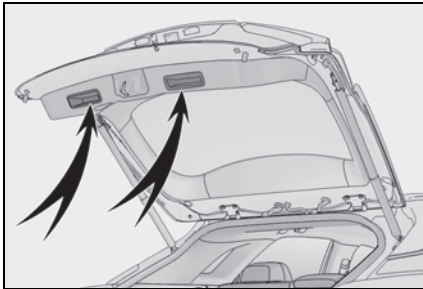
Opening the back door from the outside

Raise the back door while pressing up the back door opener switch.



When closing the back door

Lower the back door using a back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.



■ Luggage compartment lights

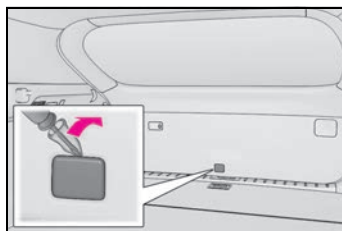
- The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ If the back door opener is inoperative

The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

- 1 Remove the cover.

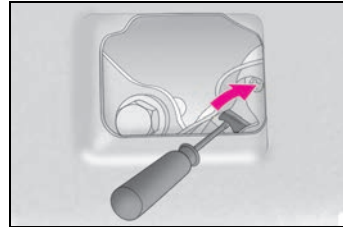
To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and cover as shown in the illustration.



- 2 Move the lever.

Use a flathead screwdriver to move the

lever.



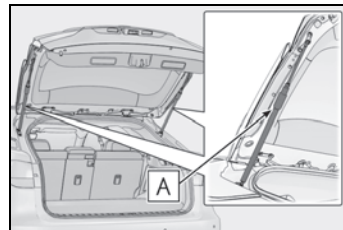
⚠ NOTICE

■ Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays **A** that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay **A**, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

Power back door*

* : If equipped

The power back door can be opened using the power back door opener switch, smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the power back door is fully closed. If the power back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the power back door closed while driving.

If the power back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.

In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the power back door before driving.

- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.

If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.

- Do not allow a child to open or close the power back door.

Doing so may cause the power back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, arms, head, or neck to be caught by the closing power back door.

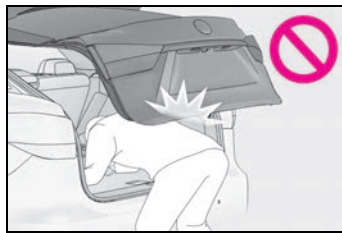
■ Operating the power back door

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

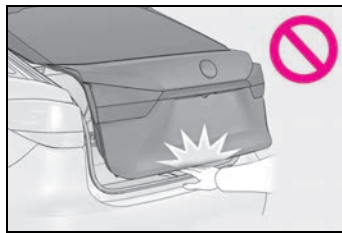
- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the power back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the power back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the power back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the power back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the power back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.

! WARNING

- The power back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



- When closing the power back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.



- When closing the power back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the power back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the back door spindle (→P.163) to close the power back door, and do not hang on the back door spindle.

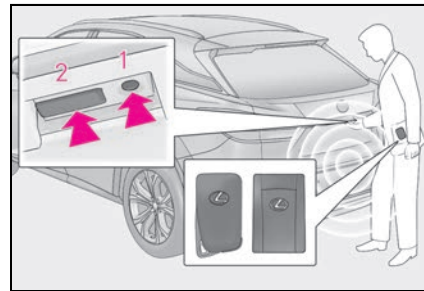
Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door spindle to break, causing an accident.

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the power back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Unlocking and locking the power back door from the outside

■ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

2 Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

■ Wireless remote control

→P.144

Unlocking and locking the power back door from the inside

■ Door lock switch

→P.148

Opening/closing the power back door

■ Opening/closing the power back door using the wireless remote control

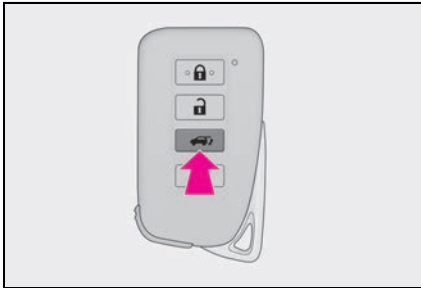
Press and hold the switch for approximately 1 second.

The power back door can be operated when it is unlocked*.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

Pressing and holding the switch again for approximately 1 second will operate the power back door in the opposite direction.

*: Opening of the power back door when it is locked can be enabled by a customized setting. (→P.559)



■ Opening/closing the power back door from the inside

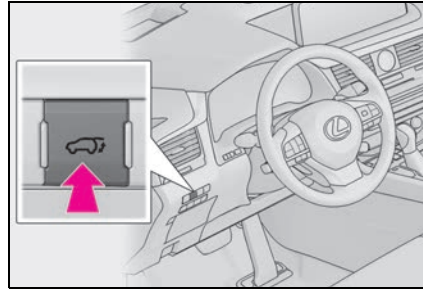
Press and hold the switch for approximately 1 second.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically open or close. However, if the power back door is locked, it will not open.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

ation.

Pressing and holding the switch again for approximately 1 second will operate the power back door in the opposite direction.



■ Back door opener switch

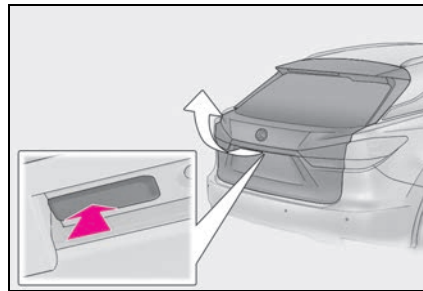
● Open

When the power back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener switch.

When the power back door is locked: While carrying an electronic key, press and hold the back door opener switch.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically open.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing will stop the operation.

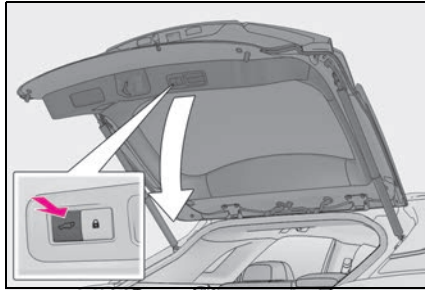


● Close

Press the  switch.

A buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically close.

Pressing the  switch while the power back door is closing will stop the operation. Pressing the switch again will open the power back door automatically.



- Close the back door and lock all doors (close & lock function)

Press the  switch.

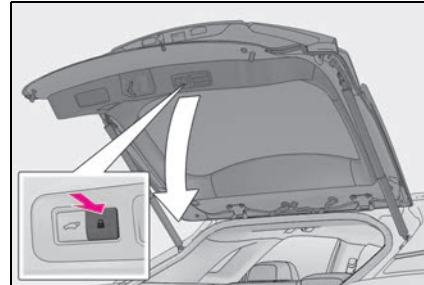
The power back door will close and all of the doors will be locked at the same time.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the power back door will begin closing automatically. When the power back door is closed, all of the doors will lock simultaneously and operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked.

If the  switch is pressed while the power back door is closing, the operation will stop.

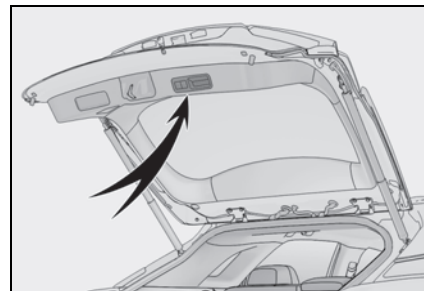
Pressing the switch again will open the power back door automatically.

Vehicles with Double locking system: The double locking system will not operate at this time.



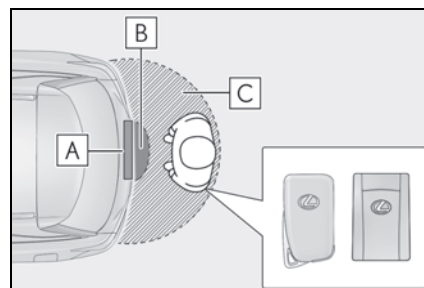
- Closing the power back door using the back door handle

Lower the power back door using the back door handle, then a buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically close.



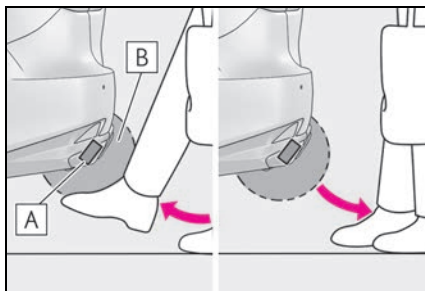
- Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

- 1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 50 to 60 cm (19.7 to 23.6 in.) from the rear bumper.



- A** Kick sensor
- B** Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area
- C** Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.167)

- 2** Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper and then pulling it back.
- Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.
- The Hands Free Power Back Door will not start operating while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.
- Operate the Hands Free Power Back Door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.
- If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.



- A** Kick sensor
 - B** Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area
- 3** When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically fully open/close.

If kick operation is performed again in the middle of back door operating, the operation will stop.

■ Hands free close & lock function* (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

*: This setting can be customized by your Lexus dealer.

If the power back door is closed using a Hands Free Power Back Door close operation, all of the doors will be locked at the same time.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound before the power back door begins to close. The door lock operation signals will operate to indicate that the power back door has closed and all of the doors have locked simultaneously.

If a Hands Free Power Back Door operation is performed while the power back door is operating, the power back door will stop.

If a Hands Free Power Back Door operation is performed again, the power back door will open.

■ Luggage compartment lights

- The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ Power back door operating conditions

If the following conditions are met with the power back door operation enabled, the power back door can be opened and closed automatically.

- The power back door is unlocked. However, the power back door will operate if it is locked, in the following situations:
 - When an electronic key is being carried and the back door opener switch is

- pressed.
- When opening of the power back door using the wireless remote control when it is locked is enabled. (→P.559)
- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the vehicle speed must be lower than 3 km/h (2 mph) and one of the following conditions must be met in addition to the above conditions:
 - The parking brake is engaged.
 - The brake pedal is depressed.
 - The shift lever is in P.

■ Close & lock function operating conditions

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the power back door are closed.
- The engine switch is off.

■ Hands Free Power Back Door operating conditions (if equipped)

- The Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) setting is on.
- When an electronic key is carried within the operation range.

■ Hands free close & lock function operating conditions (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- The hands free close & lock function setting is on.
- The Hands Free Power Back Door operating conditions are met.
- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the power back door are closed.
- The engine switch is off.

■ Back door closer

In the event that the power back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The back door closer can function when the engine switch is in any mode.
- The power back door can be opened using the back door opener switch even if the back door closer is operating.

■ Operation of the power back door

- When the power back door begins to operate, a buzzer will sound.
- For some models, when the power back door begins to operate, the emergency flashers will flash.
- When the power back door is disabled, the power back door will not operate but can be opened and closed manually.
- The power back door turns to manual operation when the back door opener switch is pressed while the power back door is in an automatic opening/closing operation.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while opening, a buzzer will sound and the power back door will stop immediately. If anything obstructs the power back door while closing, a buzzer will sound and the power back door will automatically move slightly in the opposite direction and then stop.

■ Back door reserve lock function

This function reserves the locking of the power back door when the power back door is open. If the following operations are performed, all of the doors except the power back door will lock and then the power back door will lock when it is completely closed.

- 1 Close all of the doors, except the power back door.
- 2 Perform an automatic closing operation of the power back door and lock the doors using the wireless remote control (→P.144) or smart entry & start system (→P.146) while the power back door is closing.

Also, if the back door does not fully close due to the operation of the jam protection function, etc., while the back door is automatically closing after a reserve lock operation is performed, the reserve lock function

is canceled and all the doors will unlock.

■ Situations in which the close & lock function may not operate properly

In the following situations, the close & lock function may not operate properly:

- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door (→P.156) is pressed by a hand which is holding an electronic key
- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door (→P.156) is pressed when the electronic key is in a bag, etc. that is placed on the ground
- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door (→P.156) is pressed with the electronic key not near the vehicle.

■ Situations in which the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly (if equipped)

In the following situations, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly:

- When a foot remains under the rear bumper
- If the rear bumper is strongly hit with a foot or is touched for a while
If the rear bumper has been touched for a while, wait for a short time before attempting to operate the Hands Free Power Back Door again.
- When standing excessively close to the rear bumper
- When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle (→P.168)
- When the vehicle is parked near metal, or an external radio wave or electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, fluorescent light, or metal plate
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that gen-

erates strong radio waves or electrical noise

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When mud, snow, ice, etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear bumper, such as plants
- When an accessory is installed to the rear bumper

If an accessory has been installed, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off.

- RX350L: When a tire other than the spare tire is stored in the spare tire storage area

■ Preventing unintentional operation of the Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

When an electronic key is in the operation detection area, the Hands Free Power Back Door may operate unintentionally, so be careful in the following situations:

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When dirt is wiped off the rear bumper
- When a small animal or small object, such as a ball, moves under the rear bumper
- When an object is moved from under the rear bumper
- If someone is swinging their legs while sitting on the rear bumper
- If the legs or another part of someone's body contacts the rear bumper while passing by the vehicle
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light

- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the vehicle is parked in a place where objects such as plants are near the rear bumper
- If luggage, etc. is set near the rear bumper
- If accessories or a vehicle cover is installed/removed near the rear bumper
- When the vehicle is being towed

To prevent unintentional operation, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off.

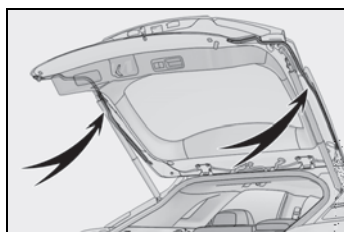
■ When reconnecting the battery

To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the power back door manually.

■ Jam protection function

Sensors are installed in the right and left sides of the power back door. When the door is automatically closing and the sensors are pushed due to an object being caught, etc., the jam protection function will operate.

From that position the door will automatically move a little in the opposite direction and then the function will stop.



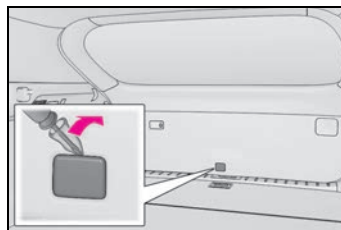
■ If the power back door opener is inoperative

The power back door can be unlocked from the inside

- 1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and cover as

shown in the illustration.



- 2 Move the lever.



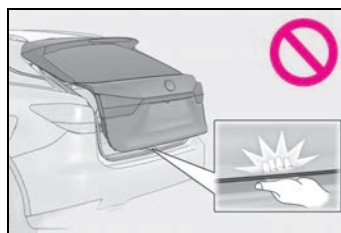
■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

⚠ WARNING

■ Back door closer

- In the event that the power back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else in the power back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is disabled.

WARNING

■ Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the power back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is disabled while the power back door is operating, the power back door will stop operating. The power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the power back door may open or close suddenly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door (→P.158) are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the power back door may stop opening or closing. The power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care on an incline in this situation, as the power back door may move suddenly.
- On an incline, the power back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the power back door is fully open and secure.

- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the power back door must then be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped power back door may suddenly open or close, causing an accident.

- When the power back door contacts an obstacle
- When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, the power back door may not operate, causing a malfunction, or the power back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, arms, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the power back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the power back door fully closes. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

**WARNING**

■ **Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot. When operating the Hands Free Power Back Door, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipe.
- Do not operate the Hands Free Power Back Door if there is little space under the rear bumper.

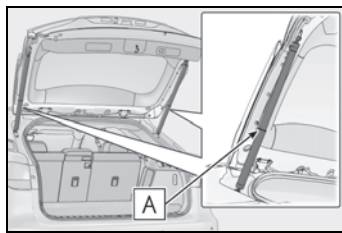
**NOTICE**

■ **Back door spindles**

The power back door is equipped with spindles **A** that hold the power back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle **A**, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the power back door.

- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.

■ **To prevent back door closer malfunction**

- Do not apply excessive force to the power back door while the back door closer is operating. Applying excessive force may cause the back door closer to malfunction.
- If the power back door is opened and closed repeatedly in a short amount of time, the back door closer may stop operating. In this case, manually open the power back door once and wait for a while before attempting to close it again.

■ **To prevent malfunction of the power back door**

- Make sure that there is no ice between the power back door and frame that would prevent movement of the power back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the power back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the power back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors installed on the right and left edges of the power back door (→P.161) with a knife or other sharp object. If a sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

■ **Close & lock function/Hands free close & lock function**

When closing the power back door using the close & lock function/hands free close & lock function, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound before the operation begins.

To check that the operation has started correctly, check that a different buzzer than the normal one has sounded.

**NOTICE**

Additionally, when the power back door is fully closed and locked, operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked.

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the operational signals have operated and that all of the doors are locked.

■ Hands Free Power Back Door precautions (if equipped)

The kick sensor is located behind lower center part of the rear bumper. Observe the following to ensure that the Hands Free Power Back Door function operates properly:

- Keep the lower center part of the rear bumper clean at all times.

If the lower center part of the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate. In this situation, clean off the dirt or snow, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the Hands Free Power Back Door operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Do not apply coatings that have a rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect, or other coatings, to the lower center part of the rear bumper.
- Do not park the vehicle near objects that may move and contact the lower center part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees.

If the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the lower center part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate. In this situation, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the Hands Free Power Back Door operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Do not subject the rear bumper or its surrounding area to a strong impact.

If the rear bumper or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly.

If the Hands Free Power Back Door does not operate in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- The kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact.
- The lower center part of the rear bumper is scratched or damaged.
- Do not disassemble the rear bumper.
- Do not attach stickers to the rear bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, disable the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor).

Canceling the power back door system

The power back door system can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display. (→P.125)

- 1 Press or of the meter control switches and select .
- 2 Press or of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 3 Press or of the meter control switches, select and then press .

- 4 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ of the meter control switches, and then select "PBD".
- 5 ON and OFF will be switched over with presses of $\bullet$ on the meter control switches.

When OFF is selected and the operations of the power back door is made to stop from the  of multi-information display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the power back door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

Canceling the Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

The Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display. (→P.125)

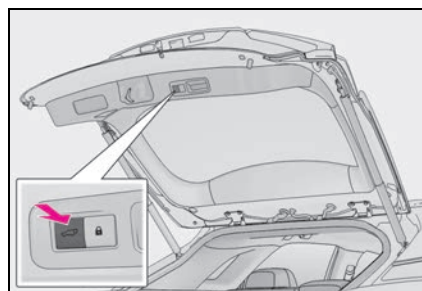
- 1 Press $<$ or $>$ of the meter control switches and select .
- 2 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press $\bullet$.
- 3 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ of the meter control switches, select PBD and then press $\bullet$.
- 4 Press $\wedge$ or $\vee$ of the meter control switches, and then select "Kick Sensor".
- 5 ON and OFF will be switched over with presses of $\bullet$ on the meter control switches.

When OFF is selected and the operations of the Hands Free Power Back Door is made to stop from the  of multi-information display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the Hands Free Power Back Door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

Adjusting the open position of the power back door

The open position of the power back door can be adjusted.

- 1 Stop the power back door at the desired position. (→P.156)
- 2 Press and hold the  switch on the lower part of the power back door for 2 seconds.
 - When setting is complete, a buzzer will sound 4 times.
 - The next time the power back door is opened, it will stop at that position.



Returning the power back door opening position to the default setting

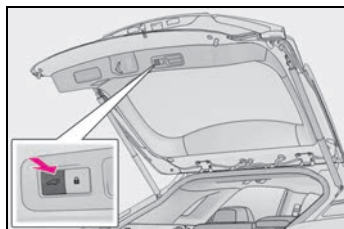
Press and hold the  switch on the lower part of the power back door for 7 seconds.

A buzzer will sound twice. The next time the power back door is opened, it will open

3

Before driving

to the default position.



■ Customization

The opening position can be set with the navigation system or multimedia system.

Priority for the stop position is given to the last position set by either the  switch, navigation system or multimedia system.

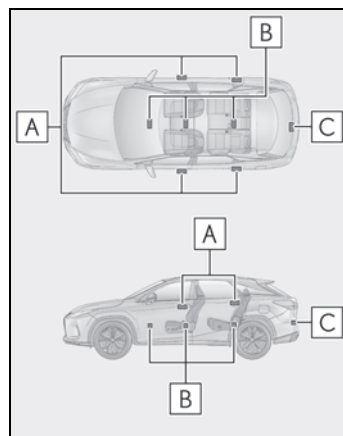
(Customizable features:→P.559)

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

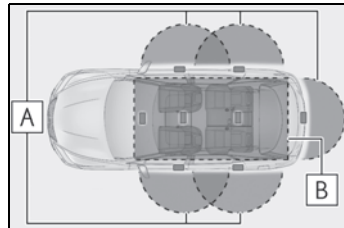
- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.146)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P.152, 155)
- Starts and stops the engine (→P.229)

■ Antenna location



- A** Antennas outside the cabin
- B** Antennas inside the cabin
- C** Antenna outside the luggage compartment

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **Alarms and warning messages**

An alarm sounds and warning messages are displayed on the multi-information display to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. (→P.514)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

- When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

- When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (The driver's door was opened when the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

■ **If "Key Left inside Vehicle" is shown on the multi-information display**

An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle. Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
 - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
 - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

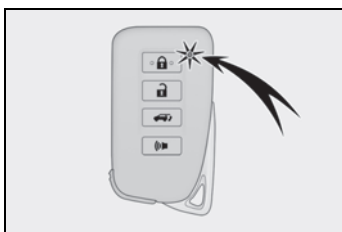
■ **Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode**

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding

 Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system use weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.534)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
 - Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
 - Another vehicle's electronic key, another electronic key of your vehicle, or a wireless key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
 - Digital audio players
 - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices
- When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage compartment, floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount

of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- Some models: When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
 - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
 - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.167)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance.
- Setting the electronic key to battery-saving mode helps to reduce key battery depletion. (→P.167)

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. →P.534
- Starting the engine: →P.536

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.146, 156, 534)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.536

170 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

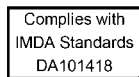
- Stopping the engine: →P.231
- Certification for the smart entry & start system



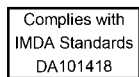
상호명/제조자 : TOKAI RIKAI CO., LTD.
기자재의 명칭(모델명) : 특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기) (BP1EK)
제조년월/제조국 : Shown on product./Japan
식별부호 : MSIP-CRM-TRJ-BP1EK



상호명/제조자 : TOKAI RIKAI CO., LTD.
기자재의 명칭(모델명) : 특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기) (BP1EK)
제조년월/제조국 : Shown on product./Japan
식별부호 : MSIP-CRM-TRJ-BP1EK



DENSO 14CCK



DENSO 14CCK

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

3

Before driving

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

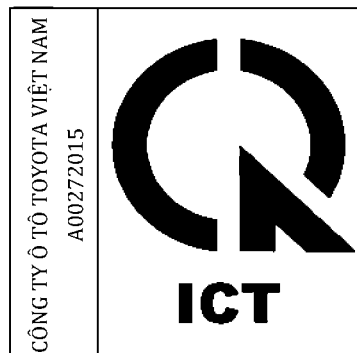
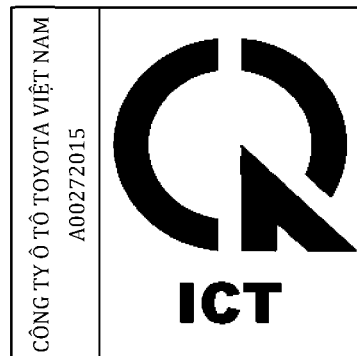
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。





3
Before driving



טויוטה מוטור אירופה נולסא, שדרות דו בורגט 60-1140 בריסל,
בלגיה www.toyota-europe.com

סימן רשום	DENSO:
שנת ייצור	:ראה מוצר
מוצר: כרטיס חכם	
דגם	: 14CCK
ארץ ייצור	: יפן

טויוטה מוטור אירופה נולסא, שדרות דו בורגט 60-1140 בריסל,
בלגיה www.toyota-europe.com

סימן רשום	DENSO:
שנת ייצור	:ראה מוצר
מוצר: כרטיס חכם	
דגם	: 14CCK
ארץ ייצור	: יפן

DENSO
14CCK

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES
ID: H-22476

3

Before driving



NR: 2019-02-I-0104
DENSO 14CCK

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.
Dirección: Av.Mariscal Lopez 2801/2899 Asuncion, Paraguay

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



3378-14-1732



01420-19-01732

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



3378-14-1732



01420-19-01732

Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



Este equipamento está homologado pela ANATEL de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000 e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados.

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



WARNING

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.166)

The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

⚠ WARNING

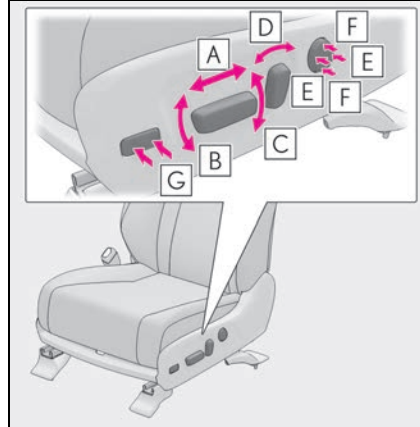
■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary. If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident. Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Adjustment procedure



- A** Seat position adjustment switch
- B** Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
- C** Vertical height adjustment switch
- D** Seatback angle adjustment switch
- E** Lumbar support firmness adjustment switch
- F** Lumbar support height adjustment switch (if equipped)
- G** Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped)

■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat (on some models) and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.193)

Rear seats

WARNING

■ When a rear seatback is folded

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold down the rear seatbacks while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, apply the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded rear seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ When operating the rear seatback

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure that passengers are clear of the rear seatback before operating it.
- To prevent hands and other body parts from being caught, keep them away from the gaps in the seats and the moving parts of the seats when operating a rear seatback.
- Power seat: Do not let children operate the rear seatback. Other passengers may get caught in the seat.
- Power seat: Make sure that all passengers are clear of a seat before folding it. Do not let passengers sit in the seat while it is being folded.

■ Seat adjustment

Second-row seats: To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is reclined excessively, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

■ After adjusting the rear seats

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure that the rear seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught between or behind in the rear seatback.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

■ Jam protection function (power seat)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not operate if something is caught just before the fully folded position. Be careful so that fingers, etc. do not get caught.
- The jam protection function may not operate depending on the shape or position of the obstruction. Be careful so that fingers, etc. do not get caught.

**NOTICE**

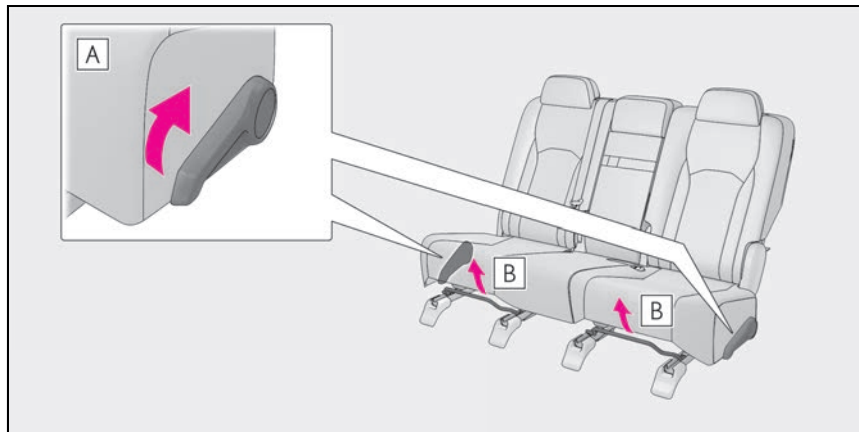
■ **Before folding a rear seat seatback**

- Second-row seats: Make sure to stow the center seat seat belt buckle and armrest before folding the second-row seat seatbacks. (→P.421)

- Third-row seats: Make sure that the third-row seats and trays are free of obstructions before folding the seatbacks. Otherwise the seat or tray may be damaged.

Adjustment procedure (RX300/RX350)

► Manual seat



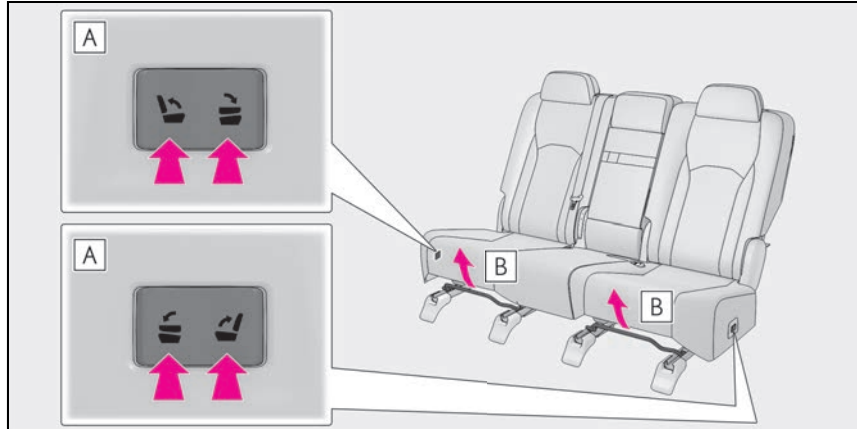
A Seatback angle adjustment lever

B Seat position adjustment lever

3

Before driving

► Power seat



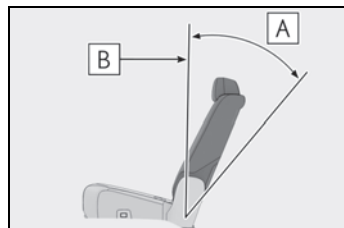
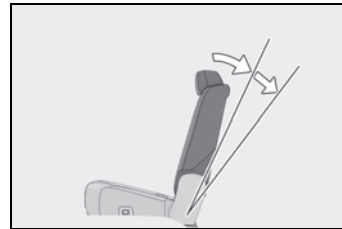
A Seatback angle adjustment switch

B Seat position adjustment lever

■ The rear seatbacks can be adjusted when (power seat)

When the rear seatback is in a position within the range **A** shown in the illustration, the rear seat operation switch (rear seat) can be used to adjust the rear seatback.

B is where the rear seatback is at its most upright position.

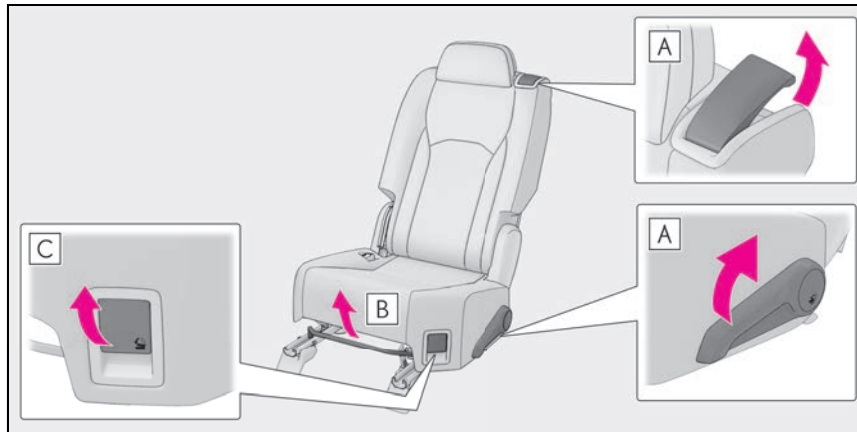


■ Fully reclining the rear seatback (power seat)

Operate the rear seat operation switch (rear seat) to recline the rear seatback and stop it partway. To set the rear seatback to the rearmost position, press the button again.

Adjustment procedure (RX350L)

► Second-row seats (Separate seat)

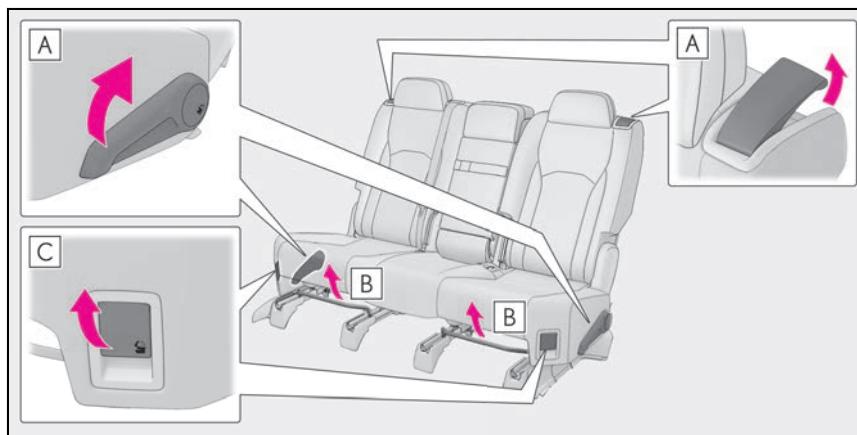


A Seatback angle adjustment lever

B Seat position adjustment lever

C Seatback folding lever

► Second-row seats (Bench seat)

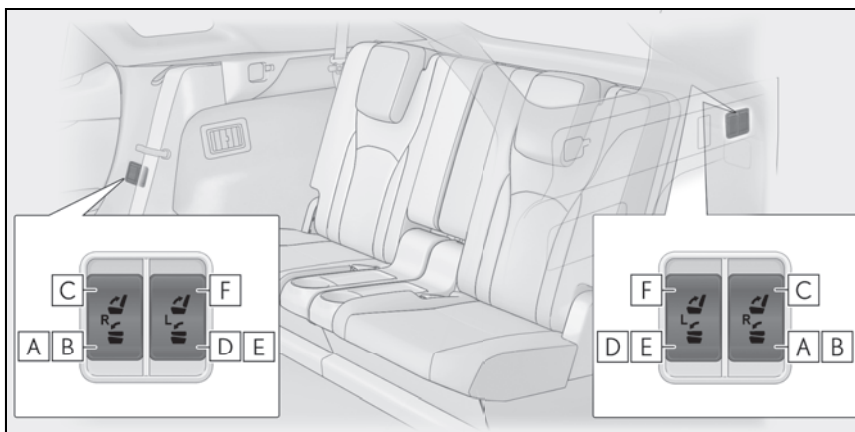


A Seatback angle adjustment lever

B Seat position adjustment lever

C Seatback folding lever

► Third-row seats



- A** Right seat fold switch (→P.190)
- B** Right seat position adjustment switch (→P.192)
- C** Right seat return switch (→P.191)
- D** Left seat fold switch (→P.190)
- E** Left seat position adjustment switch (→P.192)
- F** Left seat return switch (→P.191)

Folding the second-row seat seatbacks (RX300/RX350)

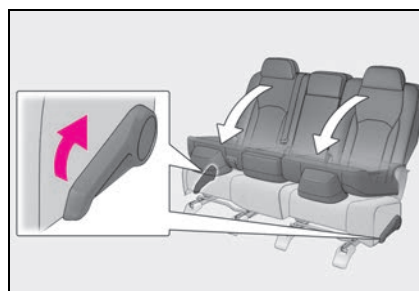
■ **Before folding the rear seatbacks**

- 1** Stow the center seat seat belt buckle.
- 2** Lower the rear seat head restraints to the lowest position. (→P.196)

■ **Folding the rear seatbacks (manual seat)**

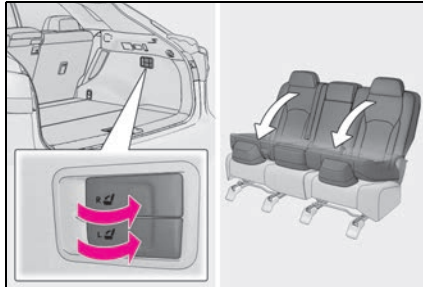
- Using the seatback angle adjustment lever

Pull the lever and fold the rear seatback.



- Using the lever in the luggage compartment

Pull the lever and fold the rear seatback.



■ Folding the rear seatbacks (power seat)

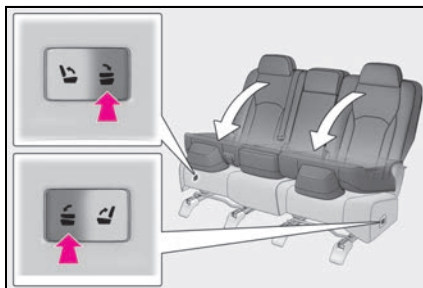
Press and hold the fold switch until the rear seatback begins to operate.

A buzzer will sound and then the operation will start. When the operation is completed, the buzzer will sound again.

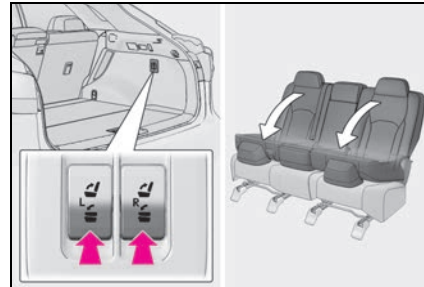
To stop the operation partway, press either side of the switch for the operating seat. Any rear seat operation switch for the operating seat, regardless of location, can be used to stop the operation. (A buzzer may sound depending on the position that the rear seatback is stopped.)

► Using the seatback angle adjustment switch

If the rear seatback is reclined, adjust it to the most upright position and then press the switch again.

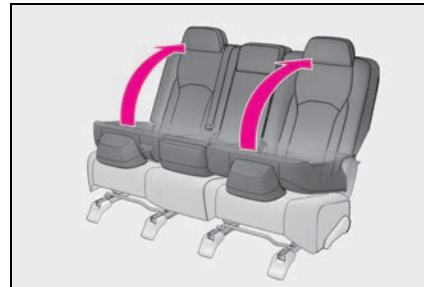


► Using the switch in the luggage compartment

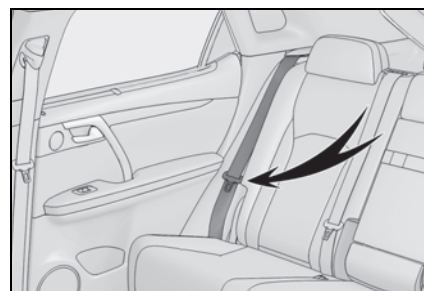


■ Returning the rear seatbacks (manual seat)

- 1 Lift the rear seatback until it locks in position.



- 2 Check that the plate of the seat belt is on the front side of the seatback.



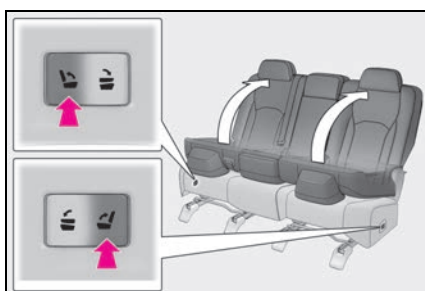
■ Returning the rear seatbacks (power seat)

- 1 Press and hold the return switch until the rear seatback begins to operate.

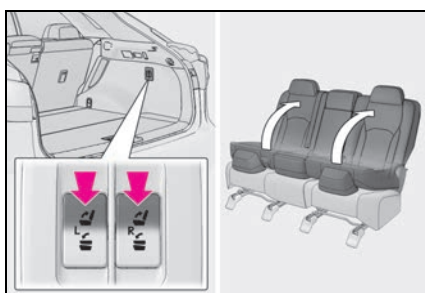
A buzzer will sound and then the operation will start. When the operation is completed, the buzzer will sound twice again.

To stop the operation partway, press either side of the switch for the operating seat. Any rear seat operation switch for the operating seat, regardless of location, can be used to stop the operation. (A buzzer may sound depending on the position that the rear seatback is stopped.)

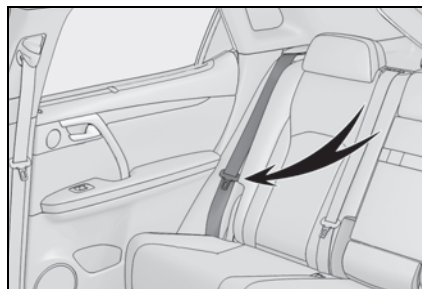
- Using the seatback angle adjustment switch



- Using the switch in the luggage compartment



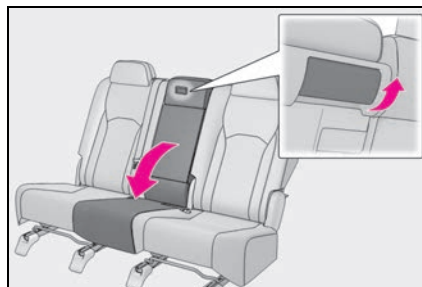
- 2 Check that the plate of the seat belt is on the front side of the seatback.



■ Folding the rear center seatback only

Pull the lock release lever on the back side of the seatback and fold the center seatback.

To return the rear center seatback to its original position, lift it until it locks in position.



■ Engine switch mode conditions under which the rear seatbacks can be folded down or raised (power seat)

The rear seatbacks can be folded down or raised when the engine switch is in either of the following modes:

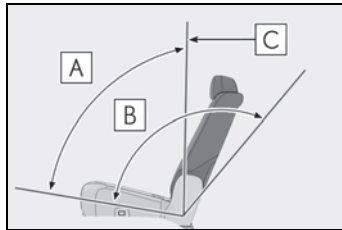
- When the engine switch is turned off or in ACCESSORY mode
- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and any of the following conditions are met:
 - The parking brake is engaged.
 - The brake pedal is depressed.

- The shift lever is in P.

■ The rear seatbacks can be folded down when (power seat)

When all of the following conditions are met, a rear seat operation switch can be used to fold down the rear seatback:

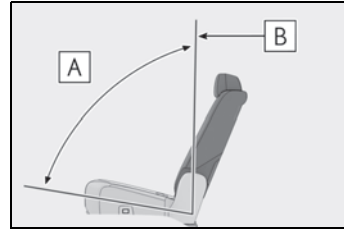
- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear seatback is in a position within the range **A** shown in the illustration with the rear door nearest to the seat to be operated open (**C** is where the rear seatback is at its most upright position)
- When using the rear seat operation switch (luggage compartment): The rear seatback is in a position within the range **B** shown in the illustration with the back door open
- The other seat operation switch for the seat to be operated is not being pressed.



■ The rear seatbacks can be raised when (power seat)

When all of the following conditions are met, a rear seat operation switch can be used to return the rear seatback:

- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear seatback is in a position within the range **A** shown in the illustration with the back door open (**B** is where the rear seatback is at its most upright position)
- When using the rear seat operation switch (rear seat): The rear door nearest to the seat to be operated is open
- The other seat operation switch for the seat to be operated is not being pressed.



■ Precautions for power seats (if equipped)

If a seat cover or seat cushion is used on a power seat, the power seat may not operate properly.

Before folding the seatback of a power seat, make sure that the seat and area around the seat is free of obstructions which may interfere the operation.

■ Rear seatback jam protection function (power seat)

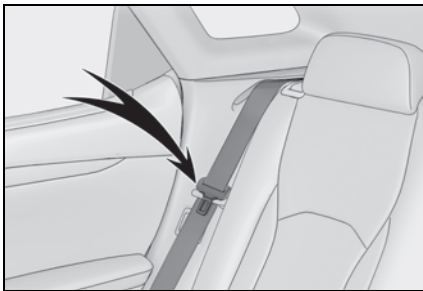
When folding or returning the seatback of a power seat, if an object is detected between the seatback and seat cushion or behind the seatback, the seatback may stop or move in the opposite direction slightly.

A buzzer will sound continuously when the seatback stops and intermittently when moving in the opposite direction.

Folding the second-row seat seatbacks (RX350L)

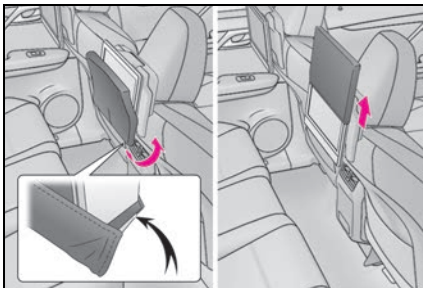
■ Before folding the second-row seat seatbacks

- 1 To prevent the seat belt from being damaged, hook it to the seat belt hanger.



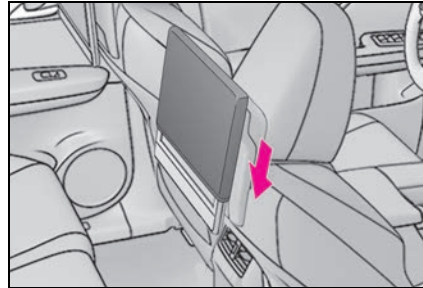
- 2 Stow the center seat seat belt buckle.
- 3 Lower the second-row seat head restraints to the lowest position. (→P.196)
- 4 Vehicles with rear seat entertainment system: Install the display cover for the rear seat entertainment system.

Pass the cover belt under the display and slide the cover up.



Slide the cover down from the top of the

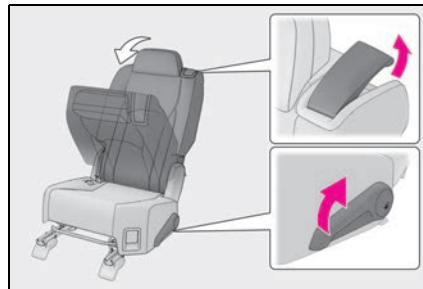
display to cover it.



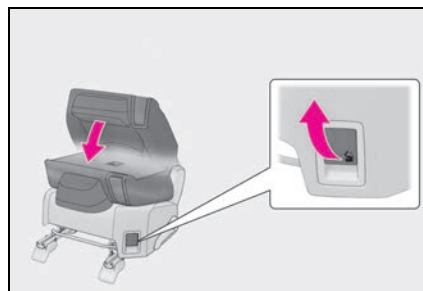
■ Folding the second-row seat seatbacks

► Separate seat

- 1 Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and tilt the seatback forward.

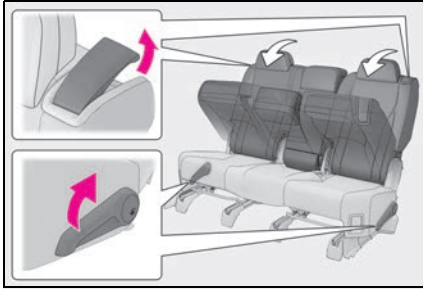


- 2 Pull the seatback folding lever and fold the seatback.

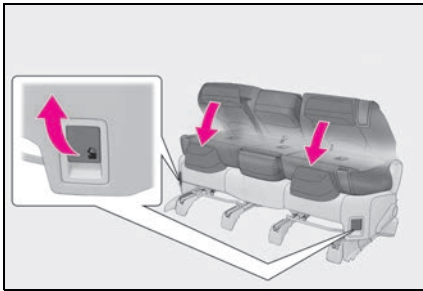


► Bench seat

- 1 Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and tilt the seatback forward.



- 2 Pull the seatback folding lever and fold the seatback.



■ Returning the second-row seat seatbacks

Lift the second-row seat seatback until it locks in position.

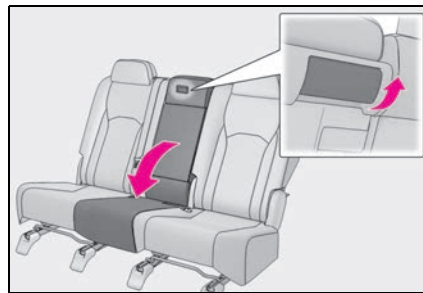
Remove the secured seat belts from the seat belt hangers.



■ Folding the second-row center seatback only (Bench seat)

Pull the lock release lever on the back side of the seatback and fold the center seatback.

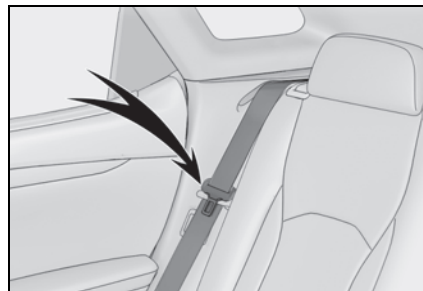
To return the second-row center seatback to its original position, lift it until it locks in position.



■ Moving the second-row seat for third-row seat access (RX350L)

■ Before moving the second-row seat

To prevent the seat belt from being damaged, hook it to the seat belt hanger.



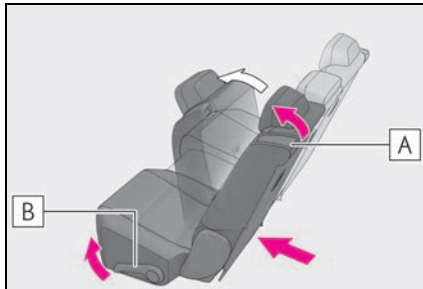
■ When entering/exiting the vehicle

Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever **A** or **B** to tilt the seatback forward and then slide the seat forward.

3

Before driving

Make sure that the second-row seat is free of passengers and obstructions before operating the seatback tilt lever.



■ **After passengers have entered/exited the vehicle**

Tilt back and slide the second-row seat until it locks in position.

Remove the secured seat belts from the seat belt hangers.



NOTICE

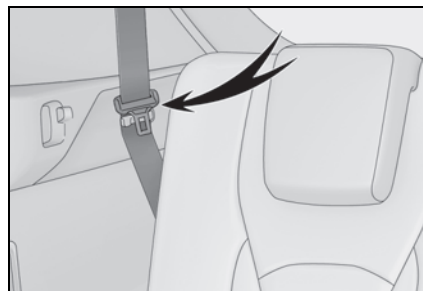
■ **When moving the second-row seat for third-row seat access**

Do not slide the second-row seat forward if an electronic device is connected to the USB charging port on the rear console. Otherwise, the second-row seat may contact the electronic device, possibly resulting in damage to the device.

Folding the third-row seat seatbacks (RX350L)

■ **Before folding the third-row seat seatbacks**

- 1 To prevent the seat belt from being damaged, hook it to the seat belt hanger.



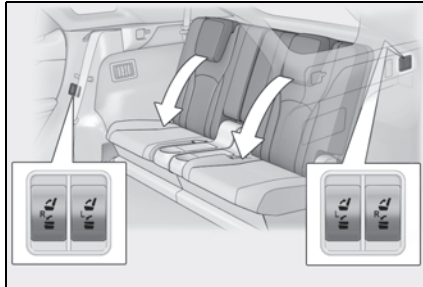
- 2 Lower the third-row seat head restraints to the lowest position. (→P.196)

■ **Folding the third-row seat seatbacks**

Press and hold the  side of the switch until the seatback is folded completely.

A buzzer will sound twice before the operation begins and twice when the operation is complete.

If the switch is released while the seatback is operating, the seatback will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.



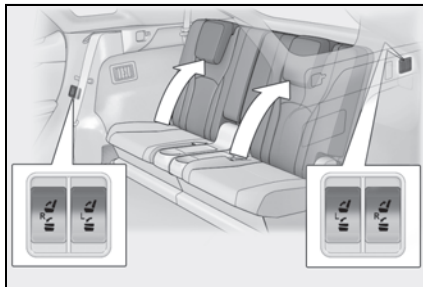
■ Returning the third-row seat seatbacks

Press and hold the  side of the switch until the seatback is fully upright.

A buzzer will sound twice before the operation begins and twice when the operation is complete.

If the switch is released while the seatback is operating, the seatback will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

Remove the secured seat belts from the seat belt hangers.



■ The third-row seats can be folded when

- The vehicle is stopped.
- The back door is open. (When using the switches in the luggage compartment)
- A seat side switch and switch in the luggage compartment are not being operated simultaneously.

■ Precautions for third-row seats

If a seat cover or seat cushion is used on a

seat, the seat may not operate properly. Before folding the seatback of a seat, make sure that the seat and area around the seat is free of obstructions which may interfere the operation.

■ If a buzzer sounds continuously after a third-row seat seatback is completely folded

The power seat system may be malfunctioning or it may need to be initialized. To initialize the system, perform the following procedure. (It is necessary to perform this procedure with two people.)

- 1 Check that the seat is free of obstructions.
- 2 Press and hold the  side switch of the luggage compartment side switch for the seat which the buzzer is sounding.
- 3 Within 10 seconds of the performing the above step, press the  side switch of the seat side switch 5 times.
- 4 When a buzzer sounds 3 times, release the luggage compartment side switch.
- 5 Press the  side switch of the seat side switch until the seatback is folded completely.

A buzzer will sound twice when the operation is complete.

If the buzzer does not stop sounding even though the above procedure has been performed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

3

Before driving

! WARNING**■ Precautions for third-row seat**

When operating a third-row seat, make sure to press and hold the switch until the third-row seat seatback is completely folded/upright. Do not use a third-row seat in a position other than the completely upright position, as doing so may lead to death or serious injury in an accident. (If the switch is released while the seatback is still moving, a buzzer will sound continuously until the seatback is completely folded/upright.)

! NOTICE**■ Before returning the third-row seat seatbacks to the upright position**

If the luggage cover is installed in the luggage compartment, make sure to remove it before returning the third-row seat seatbacks. (→P.412) Otherwise, the luggage cover may be damaged.

Adjusting the position of the third-row seats (RX350L)

- 1** Fold the seatback of the third-row seat to be adjusted. (→P.190)
- 2** Press and hold the  side of the switch for approximately 2 seconds.

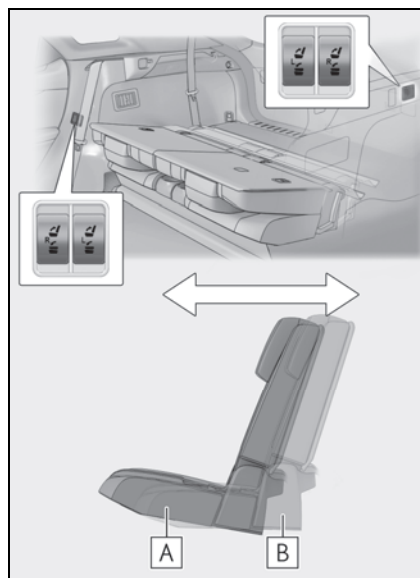
When the setting has been changed, a buzzer will sound.

If the setting for the third-row seat has been changed to the **A** position, the buzzer will sound 2 times.

If the setting for the third-row seat has been changed to the **B** position, the buzzer will sound 3 times.

Each time the switch is operated, the seat

position setting will change.



- 3** Return the seatback of the third-row seat to the upright position. (→P.191)

The seat can now be used at the set position.

■ The third-row seat position can be adjusted when

The third-row seat seatback is folded.

Driving position memory *

*: If equipped

This feature automatically adjusts the front seats (on some models), steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

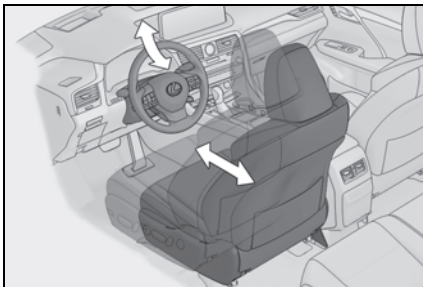
Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Power easy access system (driver's side only)

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.



- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

When any of the following has been performed, the seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

Recording a driving position into memory

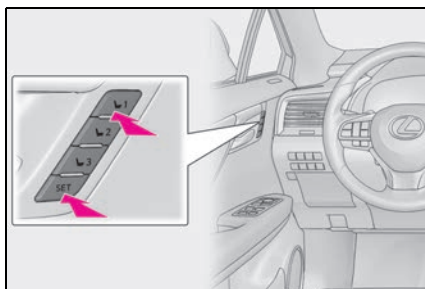
- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to the desired positions.
- 4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been

3

Before driving

preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



Vehicles with the driving position memory for the front passenger's seat: To record the position of the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired position and perform step 4 using the buttons on the front passenger's side.

■ Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.179)

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

⚠ WARNING

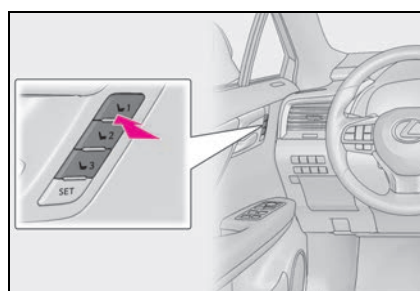
■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ To stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Driver's seat: Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Front passenger's seat: Recorded seat positions can be recalled up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened.

Registering/canceling/recall a driving position to an electronic key (including a card key) (memory recall function) (driver's side only)

■ Registering procedure

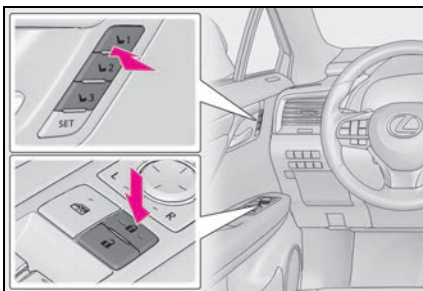
Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.
- 4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Cancellation procedure

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

- 1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 2 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If it button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ Recall procedure

- 1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel and head-up display [if equipped]). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

- 2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) will move to the recorded position.

3

Before driving

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

⚠ WARNING

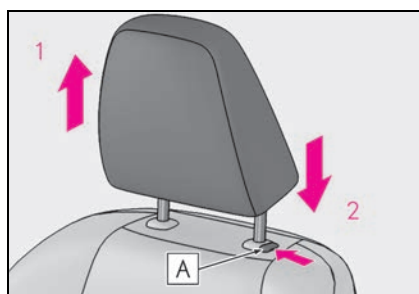
■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Adjusting a head restraint vertically

■ Front seats



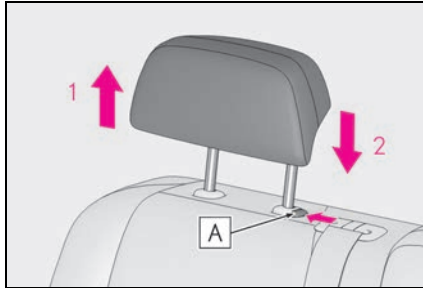
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button **A**.

■ Second-row seats



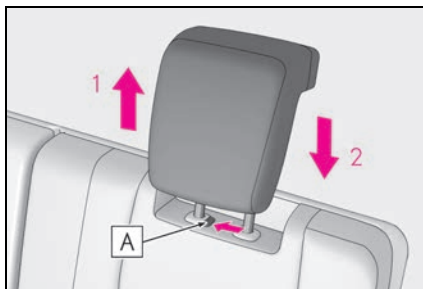
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button **A**.

■ Third-row seats (RX350L)



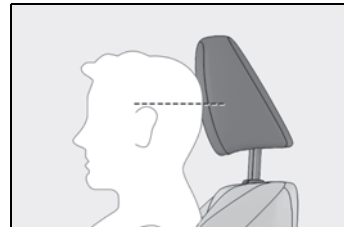
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button **A**.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraints (except for Korea)

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

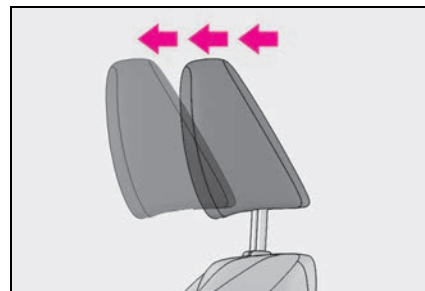
■ Adjusting the rear center seat head restraints (for Korea)

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Adjusting a head restraint horizontally (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



3

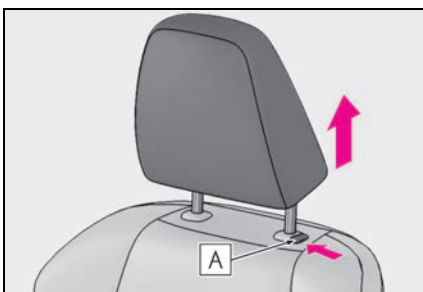
Before driving

Removing the head restraints

■ Front and second-row seats

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button **A**.

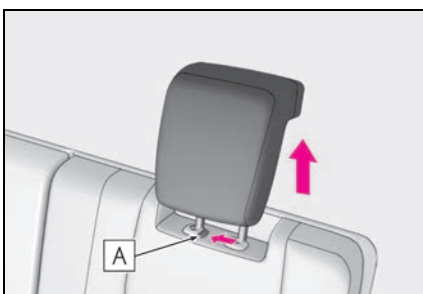
If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.179, 180)



■ Third-row seats (RX350L)

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button **A**.

If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat angle. (→P.180)



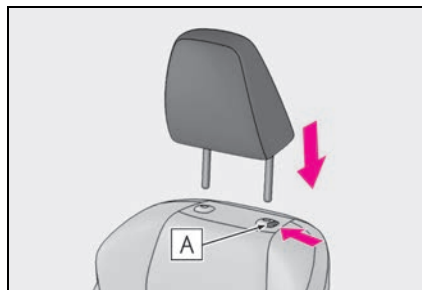
Installing the head restraints

■ Front and second-row seats

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the

lock position.

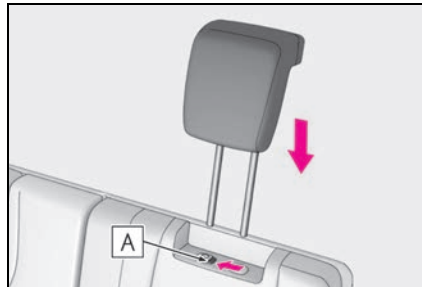
Press and hold the lock release button **A** when lowering the head restraint.



■ Third-row seats (RX350L)

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

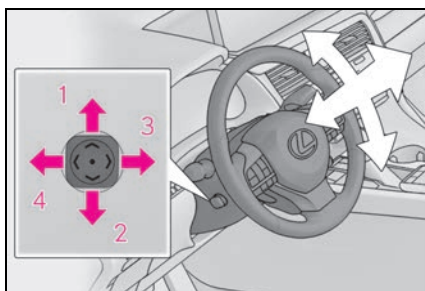
Press and hold the lock release button **A** when lowering the head restraint.



Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Toward the driver
- 4 Away from the driver

■ The steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position (if equipped)

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.193)

■ Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat (on some models) move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.193)

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

! WARNING

■ Caution while driving

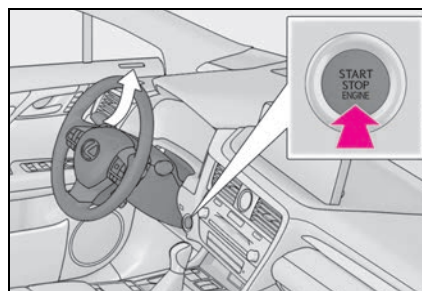
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Auto tilt away

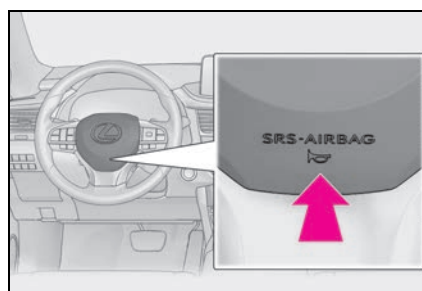
When the engine switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.



Sounding the horn

Press on or close to the  mark.



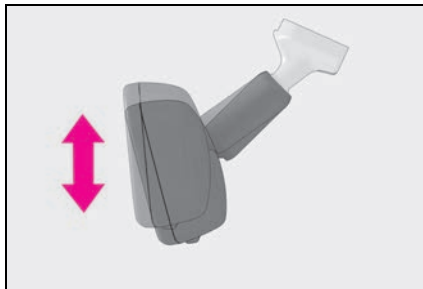
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



⚠ WARNING

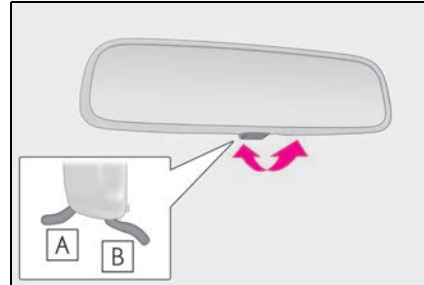
■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving. Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

- Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.



A Normal position

B Anti-glare position

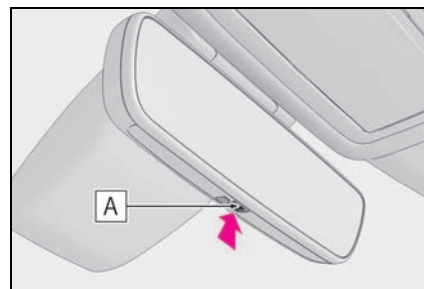
- Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Turn the automatic anti-glare function mode on/off

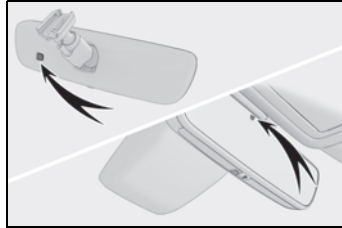
When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator **A** illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator **A** also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

⚠ WARNING

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.

Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

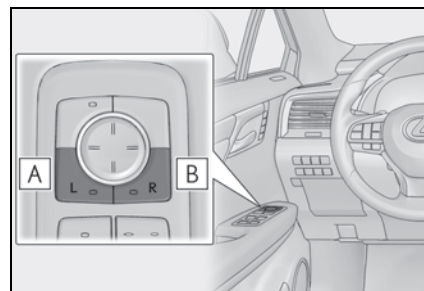
- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

3

Before driving

Adjustment procedure

- 1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

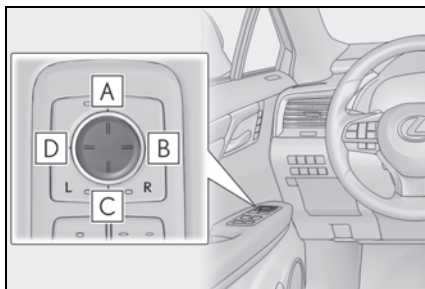


A Left

B Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

- 2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



- A** Up
B Right
C Down
D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Defogging the mirrors (vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers)

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.386)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (if equipped)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.193)

■ Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.200)

■ Linked mirror function when reversing

When either "L" or "R" of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to

give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, select neither "L" nor "R".

To set the mirror angle used when the vehicle is reversing, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position with the shift lever in R.

The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.



WARNING

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating (if equipped)

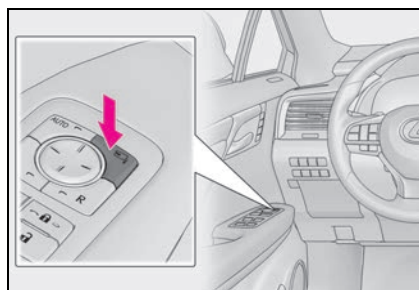
Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



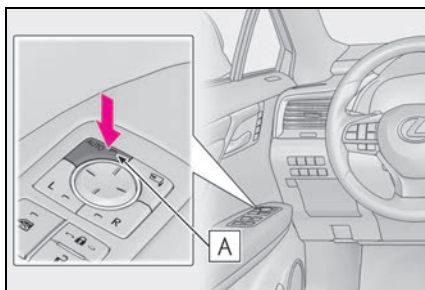
■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator **A** will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



WARNING

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to off as default. To turn the function on, press the switch again to select on.

■ Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this case, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

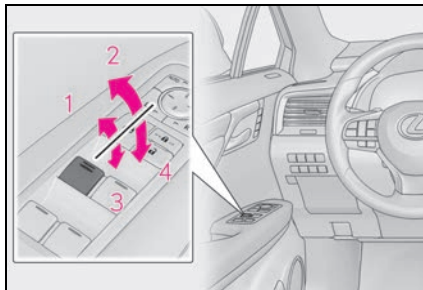
■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the

window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ When the window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.

- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

- 1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 2 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the door window.
- 3 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
- 4 Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
- 5 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
- 6 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction

again. After the door window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. * (→P.535)

- Except for Korea: The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control. * (→P.146)

* : These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Alarm

The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and a power window is closed using the door lock linked power window operation function. (→P.110)

■ Power windows open warning buzzer

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

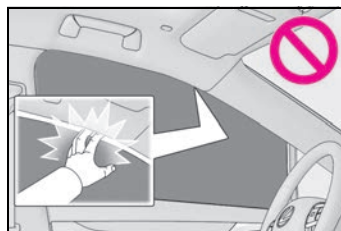


WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.206)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key and operating the power window, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate power window by the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

3

Before driving

**WARNING**

- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

- **Catch protection function**

- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

mode.

- **When the battery is disconnected**

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

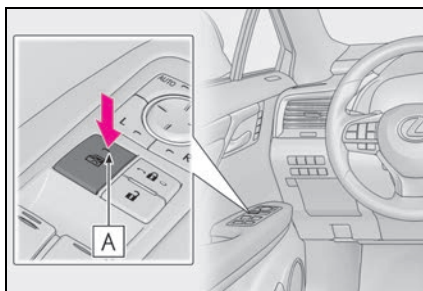
Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch.

The indicator **A** will come on and the passenger windows will be locked.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the driver's switch even if the lock switch is on.



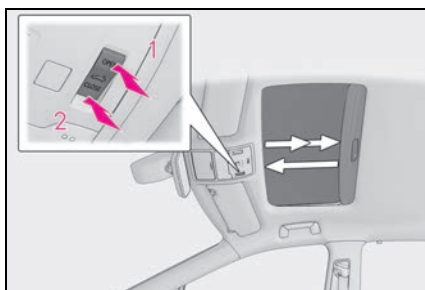
- **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON

Moon roof*

* : If equipped

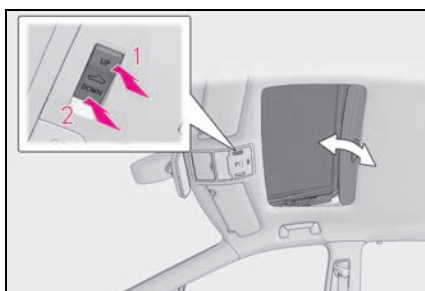
Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Operating the moon roof**■ Opening and closing****1** Opens the moon roof*

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise. Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

* : Lightly press either side of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ Tilting up and down**1** Tilts the moon roof up***2** Tilts the moon roof down*

* : Lightly press either side of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

● The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.535)

● Except for Korea: The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.146)

● The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the moon roof is closed using the door lock linked moon roof operation function. (→P.110)

* : These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

► If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

3

Before driving

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*¹
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*² Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

▶ If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*¹ until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*¹ The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*² Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*¹: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*²: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the

instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

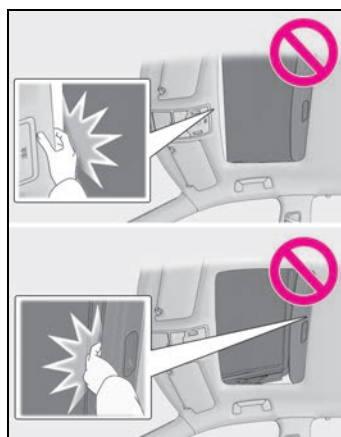
● Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.

● Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Opening and closing the moon roof

● The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.

● Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.



! WARNING

- When using the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
 - When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.
- **Jam protection function**
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
 - The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

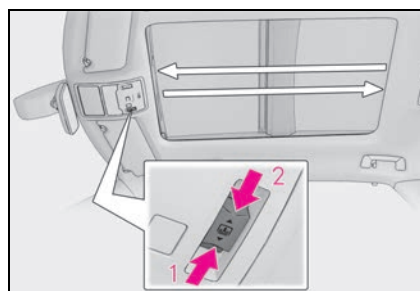
Panoramic moon roof*

* : If equipped

Use the overhead switches to operate the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade.

Operating the panoramic moon roof

■ **Opening and closing the electronic sunshade**



1 Opens the electronic sunshade

Slide and hold the  switch backward. The electronic sunshade will fully open automatically.*

2 Closes the electronic sunshade

Slide and hold the  switch forward. The electronic sunshade will fully close automatically.*

*: Quickly slide and release the  switch in either direction to stop the electronic sunshade partway.

■ **Tilting the panoramic moon roof up and down**

Tilts the panoramic moon roof up (press)*

3

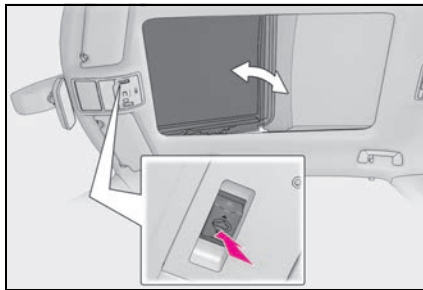
Before driving

When the panoramic moon roof is tilted up, the electronic sunshade will open to the half-open position of the roof.

*: Lightly press the  switch again to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.

Tilts the panoramic moon roof down (press and hold)

The panoramic moon roof can be tilted down only when it is in the tilt-up position.



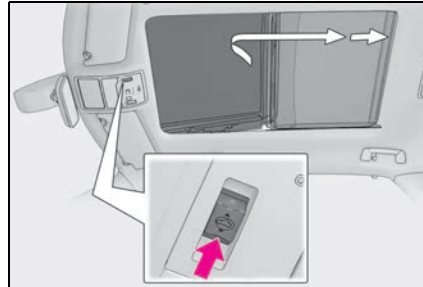
■ Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

Opens the panoramic moon roof*

Slide and hold the  switch backward. The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade will open automatically.

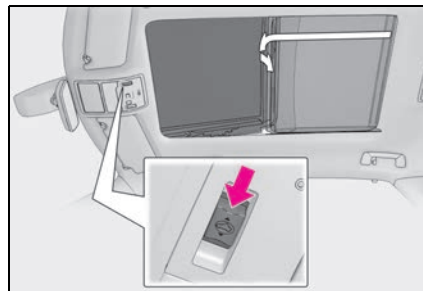
The panoramic moon roof can be opened from the tilt-up position.

*: Quickly slide and release the  switch in either direction to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.



Closes the panoramic moon roof

Slide and hold the  switch forward. The panoramic moon roof will fully close automatically.



■ The panoramic moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the panoramic moon roof after turning the engine off

The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the panoramic moon roof and the frame in the following situations, travel is stopped and the panoramic moon roof opens slightly:

- The panoramic moon roof is closing or tilting down.

- The electronic sunshade is closing.
- **Door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation**
- The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. * (→P.535)
- Except for Korea: The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control. * (→P.146)
- * : These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Closing both the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade**

Slide the  switch forward.

The electronic sunshade will close to the half-open position and pause. The panoramic moon roof will then fully close. Then the electronic sunshade will fully close.

■ **When the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

- 1 Stop the vehicle.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Slide and hold the  switch or  switch forward. Continue pressing the switch for approximately 10 seconds after the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade closes and reopens. The panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade will start to close. *
- 4 Check that the panoramic moon roof and electronic sunshade are fully closed and release the switch.

* : If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Alarm**

The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the panoramic moon roof is closed using the door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation function. (→P.111)

■ **Panoramic moon roof open warning buzzer**

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the panoramic moon roof open.

■ **Customization**

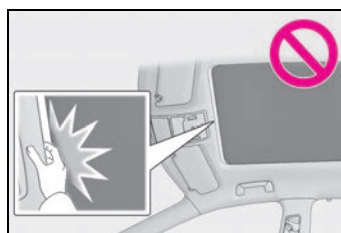
Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

 WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ **Opening and closing the electronic sunshade**

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.

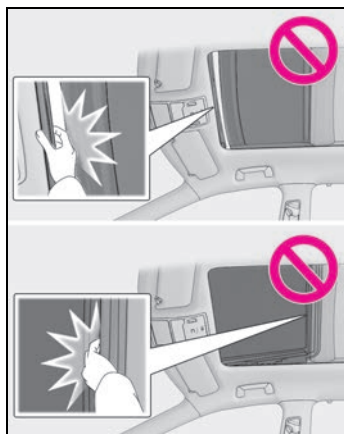


- Do not let a child operate the electronic sunshade. Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

- The driver is responsible for panoramic moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the panoramic moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the panoramic moon roof is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key and operating the panoramic moon roof, operate the panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate panoramic moon roof by the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the panoramic moon roof.

- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the panoramic moon roof or electronic sunshade is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

■ To prevent burns or injuries

Do not touch the area between the underside of the panoramic moon roof and the electronic sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the underside of the panoramic moon roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the panoramic moon roof

- Before opening the panoramic moon roof, make sure that there are no foreign objects, such as stones or ice, around the opening.
- Do not hit the surface or edge of the panoramic moon roof with hard objects.
- Do not continuously press the  switch after the panoramic moon roof has been fully opened or closed.



NOTICE

■ After the vehicle has been washed or rained on

Before opening the panoramic moon roof, wipe any water off the panoramic moon roof. Otherwise, water may enter the cabin when the panoramic moon roof is opened.

- 4-1. Before driving**
 - Driving the vehicle..... **216**
 - Cargo and luggage..... **222**
 - Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)..... **223**
 - Trailer towing (for South Africa) **224**
- 4-2. Driving procedures**
 - Engine (ignition) switch **229**
 - Automatic transmission..... **233**
 - Turn signal lever **238**
 - Parking brake **239**
 - Brake Hold..... **242**
- 4-3. Operating the lights and wipers**
 - Headlight switch..... **244**
 - AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)..... **247**
 - Automatic High Beam..... **251**
 - Fog light switch **253**
 - Windshield wipers and washer **255**
 - Rear window wiper and washer **260**
- 4-4. Refueling**
 - Opening the fuel tank cap..... **261**
- 4-5. Using the driving support systems**
 - Lexus Safety System + **264**
 - PCS (Pre-Collision System) **270**
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)..... **278**
 - LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)..... **287**
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range **295**
 - Dynamic radar cruise control **304**
 - Cruise control..... **312**
 - Stop & Start system..... **314**
 - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor).... **320**
 - PKSA (Parking Support Alert) **330**
 - Lexus parking assist-sensor **332**
 - RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) function **339**
 - PKSB (Parking Support Brake) **344**
 - Parking Support Brake function (static objects)..... **350**
 - Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)..... **356**
 - Driving mode select switch .. **360**
 - All-wheel drive lock switch... **362**
 - GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system..... **363**
 - Driving assist systems **364**
- 4-6. Driving tips**
 - Winter driving tips..... **370**
 - Eco-friendly driving tips..... **373**
 - Utility vehicle precautions..... **375**

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ Starting the engine

→P.229

■ Driving

- 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.233)
- 2 Release the parking brake. (→P.239)

If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is released automatically when shifting the shift lever to any position other than P. (→P.239)

- 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: If the Stop & Start system is enabled, depressing the brake pedal will stop the engine.

- 2 If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P.239)

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P.233)

■ Parking the vehicle

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

- 2 Set the parking brake (→P.239), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.233).
- 3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.
- 4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ Starting off on a steep uphill

- 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.234)
- 2 Pull the parking brake switch to set the parking brake manually. (→P.239)
- 3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.
- 4 Press the parking brake switch to release the parking brake manually.

■ When starting off on a uphill

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.364)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode is selected

■ Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped) while the system is operating.

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
 - When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped). If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and head-up display (if equipped), read the message and follow the instructions.
 - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.
- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P.365) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing

the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):

Avoid sudden stops.

- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.549)

■ Idling time before engine stop (RX300)

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-load driving.

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving or high-speed driving (at the highway speed limit or recommended speed)	Not necessary
Steep hill driving, continuous driving (race track driving etc.)	Approximately 1 minute

■ Eco-friendly driving

→P.128

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

**WARNING**

■ **When driving the vehicle**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way:
→P.496

- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.233)

- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.

- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

- AWD models: Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
This is not an AWD vehicle designed for off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.

- Do not drive across a river or through other bodies of water.
This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

**WARNING**

■ **When shifting the shift lever**

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to any position other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
If the shift lever is in any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

■ **When the vehicle is parked**

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
Doing so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.

**WARNING**

- Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck (AWD models)

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

**NOTICE****■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.

**NOTICE**

- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps on the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- RX300: Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high-load driving. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down. Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.517)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transaxle, transfer (AWD models), rear differential (AWD models), etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (AWD models), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
 - At the feet of the driver
 - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
 - On the luggage cover

- On the instrument panel
- On the dashboard

- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.

Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ When using a roof luggage carrier (vehicles with roof rails)

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P.546)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.



NOTICE

■ When loading cargo (vehicles with a moon roof or panoramic moon roof)

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



4

Driving

Trailer towing (for South Africa)

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.

■ Tire information

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm² or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P.546)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Trailer lights

- Check that the turn signal lights and stop lights are operating correctly every time you hitch up the trailer. Directly wiring up to your vehicle may damage the electrical system and stop the lights from functioning correctly.
- Please consult your dealer when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ Safety checks before towing

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P.225)
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

**NOTICE**

■ **When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum**

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area. When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

Weight limits

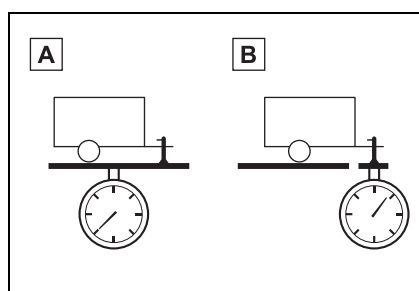
Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P.546)

Towing hitch/bracket

Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ **Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load**



A Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P.546)

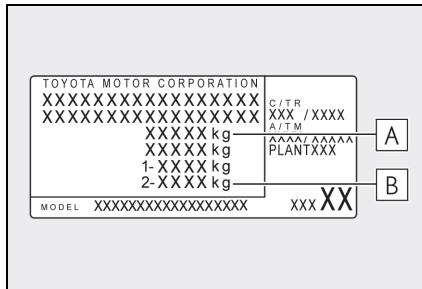
When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

When the total trailer weight is over 2000 kg (4409 lb.), a friction stabilizer (sway control device) is required.

B Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P.546)

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)



A Gross vehicle mass

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

B Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

! WARNING

■ When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded

Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is lower.

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

■ Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

■ Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

■ Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet

or slippery road surfaces.

■ Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

■ Important points regarding turning

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

■ Important points regarding stability

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ Passing other vehicles

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ Transmission information

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance

when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D. If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 4 or lower. (→P.233)

■ If the engine overheats

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P.541)

■ When parking the vehicle

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.



WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Trailer towing precautions

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded. (→P.225)

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Do not use the following systems when trailer towing.
 - Cruise control (if equipped)
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)

**WARNING**

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)

■ Vehicle speed in towing

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ Before descending hills or long declines

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ Operation of the brake pedal

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time. Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

**NOTICE****■ Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.



and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

- 4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

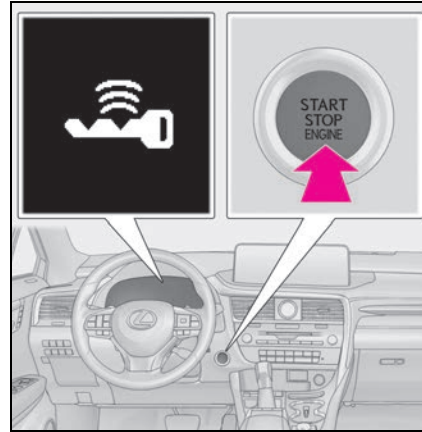
When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine

switch mode.



Engine switch illumination

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When a door is opened, or the engine switch mode is changed from ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to off, the engine switch illumination slowly blinks.
- When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your person, the engine switch illumination rapidly blinks.
- When the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the engine switch illumination illuminates.

If the engine does not start

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.106)
Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. "To Start Vehicle, Put Shift Lever into P" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Electronic key battery depletion

→P.142

Conditions affecting operation

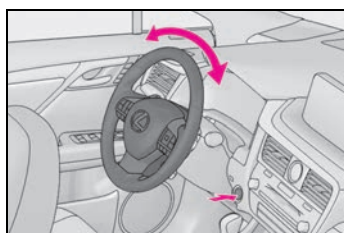
→P.168

■ Note for the entry function

→P.168

■ Steering lock function

- After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.
- When the steering lock cannot be released, "Steering Wheel Lock Press Engine Switch while Turning Wheel" will be displayed on the multi-information display. Check that the shift lever is in P. Press the engine switch shortly and firmly while turning the steering wheel left and right.



- To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine switch. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Electronic key battery

→P.482

■ Operation of the engine switch

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.

- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ Customization

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.534.

⚠ WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

- 1 Stop the vehicle completely.
- 2 Set the parking brake (→P.239), and shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Press the engine switch.
- 4 Release the brake pedal and check that the display on the meters is off.

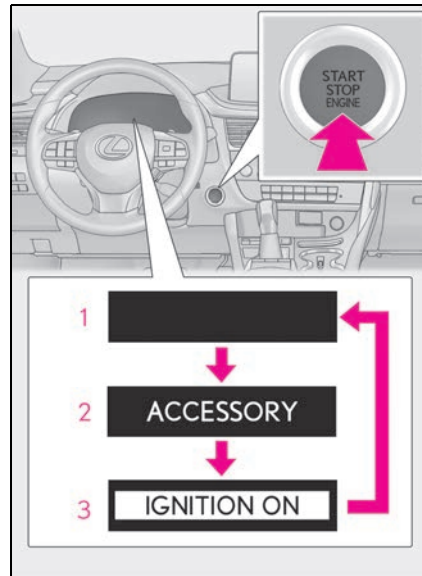
WARNING

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.496) However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meters.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meters.

* If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (with the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the

4

Driving

vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meters while the engine is not running, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.
- 4 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" on the multi-information display is off.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Condition in which the power is not transmission
D	Normal driving ^{*1}
M	M mode driving ^{*2} (→P.236)

^{*1}: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

^{*2}: Selecting gears using M mode fixes the gear step, controls engine braking force, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not occur because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- 8-speed models: While driving in D position, downshifting to 7, 6, 5 or 4. (→P.295, 304, 312)
- 6-speed models: While driving in D position, downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P.295, 304, 312)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in the D position (→P.360)

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.217

■ AI-SHIFT

- The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

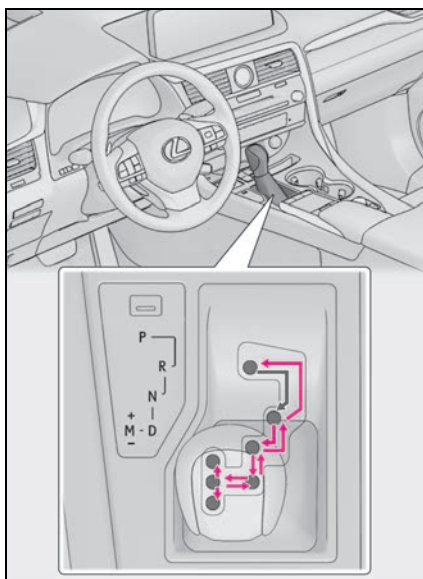
- G AI-SHIFT automatically selects a suitable gear for sporty driving according to driver's input and driving conditions. G AI-SHIFT operates automatically when the shift lever is in D and sport mode is selected for the driving mode. (Selecting normal mode with the driving mode select switch or shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels this function.)

! WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Shifting the shift lever



← While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

■ Shift lock system

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.

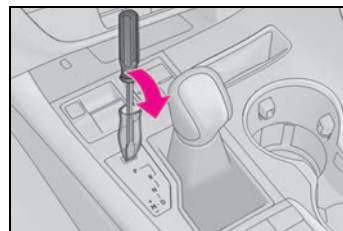
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

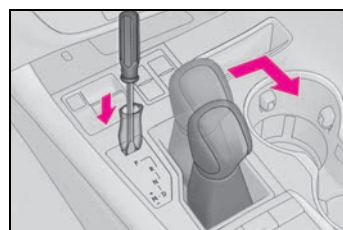
- 1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and check that the parking brake is set. (→P.231, 239)
- 2 Turn the engine switch to off.
- 3 Depress the brake pedal.
- 4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



- 5 Press the shift lock override button.

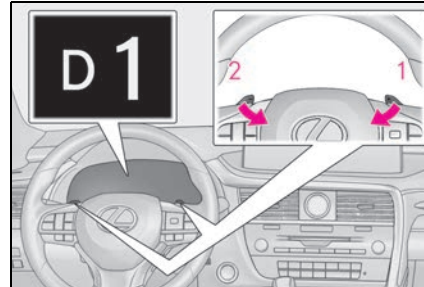
The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



! WARNING**■ To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**1 Upshifting****2 Downshifting**

8-speed models: The selected shift range, from D1 to D8, will be displayed on the meters.

6-speed models: The selected shift range, from D1 to D6, will be displayed on the meters.

■ Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
D2 - D8 (8-speed models)	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D2 - D6 (6-speed models)	
D1	Setting the gear at 1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a posi-

Selecting the driving mode

→P.360

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the “-” or “+” paddle shift switch.

When the “-” paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be downshifted to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions. When the “+” paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range will be one gear higher than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.

tion other than D

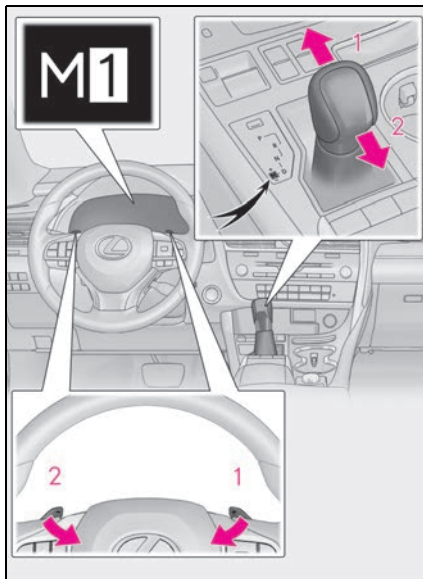
- The "+" paddle shift switch is held down for a period of time

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

8-speed models: The selected gear, from

M1 to M8, will be fixed and displayed on the meters.

6-speed models: The selected gear, from M1 to M6, will be fixed and displayed on the meters.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the automatic transmission fluid or engine coolant temperature is low.
- When automatic transmission fluid temperature is high (upshift only).
- When the needle of the tachometer is in the red zone (the range which exceeds the allowable revs of the engine).

In the following situations, the gear will not shift even if the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

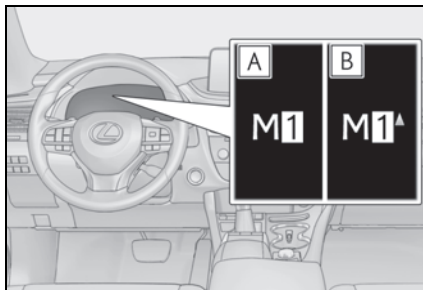
- The vehicle speed is low (upshift only).

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Gear Shift Indicator (if equipped)

The Gear Shift Indicator display is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.



A When not in operation

B Shift-up indicator

■ Gear Shift Indicator function

- This function automatically operates during M mode.
- By following the Shift-up indicator and shifting up accordingly, it is possible to achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions.
- The Gear Shift Indicator does not have a similar function for downshifting.
- Depending on the driving conditions, the Gear Shift Indicator may not display the Shift-up indicator while driving in M mode.



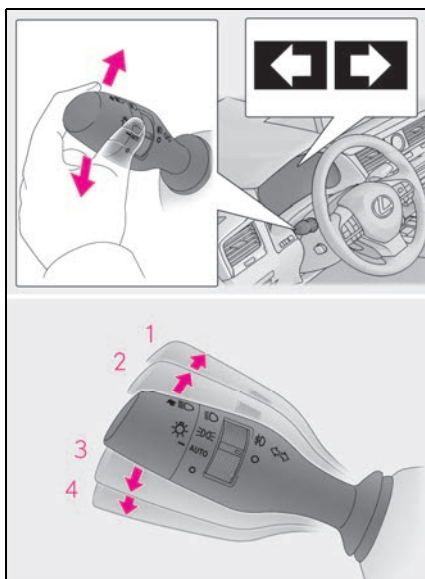
WARNING

■ Gear Shift Indicator display

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions



- 1** Right turn
- 2** Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)
The right hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 3** Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)
The left hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 4** Left turn

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed

Operate the lever again.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

Parking brake

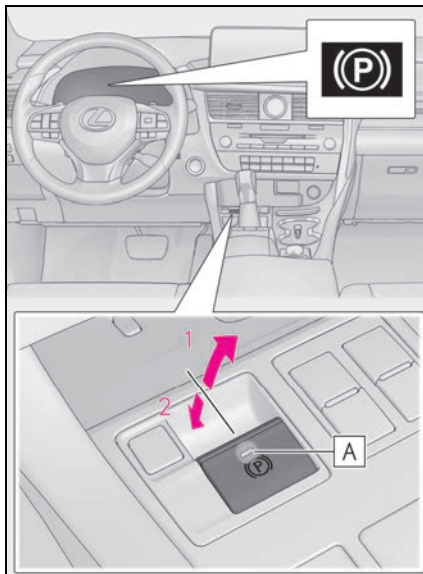
The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually.

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to the shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ Using the manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



A Parking brake light

- 1** Pull the parking brake switch to set the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light and parking brake light will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

- 2** Push the parking brake switch to release the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light turn off.

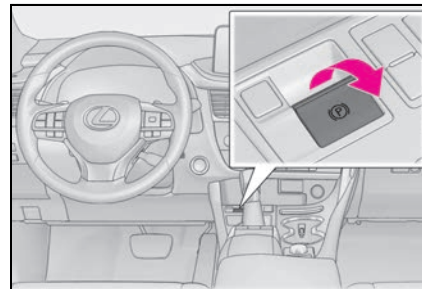
Parking brake automatic release function: Slowly depress the accelerator pedal.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light turn off.

If the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light flashes, operate the switch again. (→P.511)

■ Turns automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until "Automatic Mode On" will be displayed on the multi-information display.



When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

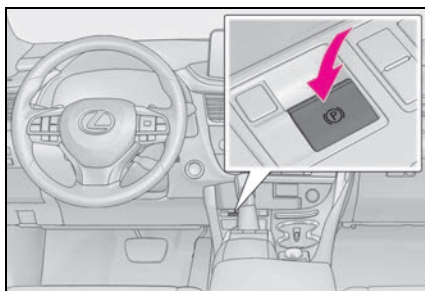
- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light turn off.

- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

■ Turns automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until "Automatic Mode Off" will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ Parking brake automatic release function

The parking brake is automatically released when slowly depress the accelerator pedal.

The parking brake will be released automatically under the following conditions:

- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver's seatbelt is fastened.
- Shift the shift lever is in a forward or reverse position.

- The malfunction indicator lamp or brake system warning light is not illuminated.

If the automatic release function does not operate, manually release the parking brake.

■ If "Parking Brake Overheated Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Parking brake indicator light and parking brake light

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light will turn on and stay on as described below:
IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Changing the mode

When changing the automatic mode on/off, the message will be shown on the multi-information display and the buzzer

sounds.

■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P.216

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Release Parking Brake" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P.505

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.375



WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Parking brake switch**

Do not set any objects near the parking brake switch. Objects may interfere with the switch and may lead the parking brake to unexpectedly operate.



NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Brake Hold

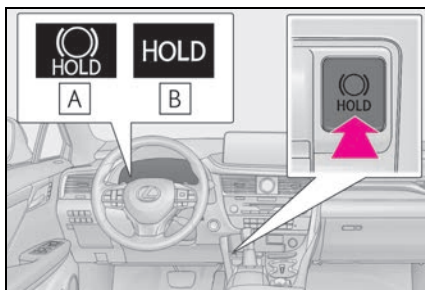
The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green)

A comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) **B** comes on.



Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a

warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake.

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.239)

When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

- If “Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer” or “Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer” is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Warning messages and buzzers

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

- If the brake hold operated indicator flashes

→P.511

 **WARNING**

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

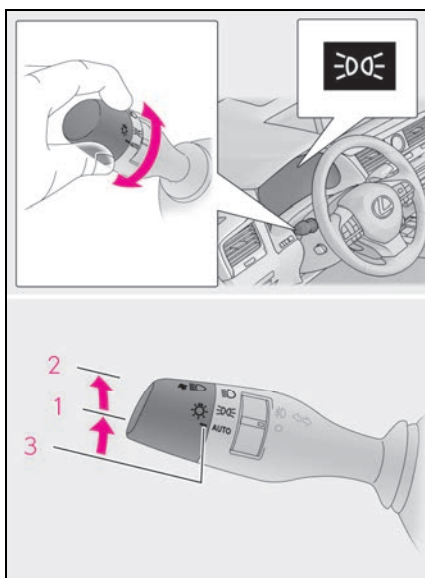
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Operating the  switch turns on the lights as follows:

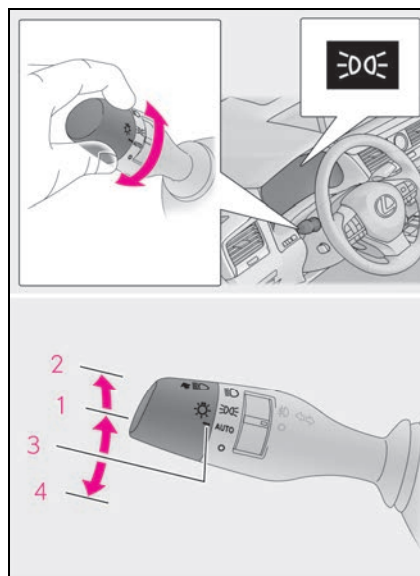
► Type A



- 1  The front position, tail, rear side marker, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.
- 2  The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.
- 3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.244) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

(When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

► Type B



- 1  The front position, tail, rear side marker, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.
- 2  The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.
- 3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.244) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)
- 4  The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.244)

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime

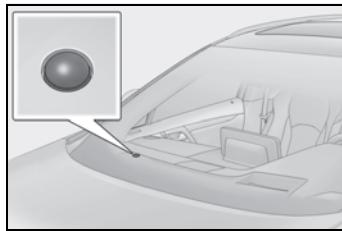
running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch

in AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch

in  (type B only) or AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ Automatic light off system

- ▶ Except for Malaysia, Taiwan and Mongolia

The headlights and all lights turn off after the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the AUTO position once and

then back to the  or  position.

- ▶ For Malaysia, Taiwan and Mongolia

- When the light switch is in the  or

 position: The headlights and front fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

- When the light switch is in the AUTO position: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the AUTO position once and

then back to the  or .

■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ Light reminder buzzer (for Malaysia and Mongolia)

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ Welcome lighting

If the headlight switch is turned to AUTO and the surrounding area is dark, unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control will turn the front position lights and tail lights on automatically.

■ Battery-saving function

- ▶ Except for Malaysia, Taiwan and Mongolia

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed,

the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed
- ▶ For Malaysia, Taiwan and Mongolia

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the light switch is in the

☰ or AUTO position when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

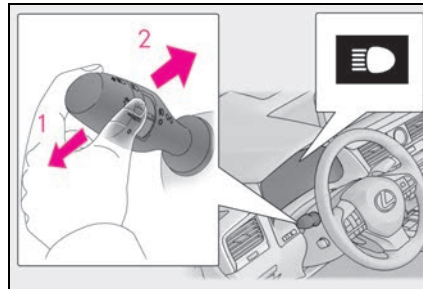


NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Turning on the high beam headlights



- 1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

- 2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

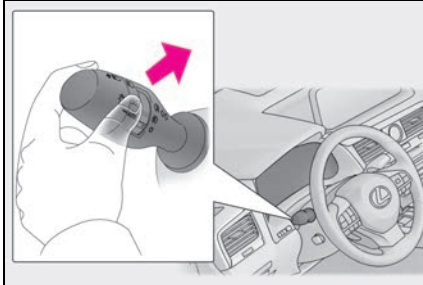
On vehicles with AHS (Adaptive High-beam System), the high beams cannot be illuminated by pulling the lever toward you when the engine switch is off.

Follow me home system (for Malaysia, Taiwan and Mongolia)

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch in AUTO or  after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights (if equipped)

- When the steering wheel or turn signal lever is operated while the headlights are on (low beam), a cornering light will turn on and light up the direction of movement of the vehicle. The cornering lights are designed to ensure excellent visibility when making a turn at an intersection.

However, when vehicle speed is approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or higher, the cornering lights will not turn on.

- When the shift lever is in R while the headlights are on (low beam), both cornering lights will turn on. This is designed to enhance visibility when parking.

■ Cornering lights (if equipped)

When the cornering lights are on for more than 30 minutes, they will turn off automatically.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

* : If equipped

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the headlight light distribution as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Adaptive High-beam System

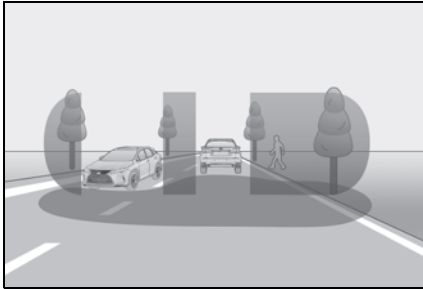
Do not overload the vehicle.

System functions

- Adjusts the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams according to the vehicle speed.
- Adjusts the intensity of the high beams, while driving on a curve, so that the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas.
- Operates the shaded high beams so that the area around vehicles ahead is partially not illuminated while all other areas continue to be illumi-

nated with the high beams.

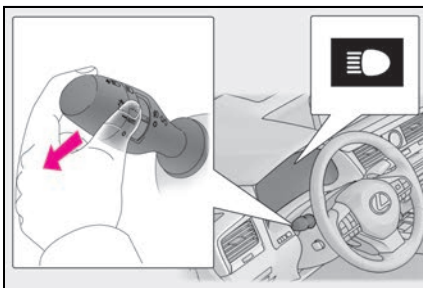
The shaded high beams help optimize forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



- Adjusts the distance that the low beams are projected according to the distance to a preceding vehicle.

Activating the Adaptive High-beam System

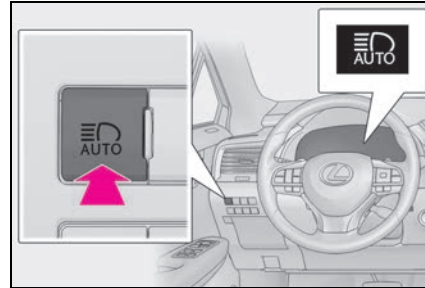
- 1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the  or AUTO position.



- 2 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator

will come on when the system is operating.



Conditions in which the light distribution control of the headlights changes automatically

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically and the system will operate:
 - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.*
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- * When the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas while driving on a curve.
- When all of the following conditions are met, the shaded high beams will turn on and the distance that the low beams are projected will be adjusted automatically, depending on the location of vehicles ahead:
 - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
 - There are vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams or shaded high beams will be changed to the low beams automatically:
 - The vehicle speed is below approximately 15 km/h (10 mph).
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
 - There are many vehicles ahead.
 - Vehicles ahead are moving quickly and the high beams may blind the drivers of

the other vehicles.

■ Camera sensor detection information

- The high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams in the following situations:
 - When vehicles ahead suddenly appear from a curve
 - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
 - When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
 - When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
 - When vehicles ahead have no lights
- The high beams may be changed to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off, or the speed by which the areas not illuminated change:
 - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
 - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
 - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
 - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
 - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The light distribution control of the headlights may change unexpectedly.
- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause

the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.

- When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
- When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
- When the windshield is cracked or damaged
- When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
- When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
- When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using

a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

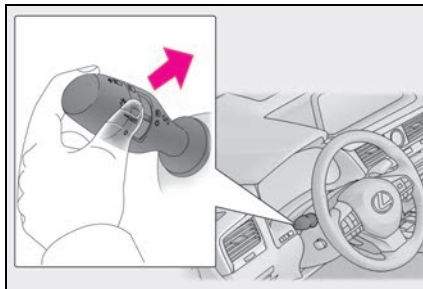
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.

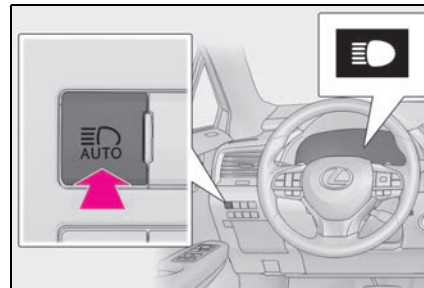


■ Switching to the high beams

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



Automatic High Beam *

*: If equipped

The Automatic High Beam uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically turns the high beams on or off as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

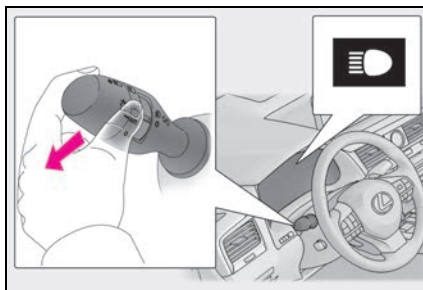
Do not overly rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system

Do not overload the vehicle.

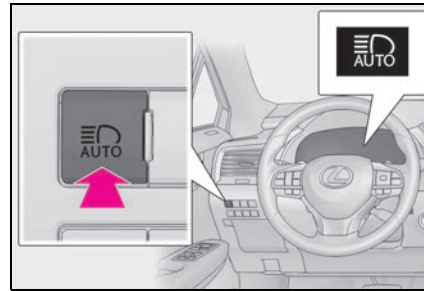
Activating the Automatic High Beam

- 1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the  or AUTO position.



- 2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the system is operating.



■ Conditions to turn the high beams on/off automatically

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically (after approximately 1 second):
 - The vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
 - There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
 - There are few streetlights on the road ahead.
- If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams will turn off automatically:
 - The vehicle speed is below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
 - Vehicles ahead have their headlights or tail lights turned on.
 - There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

■ Camera sensor detection information

- The high beams may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
 - When a vehicle suddenly appears from around a curve
 - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
 - When vehicles ahead cannot be detected due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
 - When vehicles ahead appear in a far-

- way lane on a wide road
- When the lights of vehicles ahead are not on
- The high beams may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken for the high beams to turn on or off:
 - The brightness of the headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
 - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
 - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
 - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
 - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of luggage in the vehicle
- The high beams may turn on or off unexpectedly.
- Bicycles or similar vehicles may not be detected.
- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
 - When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
 - When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
 - When the windshield is cracked or damaged
 - When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
 - When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
 - When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

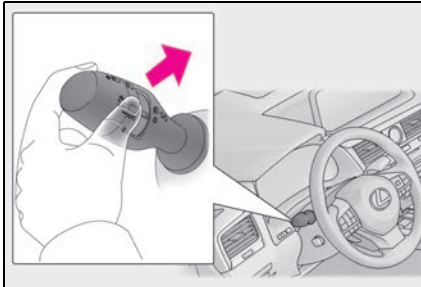
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

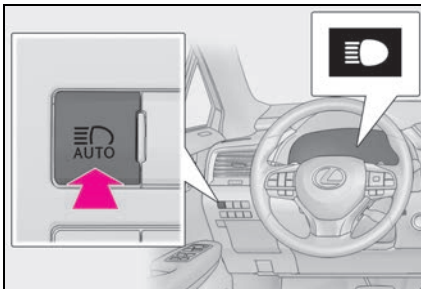


■ Switching to the high beams

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



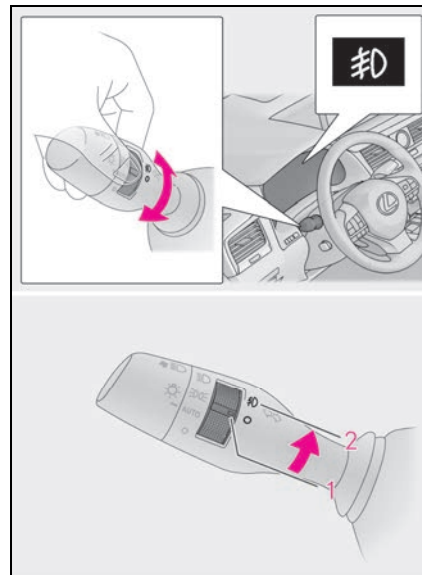
Fog light switch*

*: If equipped

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

Operating instructions

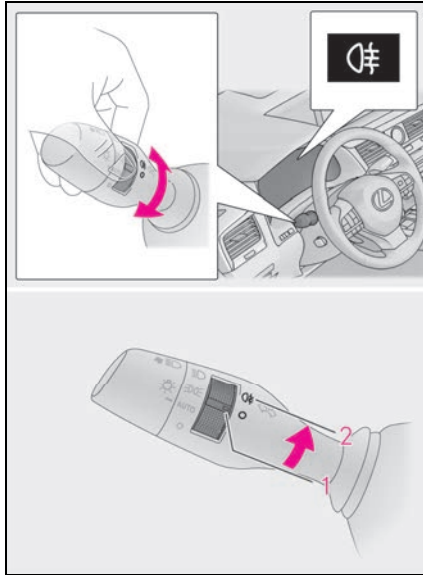
► Front fog light switch



1 ○ Turns the front fog lights off

2 雾 Turns the front fog lights on

► Rear fog light switch



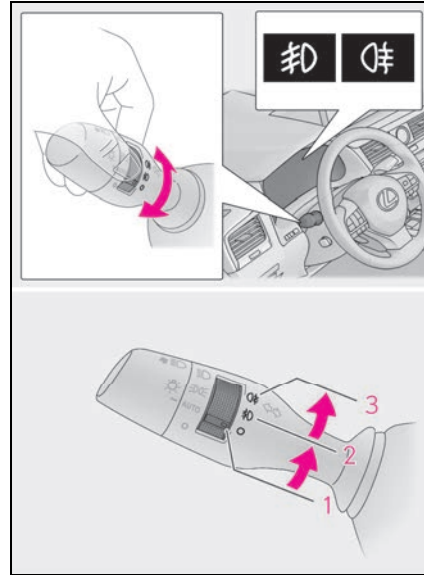
1 ○ Turns the rear fog light off

2 ☁ Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to ○ .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.

► Front and rear fog light switch



1 ○ Turns the front and rear fog lights off

2 ☁ Turns the front fog lights on

3 ☁☁ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to ☁.

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.

■ Fog lights can be used when

► Vehicles with a front fog lights

The headlights or front position lights are turned on.

► Vehicles with rear fog lights only

The headlights are turned on.

► Vehicles with a front and rear fog lights

Front fog lights: The headlights or front position lights are turned on.

Rear fog lights: The front fog lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

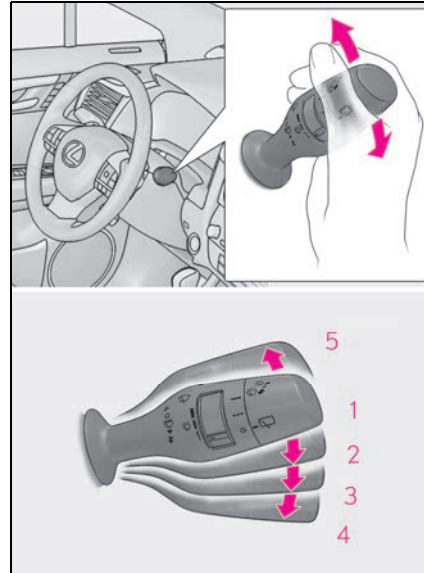
Operating the wiper lever

Operate the  lever operates the wipers or washer as follows.

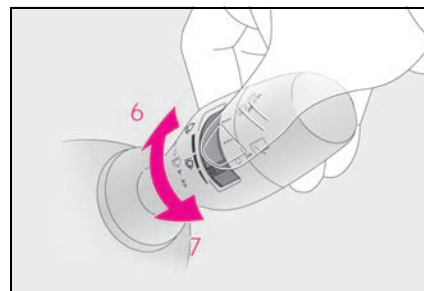
- Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

The interval of intermittent operation varies according to vehicle speed.

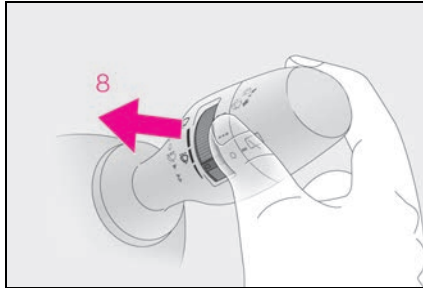


- 1 ○ Off
- 2  Intermittent operation
The intermittent windshield wiper operates more frequently as vehicle speed becomes higher.
- 3 ▼ Low speed operation
- 4 ▼ High speed operation
- 5 △ Temporary operation



- 6 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
- 7 Decreases the intermittent wind-

shield wiper frequency



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

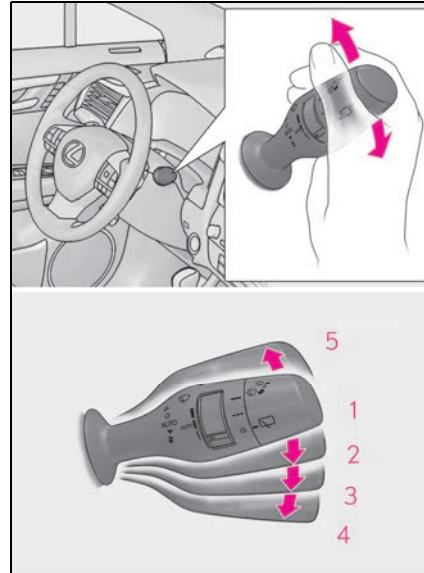
Vehicles with headlight cleaners:

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

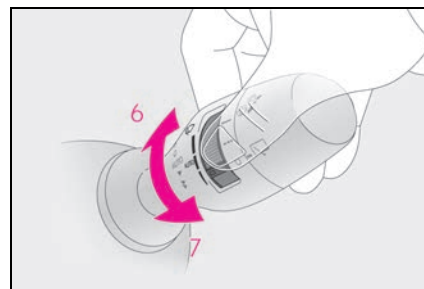
► Rain-sensing windshield wipers

When "AUTO" is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

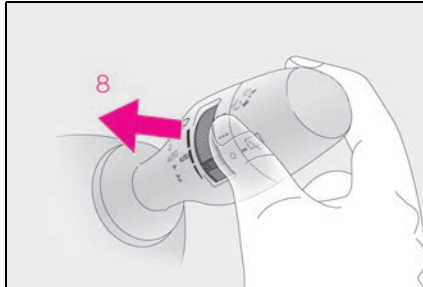
The sensor sensitivity can be adjusted when "AUTO" is selected.



- 1 ○ Off
- 2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation
- 3 ▼ Low speed operation
- 4 ▼ High speed operation
- 5 △ Temporary operation



- 6 Increases the sensitivity
- 7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners:
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

■ The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, this function will not operate while driving.

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

Vehicle speed affects the intermittent wiper interval.

■ Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs, etc. are present on the windshield



- If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in "AUTO" position, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked, if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

■ Front door opening linked windshield wiper stop function (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

When "AUTO" is selected and the windshield wipers are operating, if a front door is opened, the operation of the windshield wipers will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wipers, provided the vehicle is stopped with the parking brake applied or the shift lever in P. When the front door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

**WARNING**

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers, etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

**NOTICE**

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

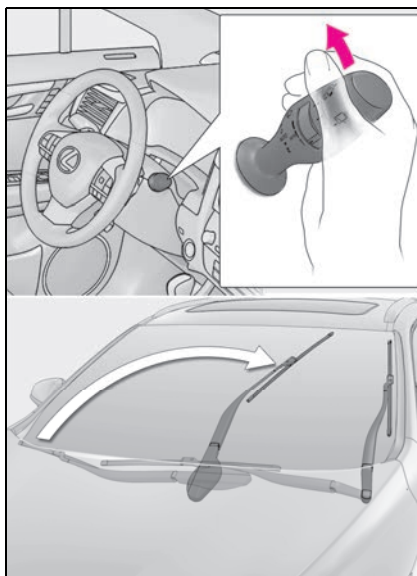
Changing the windshield wiper rest position/Lifting the windshield wipers

When the windshield wipers are not being used, they retract to below the hood. To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when parking in cold conditions or when replacing a windshield wiper insert, change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever.

■ **Raising the wipers to the service position**

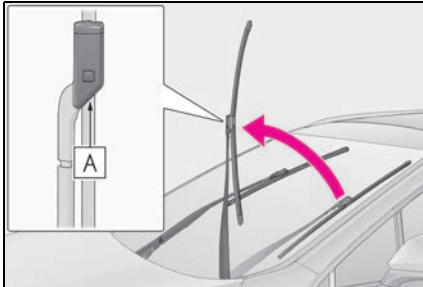
Within approximately 40 seconds of turning the engine switch off, move the wiper lever to the Δ position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds or more.

The wipers will move to the service position.



■ **Lifting the windshield wipers**

While holding the hook portion of the wiper arm, lift the windshield wiper from the windshield.



A Hook portion

- Do not operate the wiper lever when the windshield wipers are lifted. Otherwise, the windshield wipers may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to the windshield wipers and/or hood.

■ Lowering the windshield wipers to the retracted position

With the windshield wipers placed on the windshield, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then move the wiper lever to an operating position. When the wiper switch is turned off, the windshield wipers will stop at the retracted position.



NOTICE

■ When lifting the windshield wipers

- Do not lift the windshield wipers when they are in the retracted position below the hood. Otherwise, they may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to a windshield wiper and/or the hood.
- Do not lift a windshield wiper by the wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper blade may be deformed.



Rear window wiper and washer

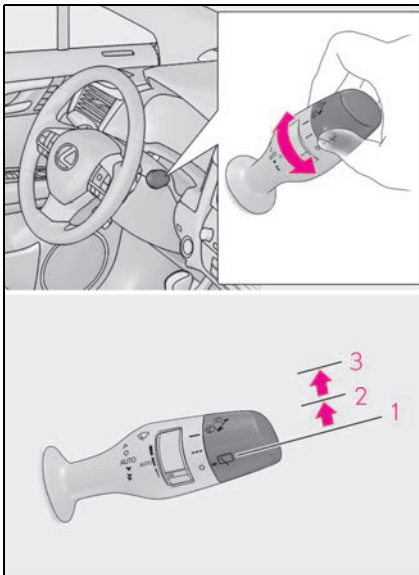
NOTICE

■ When the rear window is dry

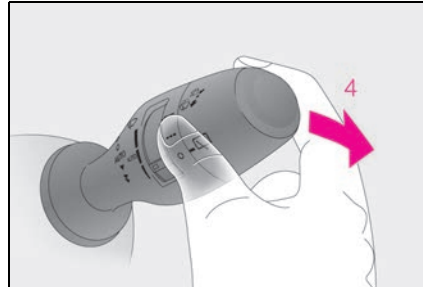
Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the  switch operates the rear wiper as follows.



- 1 ○ Off
- 2 --- Intermittent operation
- 3 — Normal operation



4 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pushing the lever operates the wiper and washer.

The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

■ The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If no washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

NOTICE

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P.558

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

If the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates (for Korea)

The malfunction indicator lamp may illuminate erroneously if refueling is performed repeatedly when the fuel tank is nearly full.

WARNING

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.

- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.

- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.

- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.

- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.

- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

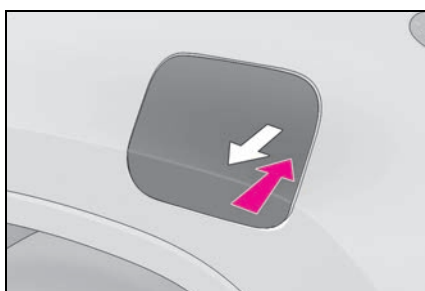
Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

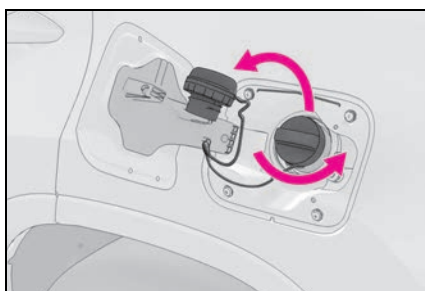
Opening the fuel tank cap

- 1 With the doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push inward and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open the door fully by hand.



- 2 Open the fuel filler door until it is securely locked.
- 3 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.

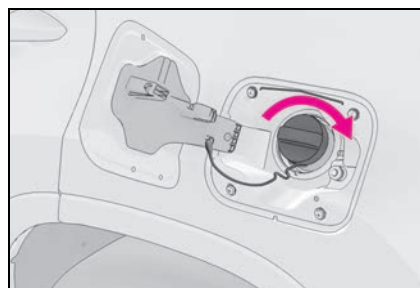


■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened
→P.533

Closing the fuel tank cap

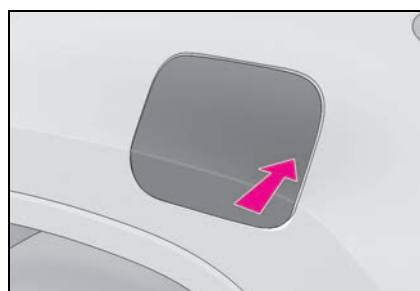
- 1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the

cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



- 2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.



■ Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (→P.150)
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

**WARNING****■ When replacing the fuel tank cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System)**

→P.270

■ **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)***

→P.278

*: If equipped

■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)***

→P.287

*: If equipped

■ **AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)***

→P.247

*: If equipped

■ **Automatic High Beam***

→P.251

*: If equipped

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range***

→P.295

*: If equipped

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control***

→P.304

*: If equipped

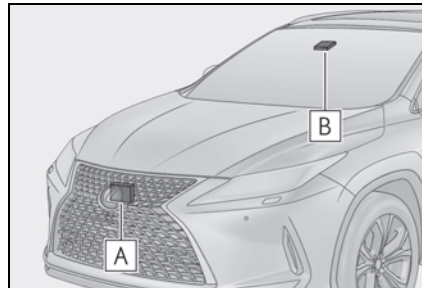
! WARNING■ **Lexus Safety System +**

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.

**A** Radar sensor**B** Front camera

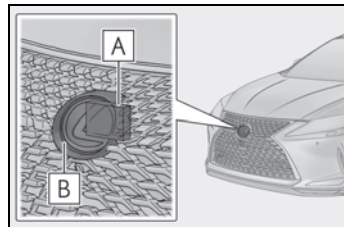
**WARNING**

■ **To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor**

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the radar sensor and the radar sensor cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the radar sensor cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and radar sensor cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, radar sensor cover or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or radar sensor cover.

- If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper needs to be removed and installed, or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **To avoid malfunction of the front camera**

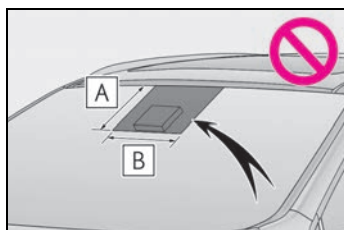
Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
 - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
 - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
 - If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



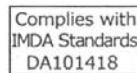
- A** From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera
- B** Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)
- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation, or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation, or ice. (→P.384)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
 - To replace a wiper insert: →P.480
 - If the wiper blades need to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.

- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera.
When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens.
If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ Certification



상호명/제조사 : DENSO CORPORATION
 기자재의 명칭 (모델명) : 차량 충돌방지용 레이더 무선기기(DNMWR009)
 제조연월/제조국 : See Product. / JAPAN
 식별부호 : MSIP-CRM-DKR-DNMWR009



DENSO DNMWR009

4

Driving

Brand Name: DENSO
 Model: DNMWR009

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.
 เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงอันตรายที่อาจเกิดจากคลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้า กรณารักษา
 ระยะห่างจากเซ็นเซอร์เรดาร์ให้มากกว่า 20 ซม. ขณะเซ็นเซอร์ทำงาน
 เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตาม
 มาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุ
 คมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และ
 กิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



For Vehicles sold in Jordan
TRC approval number: TRC/LPD/2016/506

■ **If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

- In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a sensor is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	To clean the part of the windshield in front of the front camera, use the windshield wipers or the windshield defogger of the air conditioning system (→P.384).
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.

- In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.
If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.
- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

*: If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect objects (→P.270) in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.272)

Detectable objects

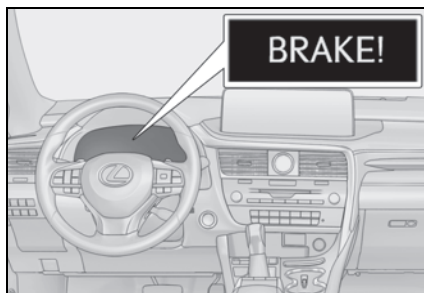
Regions	Detectable objects	Countries/areas
A	• Vehicles • Bicyclists • Pedestrians	Korea, Singapore, Brunei, Oman, Qatar, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, South Africa
B	• Vehicles • Pedestrians	Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macao
C	Vehicles	Indonesia, Thailand, Philippines, Viet Nam, Malaysia, Jordan, Lebanon, Guatemala, Costa Rica, Chile, Argentina, Panama, Syrian Arab Republic, Peru, Bolivia, Honduras, Dominican Republic

The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of August 2019. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the countries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

System functions

■ Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



■ Pre-collision brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ Pre-collision braking

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the impact of the collision.

■ Suspension control (if equipped)

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high,

the AVS (→P.365) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance. Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
 - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.275
 - Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.276
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

**WARNING**

■ **Pre-collision braking**

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.
- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

■ **When to disable the pre-collision system**

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle

- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

Changing settings of the pre-collision system

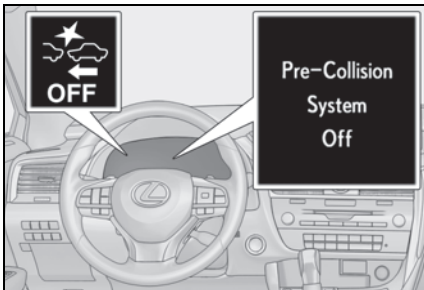
■ **Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system**

The pre-collision system can be ena-

bled/disabled on  (→P.125) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

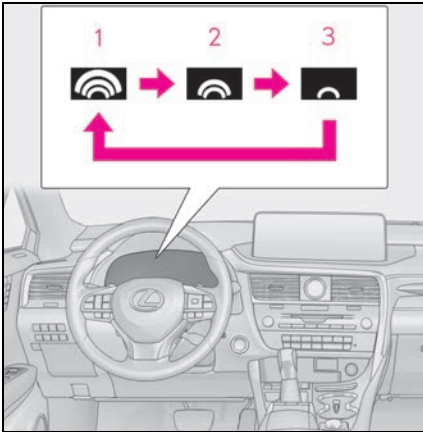
If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on  (→P.125) of the

multi-information display.
The warning timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off. However, if the pre-collision system is disabled and re-enabled, the operation timing will return to the default setting (middle).



- 1 Early
- 2 Middle
- This is the default setting.
- 3 Late

■ Operational conditions

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.
Each function is operational at the following speed

- Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

- Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

* : Applicable to vehicles designed for regions that detection of pedestrians and/or bicyclists is possible (→P.270)

The system may not operate in the following situations:

- If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift lever is in R
- When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

■ Object detection function

The system detects objects based on their size, profile, motion, etc. However, an object may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.276)

The illustration shows an image of detectable objects.

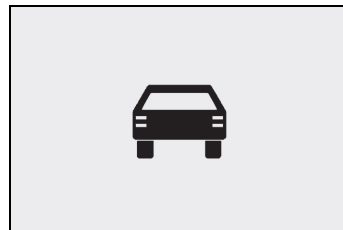
► Region A



► Region B



► Region C



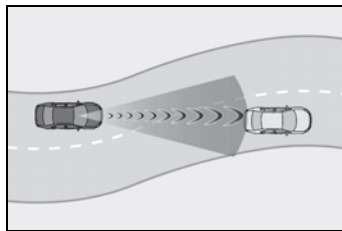
■ Cancellation of the pre-collision braking

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

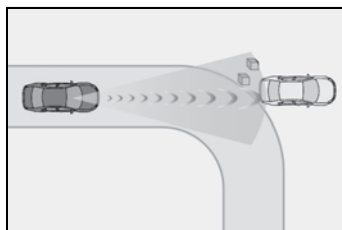
- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

■ Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

- In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.
- When passing a detectable object, etc.
- When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching a detectable object in an adjacent lane or on the roadside, such as when changing the course of travel or driving on a winding road



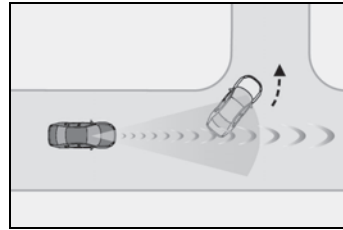
- When rapidly closing on a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as detectable objects, guard-rails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



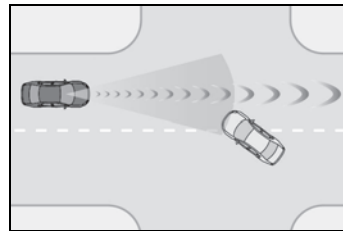
- When there are patterns or paint in front

of your vehicle that may be mistaken for a detectable object

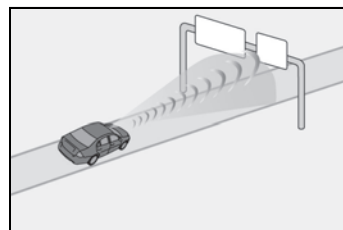
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When overtaking a detectable object that is changing lanes or making a right/left turn



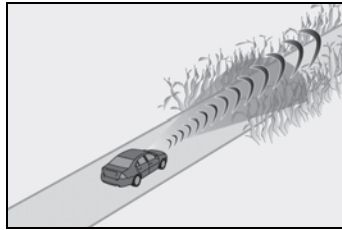
- When passing a detectable object in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



- When a detectable object approaches very close and then stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- If the front of your vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when on an uneven or undulating road surface
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion in front of your vehicle
- When passing under an object (road sign, billboard, etc.)



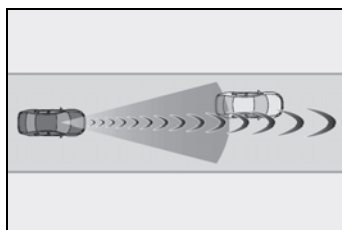
- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact your vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



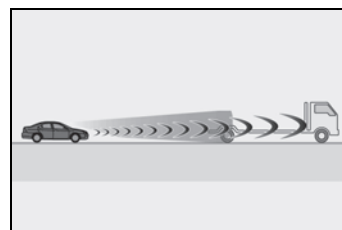
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

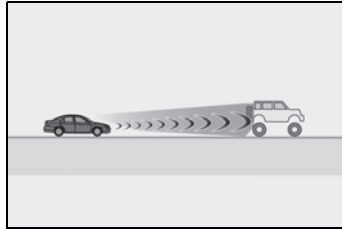
- In some situations such as the following, an object may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:
 - When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
 - When your vehicle or a detectable object is wobbling
 - If a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
 - When your vehicle approaches a detectable object rapidly
 - When a detectable object is not directly in front of your vehicle



- When a detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, vehicle, steel plate on the road, etc.
- When a detectable object is under a structure
- When part of a detectable object is hidden by an object, such as large baggage, an umbrella, or guardrail
- When multiple detectable objects are close together
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a detectable object
- When a detectable object is a shade of white and looks extremely bright
- When a detectable object appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as its surroundings
- If a detectable object cuts or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When a very bright light ahead, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle ahead is a bicycle^{*1} or motorcycle
- If a vehicle ahead is narrow, such as a personal mobility vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer

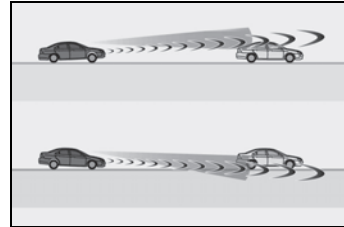


- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance



- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If a vehicle ahead is a child sized bicycle, a bicycle that is carrying a large load, a bicycle ridden by more than one person, or a uniquely shaped bicycle (bicycle with a child seat, tandem bicycle, etc.)^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/or the riding height of a bicyclist ahead is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure^{*2}
- If a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting or bicyclist is bending forward^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is moving fast^{*2}
- If a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle^{*2}
- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel, making a detectable object appear to be nearly the same color as its surroundings
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or low-

ered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface

^{*1}: Applicable to vehicles designed for countries/areas that detection of bicyclists is not possible (→P.270)

^{*2}: Applicable to vehicles designed for countries/areas that detection of pedestrians and/or bicyclists is possible (→P.270)

■ If VSC is disabled

- If VSC is disabled (→P.365), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.
- The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

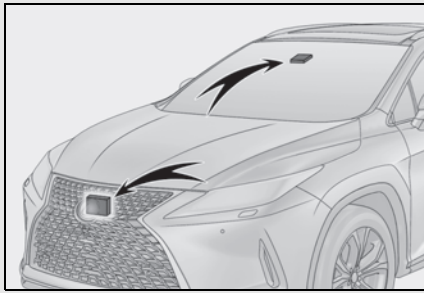
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*

* : If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lane lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane or course* and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane or course*. Furthermore, the system provides steering assistance when dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LTA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

* : Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

**! WARNING****■ Before using LTA system**

- Do not rely solely upon the LTA system. The LTA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- When not using the LTA system, use the LTA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LTA system

In the following situations, use the LTA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.

⚠ WARNING

- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than that highways and freeways.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package) or during emergency towing.

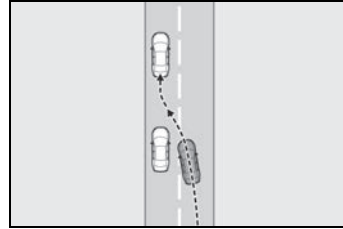
■ Preventing LTA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

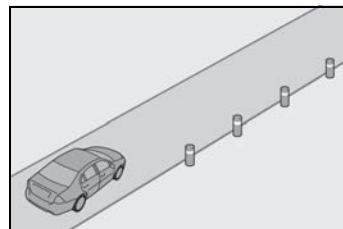
■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.283) and the preceding vehicle changes lanes. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and also change lanes.)

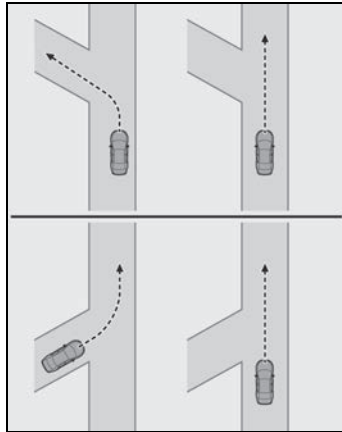


- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.283) and the preceding vehicle is swaying. (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.283) and the preceding vehicle departs from its lane. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.283) and the preceding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).

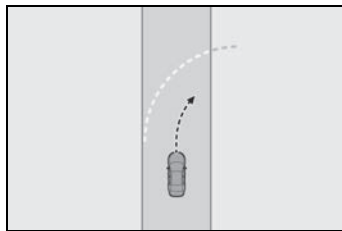


WARNING

- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.

- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle is affected by wind from a vehicle driven in a nearby lane.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

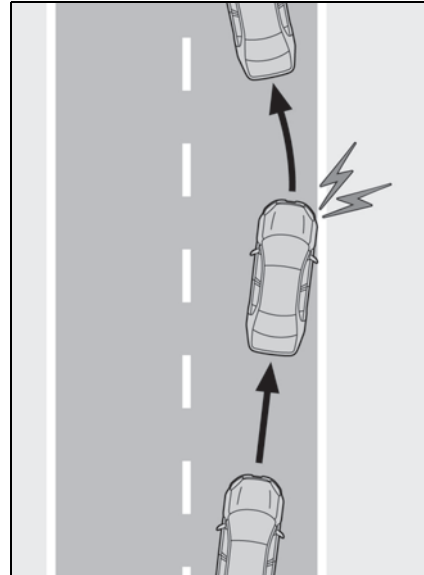
Functions included in LTA system**■ Lane departure alert function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the lane departure alert will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

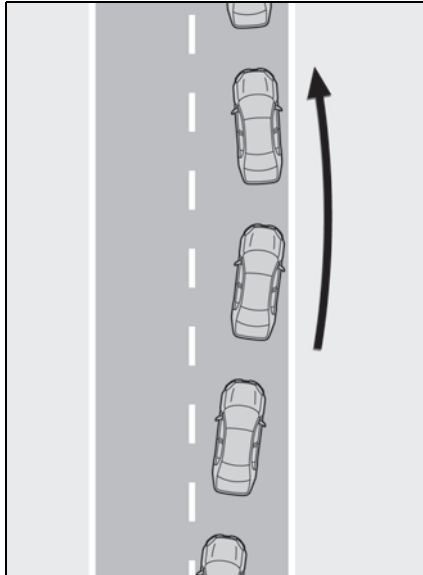
**■ Steering assist function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the steering assist function will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



■ Lane centering function

This function is linked with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

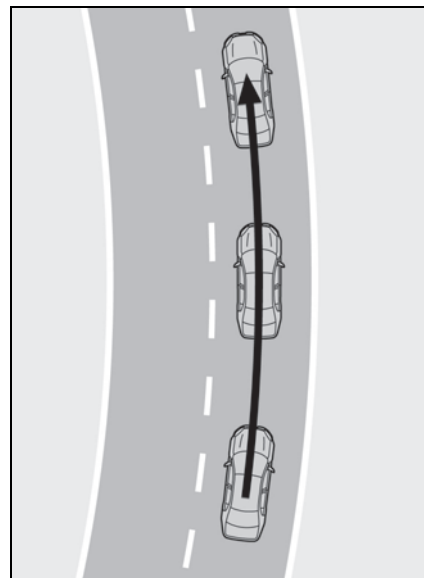
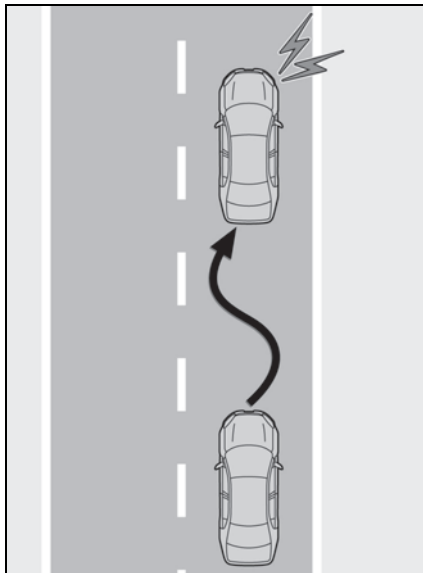
When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

In situations where the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, this function will operate to help follow a preceding vehicle by monitoring the position of the preceding vehicle.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



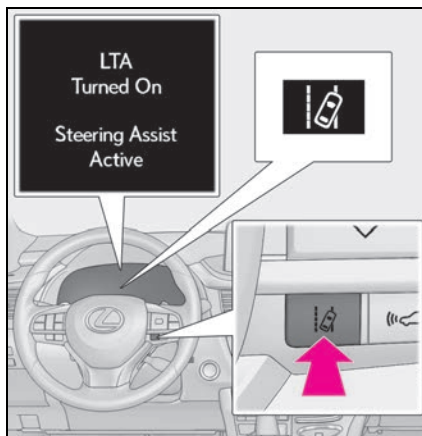
Turning LTA system on

Press the LTA switch to turn the LTA system on.

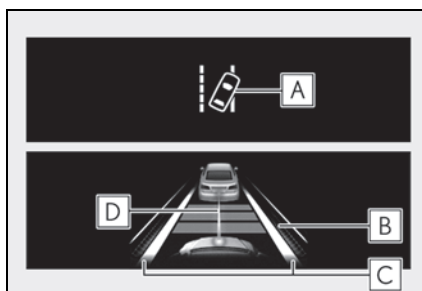
The LTA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LTA switch again to turn the LTA system off.

When the LTA system is turned on or off, operation of the LTA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LTA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white: LTA system is operating.

Illuminated in green: Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange: Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are displayed: Indicates that steering wheel assist of the lane centering function is operating.

One outer side of the lane is displayed: Indicates that steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are flashing: Alerts the driver that their input is necessary to stay in the center of the lane (lane centering function).

C Lane departure alert function display

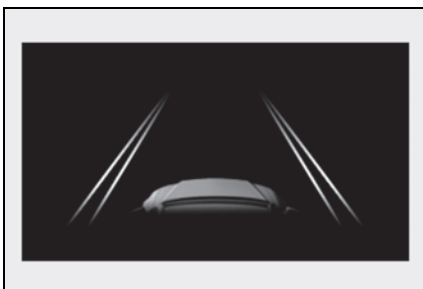
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

- Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course^{*}. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

- Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course^{*} or is temporarily canceled.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

D Follow-up cruising display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering assist of the lane centering function is operating by monitoring the position of a preceding vehicle. When the follow-up cruising display is dis-

played, if the preceding vehicle moves, your vehicle may move in the same way. Always pay careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel as necessary to correct the path of the vehicle and ensure safety.

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.^{*1}
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course^{*2}. (When a white [yellow] line or course^{*2} is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated. (Vehicle with BSM: Except when another vehicle is in the lane on the side where the turn signal was operated)
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.286)

^{*1}: The function operates even if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) when the lane centering function is operating.

^{*2}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.125)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a

steering force level suitable for changing lanes.

- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.286)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.125)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.286)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Setting for "Steering Assist" and "Lane Center" in  of the multi-information display are set to "On". (→P.125)
- This function recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or the position of a preceding vehicle (except when the preceding vehicle is small, such as a motorcycle).
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.286)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.286)

- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ Temporary cancelation of functions

- When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.284)

- If the operation conditions (→P.284) are no longer met while the lane centering function is operating, the steering wheel may vibrate and the buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled. However, if the "Alert" customization setting is set to , the system will notify the driver by vibrating the steering wheel instead of sounding the buzzer.

■ Steering assist function/lane centering function

- Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.
- The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

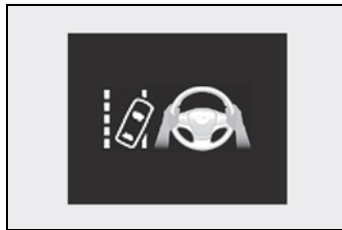
■ Lane departure alert function

- The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.
- If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.
- Vehicle with BSM: It may not be possible for the system to determine if there is a danger of a collision with a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

* : Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Hands off steering wheel warning

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the system is operating

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may not turn and instead depart from its lane while driving around a curve

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist

of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ Warning message

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LTA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- "LTA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- "LTA Unavailable"

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LTA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LTA sys-

tem back on.

● “LTA Unavailable at Current Speed”

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LTA operation range. Drive slower.

■ Customization

Function settings can be changed. (Customizable features:→P.559)

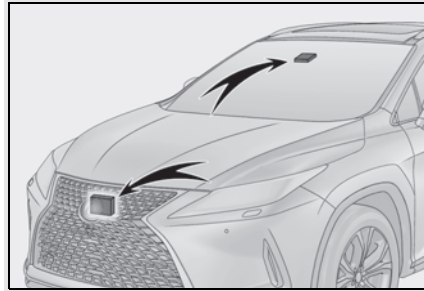
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

* : If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lane lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane or course* and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane or course*.

The LDA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

* : Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



**WARNING**
■ Before using LDA system

- Do not rely solely upon the LDA system. The LDA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- When not using the LDA system, use the LDA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

In the following situations, use the LDA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.

- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than that highways and freeways.

- When your vehicle is towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package) or during emergency towing.

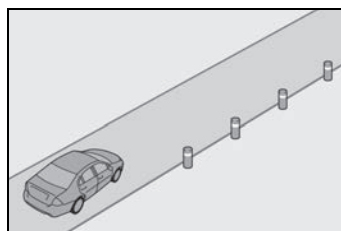
■ Preventing LDA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

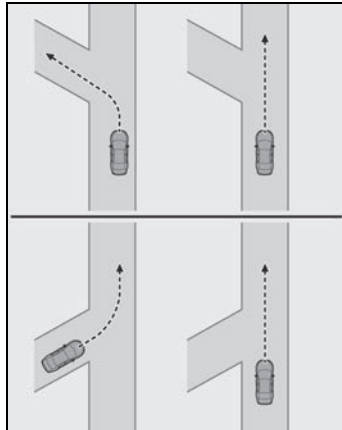
In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).

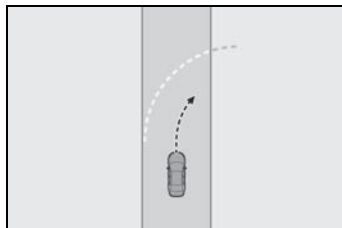


**WARNING**

- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.

- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.

**WARNING**

- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.

Functions included in LDA system

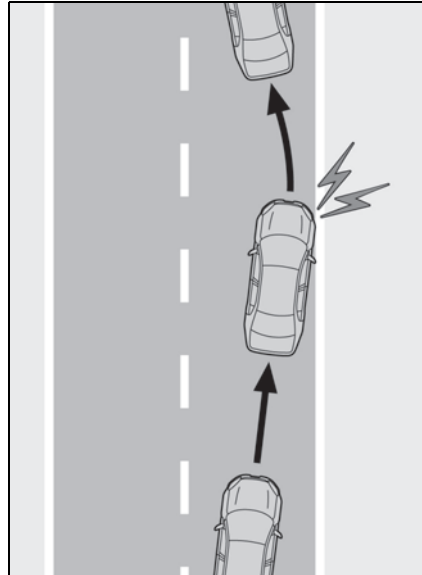
■ Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the lane departure alert will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



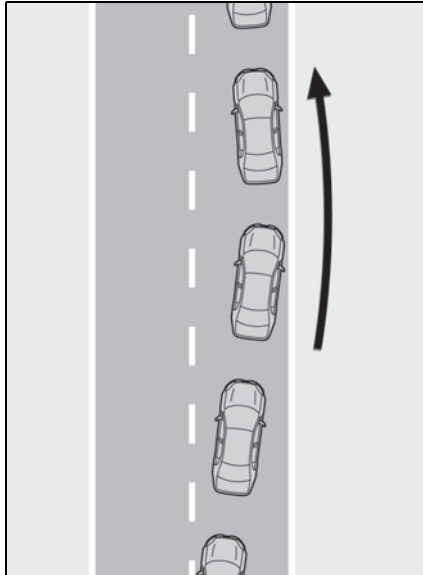
■ Steering assist function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

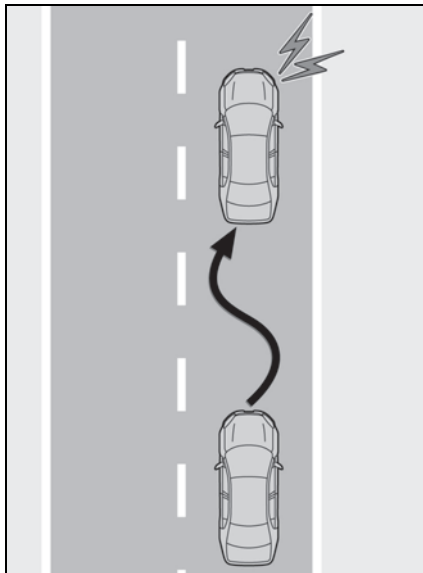
Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the steering assist function will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



Turning LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to turn the LDA system on.

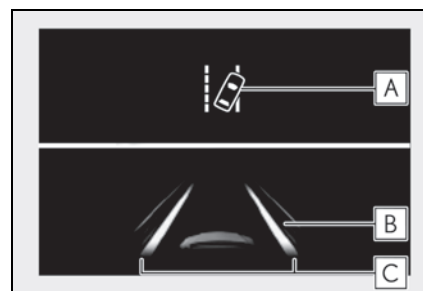
The LDA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LDA switch again to turn the LDA system off.

When the LDA system is turned on or off, operation of the LDA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LDA indicator

4

Driving

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white: LDA system is operating.

Illuminated in green: Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function is operating.

Flashing in orange: Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function is operating.

C Lane departure alert function display

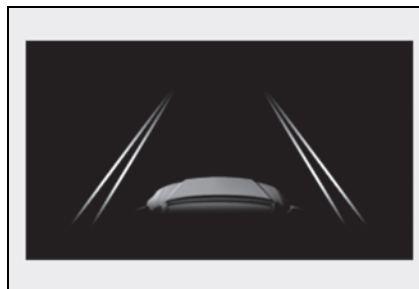
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

► Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

► Inside of displayed lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LDA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*. (When a white [yellow] line or course* is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated. (Vehicle with BSM: Except when another vehicle is in the lane on the side where the turn signal was operated)
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.294)

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane depar-

ture alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.125)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.293)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.125)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.294)

■ Temporary cancelation of functions

When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.292)

■ Steering assist function

- Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.
- The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

■ Lane departure alert function

- The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio play-

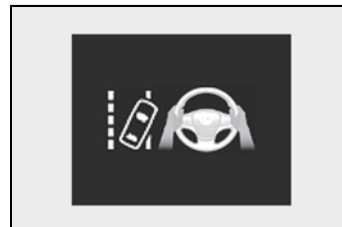
back, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.

- If the edge of the course ^{*} is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.
- Vehicle with BSM: It may not be possible for the system to determine if there is a danger of a collision with a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Hands off steering wheel warning

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the system is operating

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert

type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may not turn and instead depart from its lane while driving around a curve

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

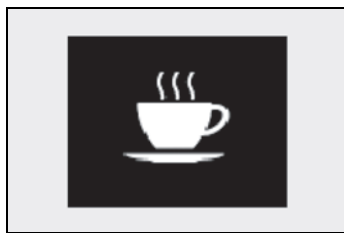
- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ Warning message

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LDA indicator illuminates in orange, fol-

low the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- "Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- "Lane Departure Alert Unavailable"

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LDA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LDA system back on.

- "Lane Departure Alert Unavailable at Current Speed"

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LDA operation range. Drive slower.

- "Lane Departure Alert Unavailable Below Approx 50km/h"

The LDA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph). Drive the vehicle at approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.

■ Customization

Function settings can be changed. (Customizable features:→P.559)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

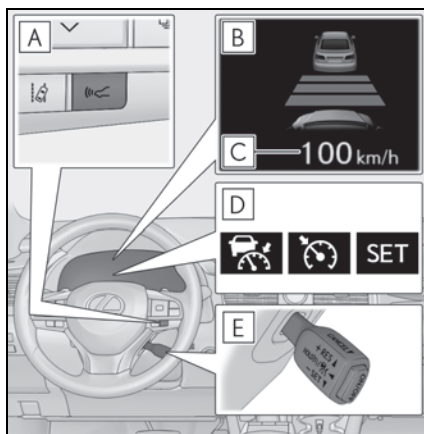
*: If equipped

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on free-ways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.297)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.301)

System Components



- A** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch
- B** Multi-information display

- C** Set speed
- D** Indicators
- E** Cruise control switch

! WARNING

Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided. Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
 - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.302
 - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.303
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range setting to off, using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

**WARNING**

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system. Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- **Assisting the driver to measure following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions.

It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- **Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- **Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

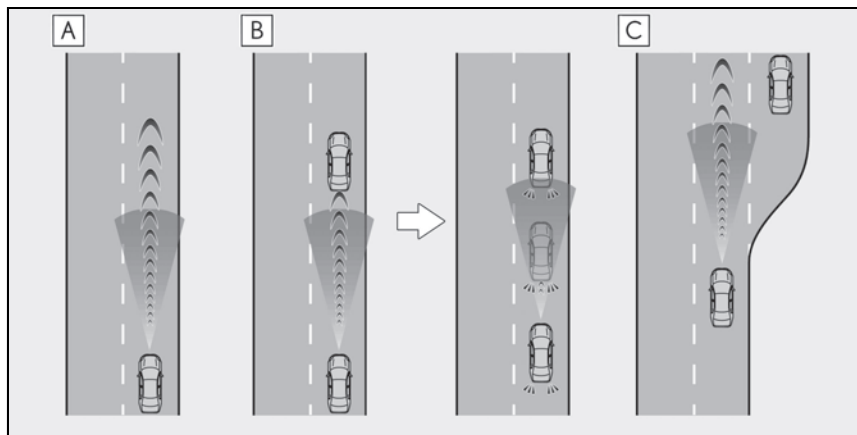
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal (start-off operation) will resume follow-up cruising. If the start-off operation is not performed, system control continues to keep your vehicle stopped.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to a right lane^{*1}/left lane^{*2} while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will quickly accelerate to help to

overtake a passing vehicle.

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

*1: Right-hand drive vehicles

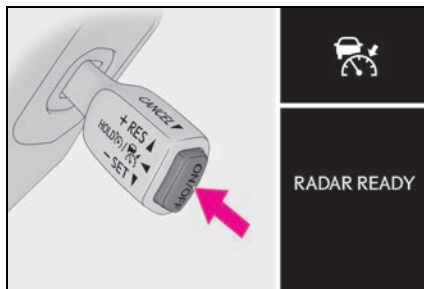
*2: Left-hand drive vehicles

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

- 1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.301)

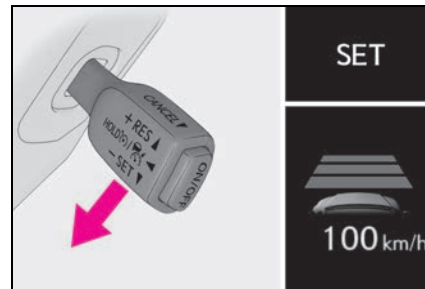


- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come

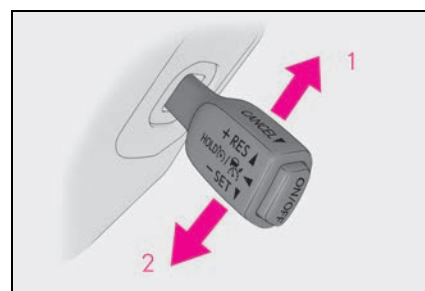
on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



- 1 Increases the speed (Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)^{*1} or 5 mph (8 km/h)^{*2} increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.301), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

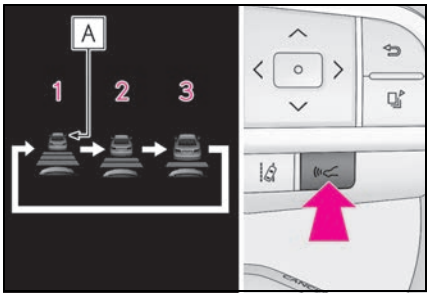
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

^{*1}: When the set speed is shown in “km/h”

^{*2}: When the set speed is shown in “MPH”

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark **A** will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

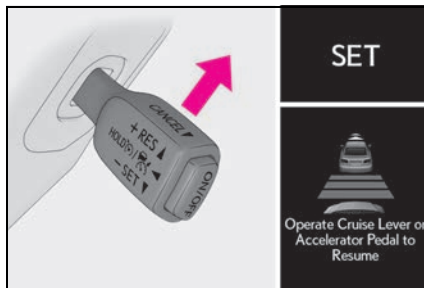
Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

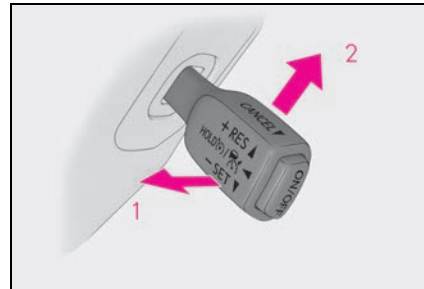
Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



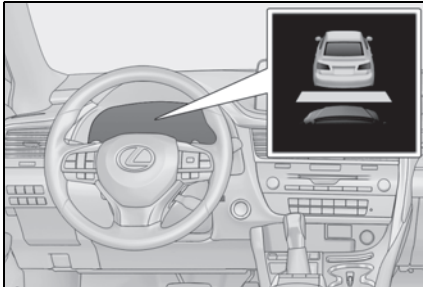
- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed. (When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

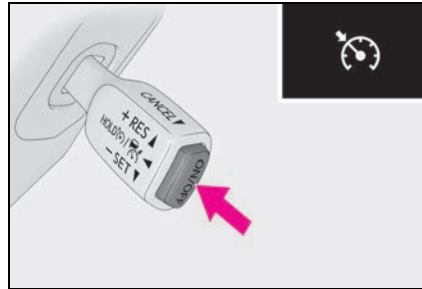
When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

- 1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control

indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.



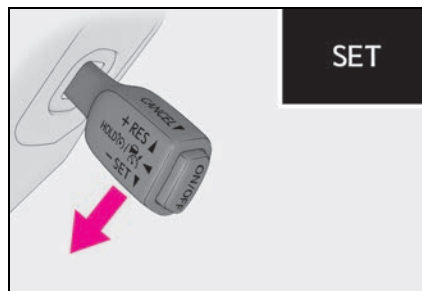
- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.298

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.300



■ Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30

km/h (20 mph) or more.
(However, when the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h [20 mph], the set speed will be set to approximately 30 km/h [20 mph].)

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising

- Pushing the lever up while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the lever is pushed up.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
 - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
 - The driver's door is opened.
 - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Brake operation

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

■ Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

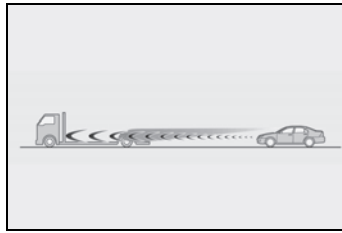
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.(→P.268,514)

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

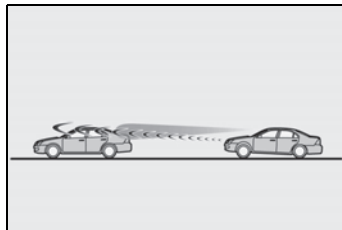
In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.300) may not be activated.

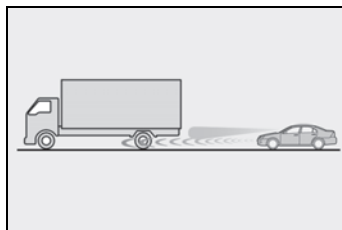
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



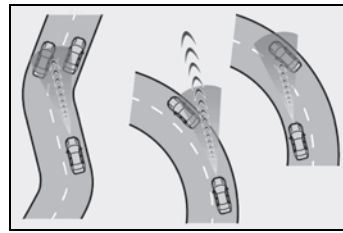
■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as nec-

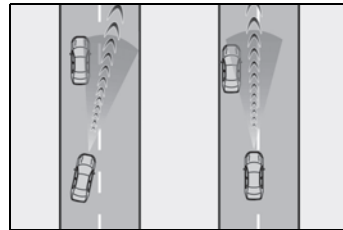
essary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Dynamic radar cruise control*

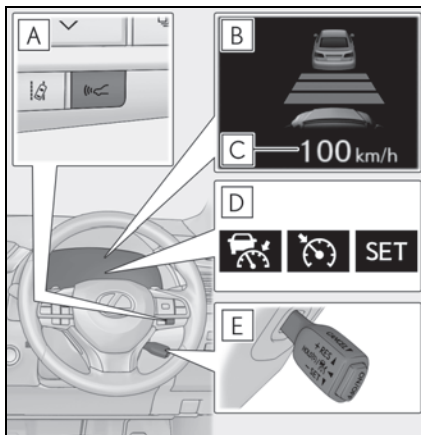
*: If equipped

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.306)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.309)

System Components



- A** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch
- B** Multi-information display
- C** Set speed

D Indicators

E Cruise control switch

WARNING

Before using dynamic radar cruise control

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided. Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
 - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.311
 - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.311
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control setting to off, using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

**WARNING**

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system. Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions.

It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

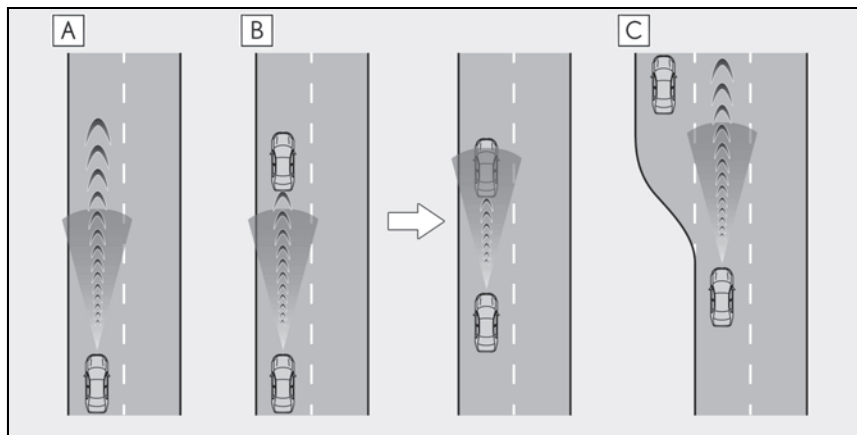
Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhill, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to a right lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will quickly accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant

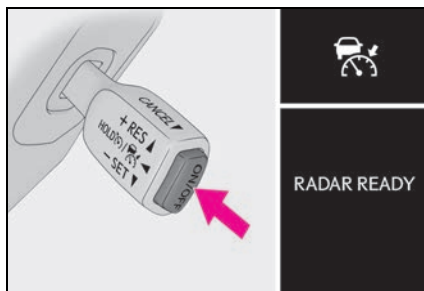
speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

- 1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.309)

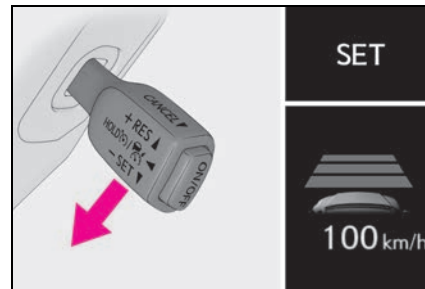


- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

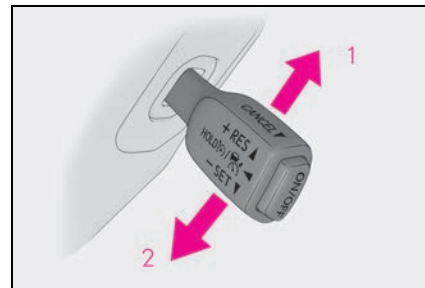
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever

is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



- 1 Increases the speed
- 2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is

4

Driving

operated
Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)^{*1} or 5 mph (8 km/h)^{*2} increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.309), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

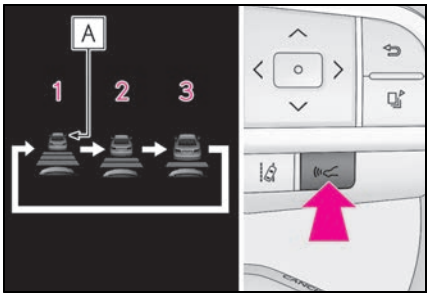
Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

^{*1}: When the set speed is shown in “km/h”
^{*2}: When the set speed is shown in “MPH”

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the

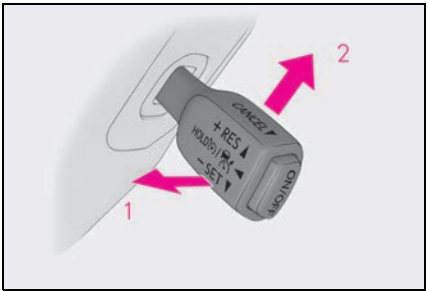
preceding vehicle mark **A** will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

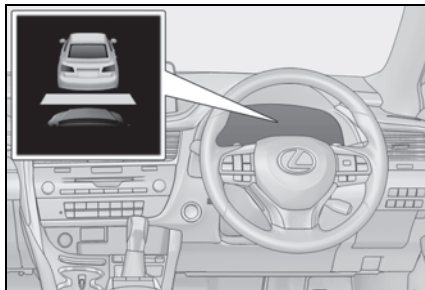
The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

- 2** Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is

traveling at an extremely slow speed

- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

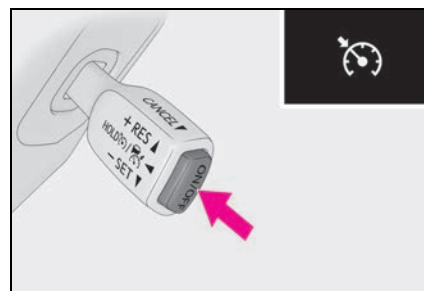
Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

- 1** With the cruise control off, press and hold the “ON/OFF” button for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the “ON/OFF” button is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.



- 2** Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph])

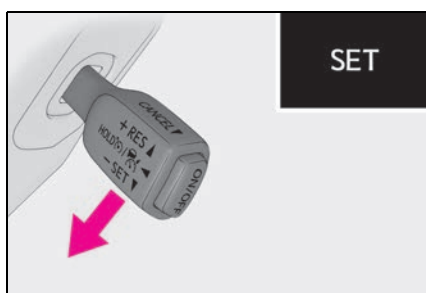
and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: (→P.307)

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: (→P.308)



■ Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Depending on the control mode, this item can be set at the following speeds.
 - Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more
 - Constant speed control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approxi-

mately 25 km/h (16 mph).

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Brake operation

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

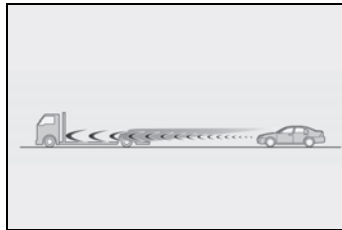
■ Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.268,514)

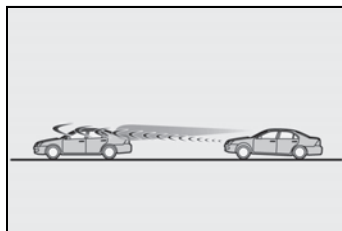
■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.309) may not be activated.

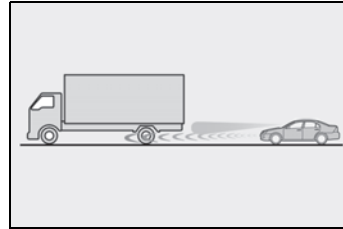
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

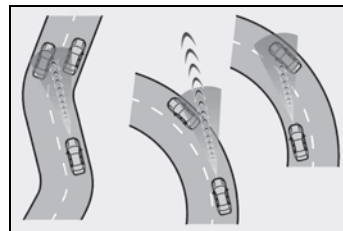


■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

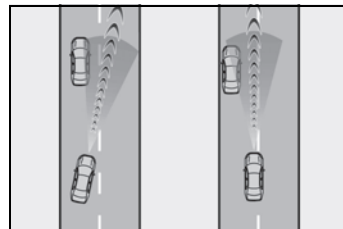
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



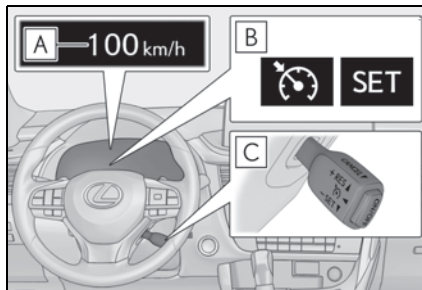
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Cruise control*

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

Summary of functions



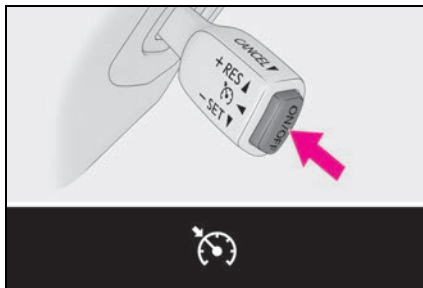
- A** Set speed
- B** Indicators
- C** Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed

- 1** Press the “ON/OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



- 2** Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

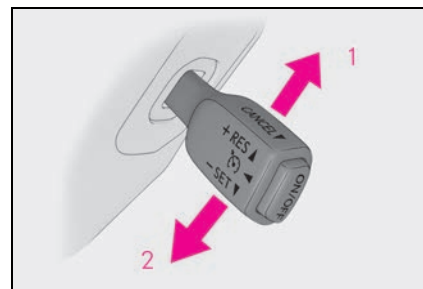
Cruise control “SET” indicator and set speed will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



- 1** Increases the speed
- 2** Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the

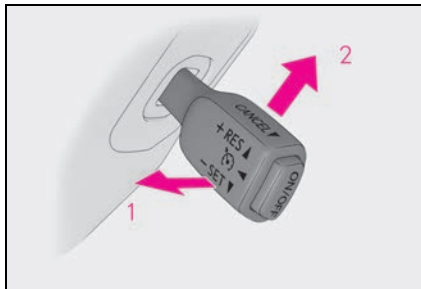
desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.

- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cancelation of cruise control

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ If "Cruise Control Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



WARNING

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends

**WARNING**

- On winding roads
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
 - On steep hills
- Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Stop & Start system*

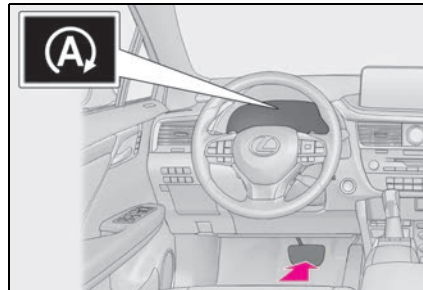
*: If equipped

The Stop & Start system stops and starts the engine according to brake pedal or shift lever operation when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a stoplight, intersection, etc., in order to improve fuel economy and reduce noise pollution caused by the engine idling.

Stop & Start system operation**■ Stopping the engine**

While driving with the D shift position selected, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle. The engine will stop automatically.

When the engine stops, the Stop & Start indicator will illuminate.

**■ Restarting the engine**

Release the brake pedal. The engine will start automatically.

When the engine starts, the Stop & Start indicator will turn off.

■ When the brake hold system is operating

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, if the brake pedal is released the engine will remain stopped.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will restart.
- While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, if the engine is restarted, the brake hold system will continue to apply the brakes, unless the operation conditions of the brake hold system are no longer met. (→P.242)

■ When the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating (vehicles with a dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range)

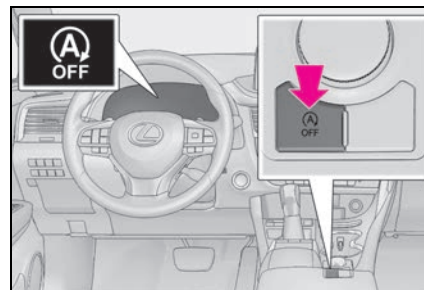
- When the vehicle is stopped by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the engine will stop automatically even though the brake pedal is not depressed.
- When the preceding vehicle starts off, the engine will restart automatically.
- If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the controlled stop will continue.

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will illuminate.

Pressing the switch again will enable the Stop & Start system and the Stop & Start cancel indicator will turn off.



■ Automatic enabling of the Stop & Start system

If the Stop & Start system is disabled using the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned off and then the engine is started.

Hill-start assist control

When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system when the vehicle is on an incline, when the brake pedal is released, brake force is temporarily maintained to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards before the engine is restarted and drive force is generated. When drive force is generated, the maintained brake force is automatically canceled.

- This function operates on flat sur-

faces as well as steep inclines.

- Sound may be generated from the brake system, but this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Brake pedal response may change and vibration may occur, but this does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Points for use

- If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.229)
- When the engine is being restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, turn the engine switch off to stop the engine completely.
- When the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system, the steering wheel may temporarily feel heavy.

■ Operating conditions

- The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
 - The vehicle has been driven a certain amount of time.
 - The brake pedal is being depressed firmly. (Except when the vehicle is stopped by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range when in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)
 - The D shift position is selected.
 - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
 - The driver's door is closed.
 - The selected driving mode is NORMAL

or ECO mode.

- The windshield defogger is off.
- The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
- The engine is adequately warmed up.
- The outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher.
- The hood is closed. (→P.317)
- In the following situations the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.
 - When the air conditioning system is being used.
 - When the battery is undergoing a periodic recharge.
 - When the battery is not sufficiently charged, such as if the vehicle has been parked for a long time and the battery charge has decreased, the electric load is large, the battery fluid temperature is excessively low or the battery has deteriorated.
 - When the brake booster vacuum is low.
 - When the elapsed time since the engine was restarted is short.
 - When the vehicle is stopped frequently, such as when in a traffic jam.
 - When the engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
 - When the vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
 - When the steering wheel is being operated.
 - When the vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
 - When the battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
 - For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.
- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will be restarted automatically if any of the following conditions are met: (To enable the engine to be stopped by the Stop & Start system again, drive the vehicle.)
 - The air conditioning system is turned on.
 - The windshield defogger is turned on.
 - The shift lever is shifted from D.
 - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.

- The driver's door is opened.
- The driving mode is changed from NORMAL or ECO mode to another mode.
- The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine may restart automatically in the following situations: (To enable the engine to be stopped by the Stop & Start system again, drive the vehicle.)
- When the brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
- When the air conditioning system is being used.
- When a switch of the air conditioning system is operated (windshield defogger switch, etc.).
- If the battery charge becomes low.

■ When the hood is opened

- If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.229)
- If the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

■ Air conditioning system operation while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system

When the air conditioning is in automatic mode and the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the fan may operate at a low speed in order to prevent the temperature in the cabin from increasing or decreasing or may be stopped.

To prioritize air conditioning system performance when the vehicle is stopped, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

- If the windshield is fogged up

Turn the windshield defogger on.
(→P.384)

If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

- If an odor is emitted from the air conditioning system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

■ Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is on can be changed on the  or  screen of the multi-information display (→P.126). (The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is off cannot be changed.)

- Changing the setting on the  (Stop & Start system information) screen

- 1 Display the  screen, press the  meter control switch, press the  or  meter control switch to select , and then press .
- 2 Press the  or  meter control switch to select "Standard" or "Extended" and then press .

- Changing the setting on the  screen

- 1 Display the  screen, press the  or  meter control switch to select  and then press .
- 2 Press the  or  meter control switch to select "Standard" or "Extended" and then press .

■ Displaying the Stop & Start system status

→P.130

■ Multi-information display messages

If the following situations,  and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

- When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

"Depress Brake Firmly to Activate"

- The brake pedal is not depressed enough.

→ If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.

"For Climate Control"

- The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.

→ If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature is small, the system will be enabled.

- The windshield defogger is ON.

"Battery Charging"

- The battery charge amount may be low.

→ Engine stop is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery, but if the engine is operated for a short while, engine stop is allowed.

- A refresh charge may be occurring, such as when the battery is undergoing a periodic recharge, for a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected, for a while after the battery has been replaced, etc.

After a refresh charge for up to an hour completes, the system can be operated.

- If the message is displayed continuously (more than an hour), the battery may be deteriorated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

"For Brake System"

- The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
- The brake booster vacuum is low.

→ When the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level, the system will be enabled.

"Steering Wheel Turned"

- The steering wheel has been operated.

"Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"

- The driver seat belt is not fastened.

"Stop & Start Unavailable"

- The Stop & Start system is temporarily disabled.

→ Operate the engine for a short while.

- The engine may have been started with the hood open.

→ Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

"System Temperature Low"

- The battery may be cold.

→ Operate the engine for a short while allows the system to recover due to the temperature increase in the engine compartment.

"System Temperature High"

- The battery may be extremely hot.

→ If the engine compartment is allowed to cool sufficiently, the system will recover.

"Non-Dedicated Battery"

- A non-dedicated battery for the Stop & Start system may have been installed.

→ The Stop & Start system does not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

"For Climate Control"

- The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.

- The windshield defogger has been turned on.



"For Brake System"

- The brake pedal has been depressed further or pumped.

→ The system will be enabled after the engine runs and the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level.



"Battery Charging"

- The battery charge may have become low.

→ The engine is restarted to prioritize battery charging. Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover.



"Steering Wheel Turned"

- The steering wheel was operated.



"Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"

- The driver seat belt has been unfastened.

■ When the buzzer sounds

If the driver's door is opened when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system and the shift lever is in D, a buzzer will sound and the Stop & Start system indicator will flash. To stop the buzzer, close the driver's door.

■ The Stop & Start system protection function

- When the volume of the audio system is excessively high, sound output from the audio system may suddenly be cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. To prevent the audio system from being cut off, keep the volume of audio system at a moderate level. If the audio system has been cut off, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or more and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated if the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If this occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the

audio system normally.

- Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to off.

■ Replacing the battery

→ P.539

■ If the Stop & Start cancel indicator flashes continuously

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If "Stop & Start System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



WARNING

■ When the Stop & Start system is operating

Make sure to disable the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area. If not disabled, the engine may be automatically restarted unexpectedly, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle, possibly resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

- Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). An accident may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).



NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

If any of the following situations occur, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly. Have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

**NOTICE**

- While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even though the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light does not illuminate.
- Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning light is illuminated or the interior light is illuminated when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Even though the driver's door is open, the open door warning light does not illuminate or the interior light does not illuminate when the interior light switch is in the door position.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper on the left and right side to assist the driver in confirming safety when changing lanes.

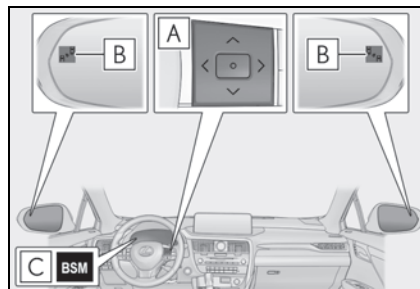
**WARNING**

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

System components

A Meter control switches

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes.

C BSM indicator

Illuminates when the Blind Spot Monitor is enabled

■ **Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility**

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **When “Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable” is shown on the multi-information display**

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.326)
The system should return to normal operation after removing the ice, snow, mud, etc. from the rear bumper. Additionally, the sensors may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

■ **Certification**

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL
www.anatel.gov.br



“Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.”

“Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicados”

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL

www.anatel.gov.br



“ Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.”



The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules

- 1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
- 2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules

- 1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
- 2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

ictQATAR
Type approval reg No:
CRA/SA/2014/R-4413

Importer No:
FT-2222

ictQATAR
Type approval reg No:
CRA/SA/2014/R-4413

Importer No:
FT-2222

4

Driving

TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2014/254

TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2014/254

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3A

상호 또는 성명	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH
기기 명칭	물체감지센서용 무선기기(24GHz 주파수대를 사용하는 기기)
기본모델명	SRR3-A
제조사/제조국가	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH / 독일



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3A

상호 또는 성명	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH
기기 명칭	물체감지센서용 무선기기(24GHz 주파수대를 사용하는 기기)
기본모델명	SRR3-A
제조사/제조국가	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH / 독일

第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



**NTC**

Type Approved

No.: ESD-1409920C

**NTC**

Type Approved

No.: ESD-1409920C

37739/I/SDPPI/2017

2130

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

37739/I/SDPPI/2017

2130

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

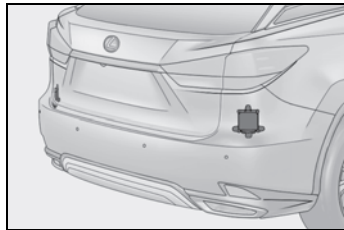
**WARNING****■ Handling the rear side radar sensor**

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can operate correctly.

⚠ WARNING

- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.

If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.321) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.329) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



- Do not attach stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
 - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
 - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.

- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- If a sensor or the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off

Use the meter control switches to turn on/off the function.

- 1 Press < or > to select .
- 2 Press ^ or v to select  and then press .

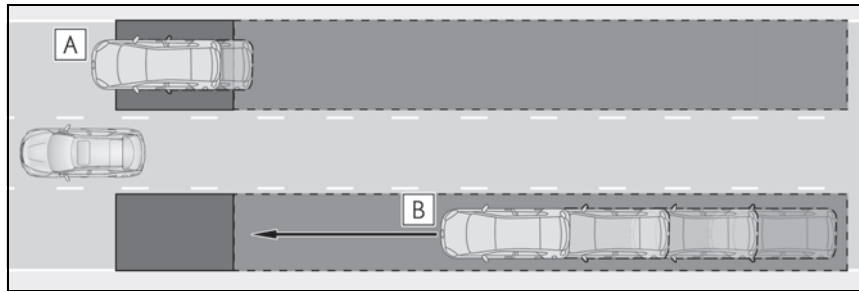
4

Driving

Blind Spot Monitor operation

■ Vehicles that can be detected by the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

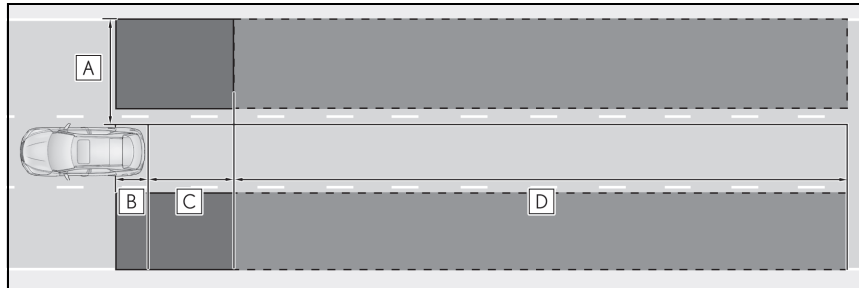


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ The Blind Spot Monitor detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle ^{*1}

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper ^{*2}

^{*1}: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The Blind Spot Monitor is on.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in an adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor will not detect a vehicle

The Blind Spot Monitor is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor may not function correctly

- The Blind Spot Monitor may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
 - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
 - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
 - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
 - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
 - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
 - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
 - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
 - When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
 - As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
 - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
 - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
 - When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
 - When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle
 - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
 - Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on
- Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor

unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle

PKSA (Parking Support Alert)*

*: If equipped

The Parking Support Alert system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object or such as a wall is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action.

PKSA (Parking Support Alert) system

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

Ultrasonic sensors are used to detect static objects in the detection area when driving at a low speed or backing up. (→P.332)

■ RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function (if equipped)

Rear side radar sensors are used to detect approaching vehicles in the detection areas behind the vehicle when backing up. (→P.339)

Setting the buzzer volume

■ Adjusting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. The volume of buzzers for the Lexus parking

assist-sensor and RCTA function will be adjusted simultaneously.

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.126)

- ▶ Vehicles without the Lexus parking assist-sensor

- 1 Press or to select .
- 2 Press or to select "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 3 Press or to select and then press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

- ▶ Vehicles with the Lexus parking assist-sensor

- 1 Press or to select .
- 2 Press or to select "PKSA" and then press .
- 3 Press or to select and then press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

■ Muting a buzzer temporarily

- ▶ Vehicles without the Lexus parking assist-sensor

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display when an object is detected. To mute the buzzer, press .

Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is changed.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When the operating function is temporarily canceled.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch is turned off.
- ▶ Vehicles with the Lexus parking assist-sensor

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display when an object is detected. To mute the buzzer, press .

The buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor and RCTA function will be muted simultaneously.

Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is changed.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch is turned off.

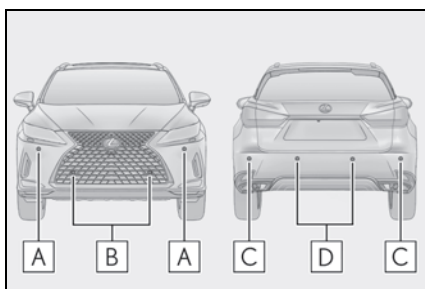
Lexus parking assist-sensor*

*: If equipped

The distance from your vehicle to objects, such as a wall, when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped), Center Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

System components

■ Types of sensors



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

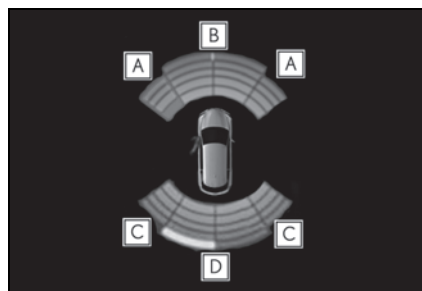
C Rear corner sensors

D Rear center sensors

■ Display

When the sensors detect an object, such as a wall, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped) and Center Display depending on the position and distance to the object.

- Multi-information display and head-up display



A Front corner sensor detection

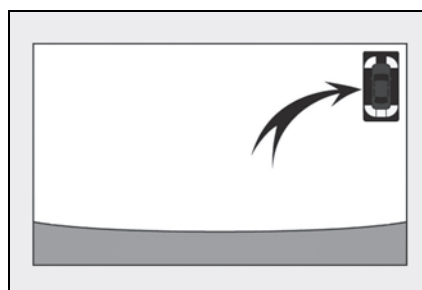
B Front center sensor detection

C Rear corner sensor detection

D Rear center sensor detection

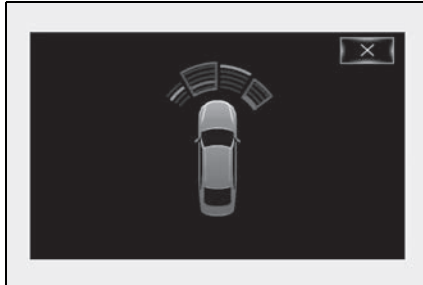
- Center Display (vehicles with a Lexus parking assist monitor)

When the R shift lever is selected, a simplified image is displayed on the Center Display.



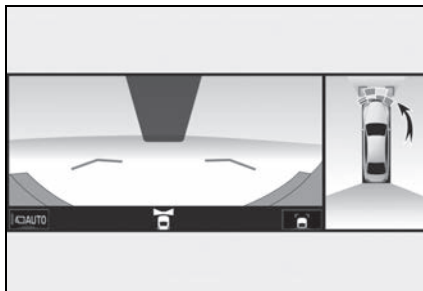
- Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display

When the N, M or D shift lever is selected (vehicle moving forward), a graphic will be displayed on the Center Display.



- Center Display (vehicles with a Panoramic view monitor)

A graphic will be displayed on the Center Display.



Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.126)

- 1 Press **<** or **>** to select .
- 2 Press **^** or **v** to select "PKSA" and then press .
- 3 Press **^** or **v** to select  and then press .

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is disabled, the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (→P.116) illuminates.

To re-enable the system, select  on the multi-information display, select  and turn it on. If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode after the engine switch has been turned off.

WARNING

■ When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected. Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.

■ When to disable the function

In the following situations, disable the function as it may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole, wireless antenna or fog lights.
- The front or rear bumper or a sensor receives a strong impact.

WARNING

- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

- Towing eyelets are installed.

- A backlit licence plate is installed.

When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction, etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes or shows continuously, and a beep sounds when no objects are detected.

- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.

- If the bumper or grille collides with something.

- If the display flashes or is displayed continuously and a buzzer does not sound, except when the mute function has been turned on.

- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
If the error occurs even when there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

The system can be operated when

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

- Lexus parking assist-sensor function is on.

- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

- A shift lever other than P.

Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. (→P.330)

If “Parking Assist Unavailable” is displayed on the multi-information display

- Water may be continuously flowing over the sensor surface, such as in a heavy rain. When the system determines that it is normal, the system will return to normal.

- Initialization may not have been performed after a battery terminal was disconnected and reconnected. Initialize the system. (→P.334) If this message continues to be displayed even after initialization, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If “Parking Assist Unavailable Clean Parking Assist Sensor” is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal.

Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.

If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected

The system needs to be initialized. To initial-

ize the system, drive the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.

■ Sensor detection information

- The following situations may occur during use.
- The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle front and rear bumpers.
- Depending on the shape of the object and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
- There will be a short delay between object detection and display. Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
- It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
- It may be difficult to hear the buzzer if buzzers for other systems are sounding.

■ Conditions under which the function may not function correctly

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud

noises producing ultrasonic waves.

- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road.
- If the vehicle is significantly tilted.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.

■ Objects which may not be properly detected

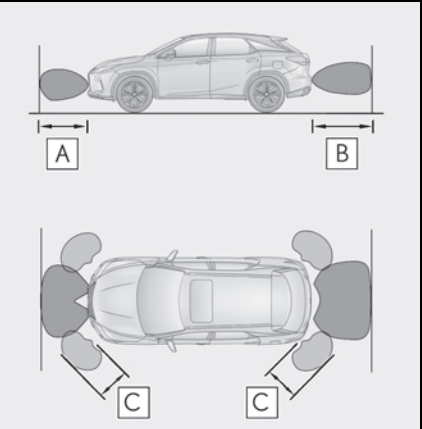
The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

Sensor detection display, object distance

■ Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect objects that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object, etc.

■ Multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped) and Center Display

When an object is detected by a sensor, the approximate distance to the object will be displayed on the multi-information display, Center Display, and head-up display (if equipped). (As the distance to the object becomes short, the distance segments may blink.)

- Approximate distance to object: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)* (Rear center sensor)

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

* : Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.338)

- Approximate distance to object: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)* (Front center sensor)

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

- * : Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.338)
- Approximate distance to object: 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)*

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

- * : Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.338)
- Approximate distance to object: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)*

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

- * : Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.338)
- Approximate distance to object: 30 cm (1.0 ft.) to 15 cm (0.5 ft.)^{*1}

Multi-information display ^{*2}	Center Display ^{*2}	Head-up display
		

- ^{*1}: Automatic buzzer mute function is disabled. (→P.338)
- ^{*2}: The distance segments will blink slowly.
- Approximate distance to object: Less than 15 cm (0.5 ft.)^{*1}

Multi-information display ^{*2}	Center Display ^{*2}	Head-up display
		

^{*1}: Automatic buzzer mute function is disabled. (→P.338)

^{*2}: The distance segments will blink rapidly.

■ Buzzer operation and distance to an object

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an object. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the object, the buzzer sounds continuously:

Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)

- When 2 or more objects are detected simultaneously, the buzzer sounds for the nearest object. If one or more objects come within approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.) of the vehicle, the buzzer will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.
- Automatic buzzer mute function:
After a buzzer begins sounding, if the distance between the vehicle and the detected object does not become shorter, the buzzer will be muted automatically. (However, if the distance between the vehicle and object is 30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less, this function will not operate.)

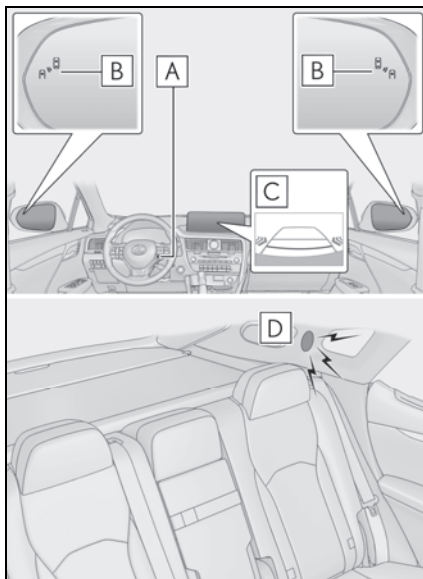
The buzzer sounds volume can be adjusted. (→P.330)

RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) function *

*: If equipped

The RCTA function uses the BSM rear side radar sensors installed behind the rear bumper. This function is intended to assist the driver in checking areas that are not easily visible when backing up.

System components



A Meter control switches

Turning the RCTA function on/off.

When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator illuminates.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C Center Display

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.341) for the detected side will be displayed on the Center Display. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

D RCTA buzzer

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer will sound.

Turning the RCTA function on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the RCTA function. (→P.126)

- ▶ Vehicles without the Lexus parking assist-sensor

- 1 Press < or > to select .
- 2 Press ^ or v to select "RCTA" and then press .

When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator (→P.116) illuminates on the multi-information display. (Each time the engine switch is turned off then changed to IGNITION ON mode, the RCTA function will be enabled automatically.)

- ▶ Vehicles with the Lexus parking assist-sensor

- 1 Press < or > to select .
- 2 Press ^ or v to select "PKSA" and then press .

- 3 Press  or  to select "RCTA" and then press .

When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator (→P.116) illuminates on the multi-information display. (Each time the engine switch is turned off then changed to IGNITION ON mode, the RCTA function will be enabled automatically.)



WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle. As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary. Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.



NOTICE

■ Before using the RCTA function

Do not place objects near the sensors.

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "Rear Cross Traffic Alert Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Water, ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.327) Removing the water, ice, snow, mud, etc., from the attached to the rear bumper around the sensors to return the function to normal.

Additionally, the function may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

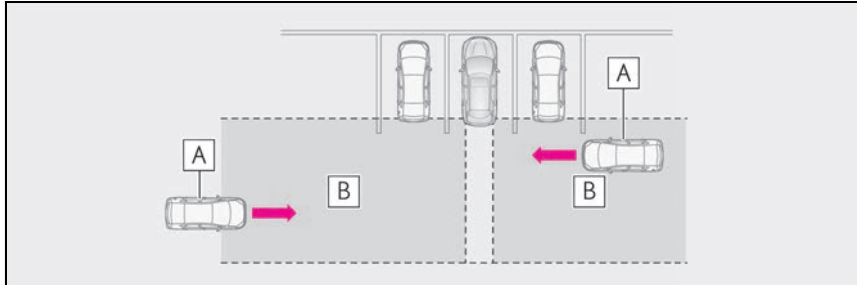
■ Rear side radar sensors

→P.327

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses rear side radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



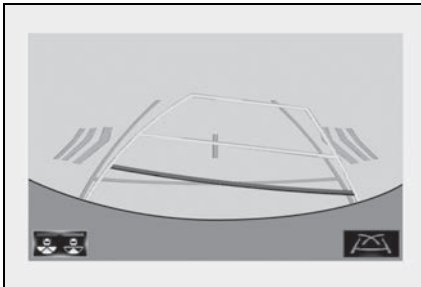
A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

■ RCTA icon display

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Center Display.

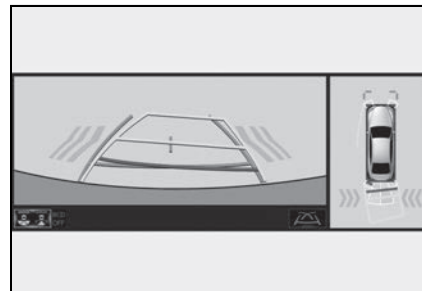
- Example (Lexus parking assist monitor) (if equipped): Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle

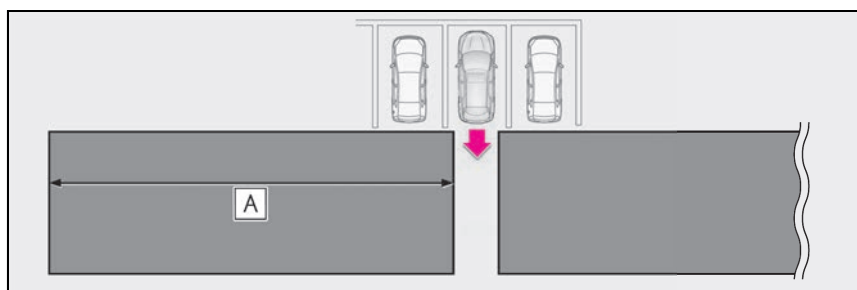


■ RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

- Example (Panoramic view monitor) (if equipped): Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle





The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
28 km/h (18 mph) (fast)	20 m (65 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

■ The RCTA function is operational when

The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

■ Setting the buzzer volume

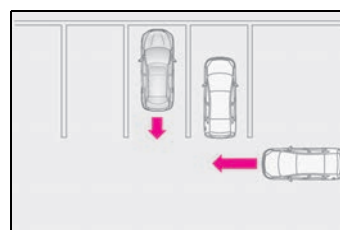
The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. (→P.330)

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.126)

■ Conditions under which the RCTA function will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



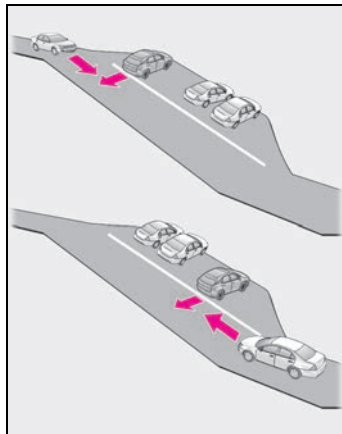
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

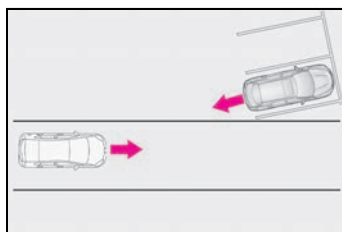
■ Conditions under which the RCTA function may not function correctly

- The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
 - When a sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its sur-

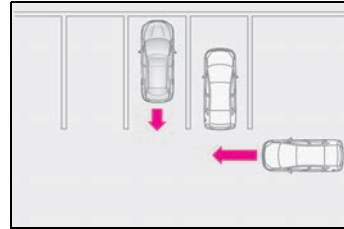
- rounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- If a vehicle is approaching the rear of your vehicle rapidly
- When a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle.
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



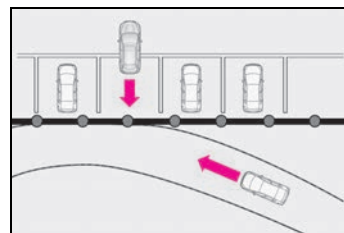
- When backing out of a shallow angle parking spot



- Immediately after the RCTA function is turned on
- Immediately after the engine is started with the RCTA function on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions



- Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:
 - When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle
 - When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short
- When a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle

PKSB (Parking Support Brake)*

*: If equipped

The Parking Support Brake system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system

■ Parking Support Brake function (static objects) (if equipped)

Ultrasonic sensors are used to detect static objects, such as a wall, in the detection area when driving at a low speed or backing up. (→P.350)

■ Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) (if equipped)

Rear radar sensors are used to detect approaching vehicles in the detection area behind the vehicle when backing up. (→P.356)



WARNING

■ Limitations of the Parking Support Brake system

Do not overly rely on the system, as doing so may lead to an accident.

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive carefully, taking care to observe your surroundings. The Parking Support Brake system is designed to provide support to lessen the severity of collisions. However, it may not operate in some situations.
- The Parking Support Brake system is not designed to stop the vehicle completely. Additionally, even if the system has stopped the vehicle, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal immediately as brake control will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds.



NOTICE

■ If “Parking Support Brake Unavailable” is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing

If this message is displayed immediately after the engine switch is changed to IGNITION ON mode, operate the vehicle carefully, paying attention to your surroundings. It may be necessary to drive the vehicle for a certain amount of time before the system returns to normal. (If the system is not return to normal after driving for a while, clean the sensors and their surrounding area on the bumpers.)

Enabling/Disabling the Parking Support Brake

The Parking Support Brake can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display. All of the Parking Support Brake functions (static objects and rear-crossing vehicles) are ena-

bled/disabled simultaneously.

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the parking support brake. (→P.126)

1 Press < or > to select .

2 Press ^ or v to select  and then press .

When the Parking Support Brake is disabled, the PKSB OFF indicator (→P.116) illuminates on the multi-information display.

To re-enable the system when it was disabled, select  on the multi-information display, select  and turn it on. If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode after the engine switch has been turned off.

Displays and buzzers for engine output restriction control and brake control

If the engine output restriction control or brake control operates, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the Center Display and multi-information display, to alert the driver. On vehicles with a head-up display, the head-up display (if equipped) will display the same message as the multi-information display.

Depending on the situation, engine output restriction control will operate to either limit acceleration or restrict output as much as possible.

- Engine output restriction control is operating (acceleration restriction)

Acceleration greater than a certain amount is restricted by the system.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor)
(If equipped): No warning displayed

Multi-information display: "Object Detected Acceleration Reduced"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Does not sound

- Engine output restriction control is operating (output restricted as much as possible)

The system has determined that stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor)
(If equipped): "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Brake control is operating

The system determined that emergency braking is necessary.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor)
(If equipped): "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Vehicle stopped by system operation

The vehicle has been stopped by brake control operation.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor)
(If equipped): "Press Brake Pedal"

Multi-information display: "Switch to Brake" (If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, "Press Brake Pedal" will be displayed.)

PKSB OFF indicator: Illuminated

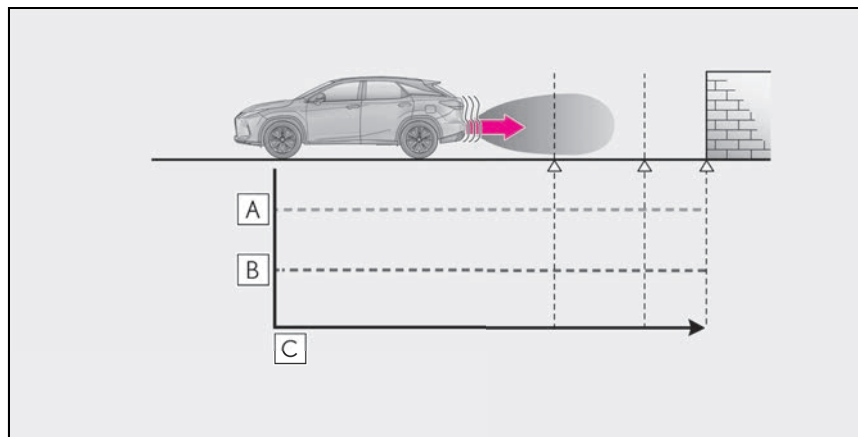
Buzzer: Short beep

System overview

If the Parking Support Brake determines that a collision with a detected object is possible, the engine output will be restricted to restrain any increase in the vehicle speed. (Engine output restriction control: See figure 2.)

Additionally, if the accelerator pedal continues to be depressed, the brakes will be applied automatically to reduce the vehicle speed. (Brake control: See figure 3.)

- Figure 1 When the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) is disabled

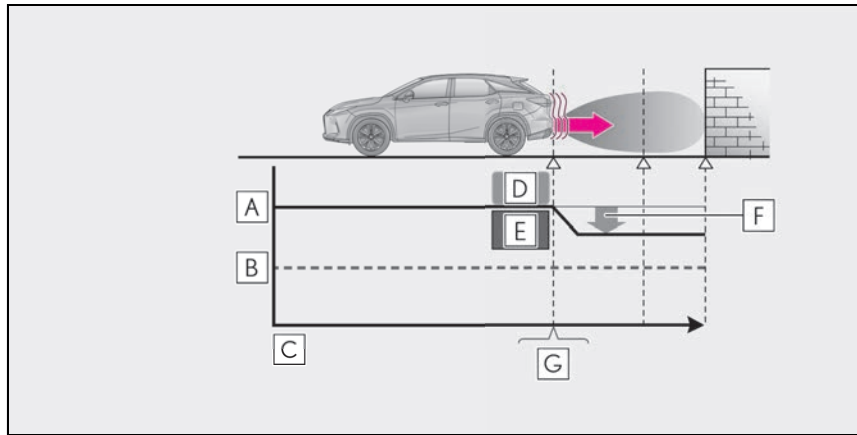


A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

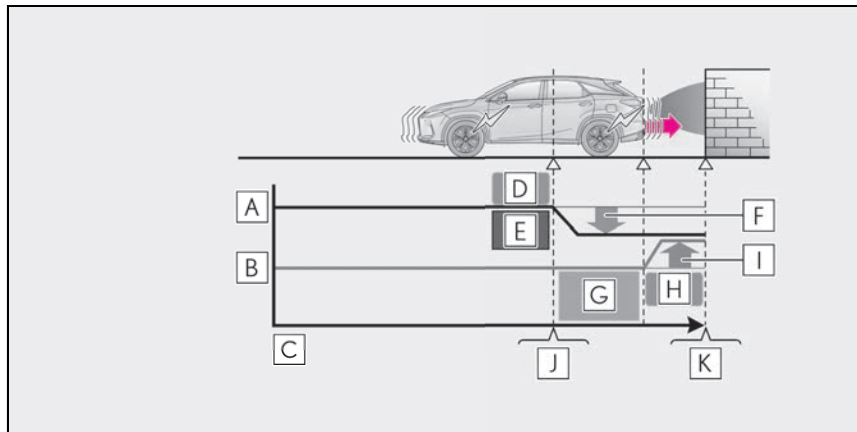
- Figure 2 When engine output restriction control operates



- A** Engine output
 - B** Braking force
 - C** Time
 - D** Engine output restriction control begins operating
 - E** System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high
 - F** Engine output reduced
 - G** Example: Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"
- Figure 3 When brake control operates

4

Driving



- A** Engine output
- B** Braking force
- C** Time

- D** Engine output restriction control begins operating
- E** System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high
- F** Engine output reduced
- G** System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is extremely high
- H** Brake control begins operating
- I** Brake control strength increased
- J** Example: Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"
- K** Example: Multi-information display: "Switch to Brake"

■ If the Parking Support Brake has operated

If the vehicle is stopped due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, the Parking Support Brake will be disabled and the PKSB OFF indicator will illuminate. If the Parking Support Brake operates unnecessarily, brake control can be canceled by depressing the brake pedal or waiting for approximately 2 seconds for it to automatically be canceled. Then, the vehicle can be operated by depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake

To re-enable the Parking Support Brake when it has been disabled due to system operation perform any of the following operations.

At this time, the PKSB OFF indicator will turn off. (→P.118)

- Turn the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) on (→P.344)
- The shift lever is in P.
- Drive with no operation targets in the traveling direction of the vehicle
- Change the traveling direction of the vehicle

■ If "Parking Support Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing

- If this message is displayed only when the

shift lever is in any position other than R, a sensor on the front or rear bumper may be dirty. Clean the sensors and their surrounding area on the bumpers.

- Initialization may not have been performed after a battery terminal was disconnected and reconnected. Initialize the system. (→P.349)

If this message continues to be displayed even after initialization, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If "Parking Assist Unavailable" and "Parking Assist Unavailable Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing

- A sensor may be covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal.

If this message is shown even after removing dirt from the sensor, or shown when the sensor was not dirty to begin with, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- A sensor may be frozen. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.
- Water may be continuously flowing over the sensor surface, such as in a heavy rain. When the system determines that it is normal, the system will return to normal.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

The system needs to be initialized. To initialize the system, drive the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more. Additionally, for vehicles with the Parking Support Brake function, turn the steering wheel fully to the left and right with the vehicle stopped.

Parking Support Brake function (static objects)*

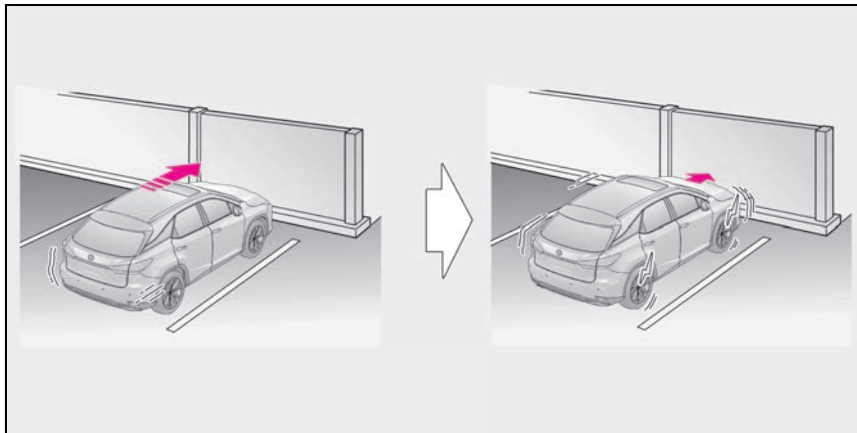
* : If equipped

If the sensors detect a static object, such as a wall, in the travelling direction of the vehicle and the system determines that a collision may occur due to the vehicle suddenly moving forward due to an accidental accelerator pedal operation, the vehicle moving the unintended direction due to the wrong shift lever position, or while parking or traveling at low speeds, the system will operate to lessen the impact with the detected static object and reduce the resulting damage.

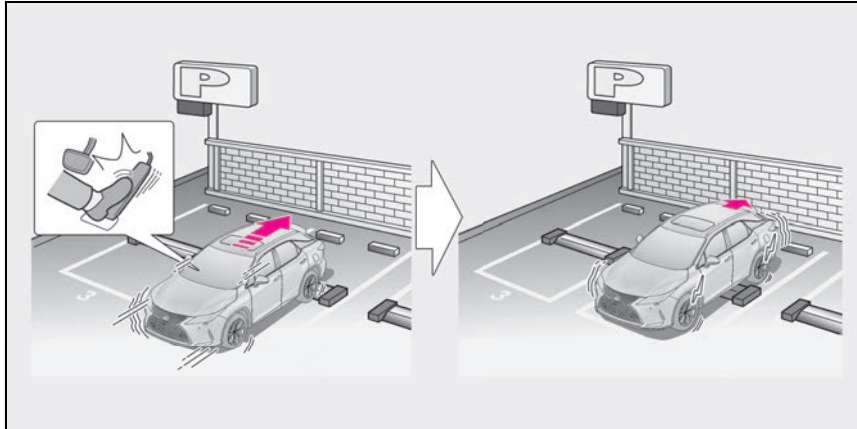
Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if an object is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

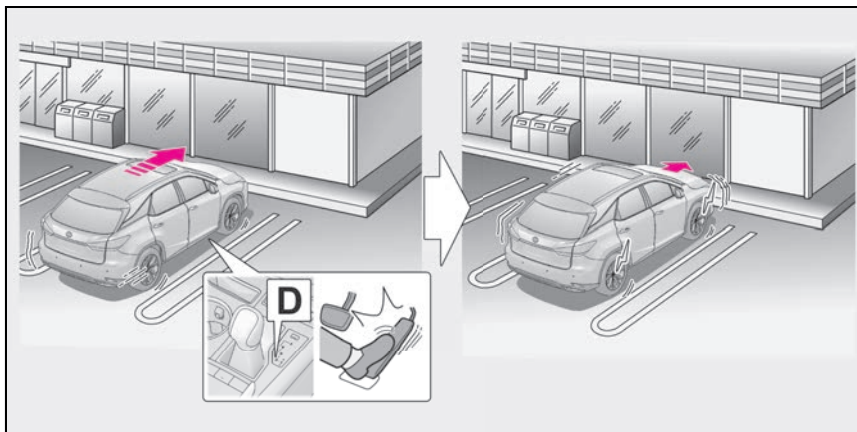
- When traveling at a low speed and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late



■ When the accelerator pedal is depressed excessively



■ When the vehicle moves in the unintended direction due to the wrong shift lever position



4

Driving

Types of sensors

→P.332

! WARNING

■ **To ensure the Parking Support Brake can operate properly**

Observe the following precautions regarding the sensors (→P.332). Failure to do so may cause a sensor to not operate properly, and may cause an accident.

- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.
- Do not replace a sensor with a part other than a genuine part.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact.
- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean.

**WARNING**

■ **Handling the suspension**

Do not modify the suspension, as changes to the height or inclination of the vehicle may prevent the sensors from detecting objects correctly or cause the system to not operate or operate unnecessarily.

■ **If the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) operates unnecessarily, such as at a railroad crossing**

In the event that the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) operates unnecessarily, such as at a railroad crossing, brake control will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds, allowing you to proceed forward and leave the area, brake control can also be canceled by depressing the brake pedal. Depressing the accelerator pedal after brake control is canceled will allow you to proceed forward and leave the area.

■ **Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.
- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

■ **When to disable the Parking Support Brake**

In the following situations, disable the Parking Support Brake as the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a chassis roller, chassis dynamo or free roller

- When loading the vehicle onto a boat, truck or other transport vessel
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When using an automatic car wash

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (static object) will operate when**

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.117, 118) and all of the following conditions are met:

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
 - The vehicle speed is 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
 - There is a static object in the traveling direction of the vehicle and 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away.
 - The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.
- Brake control
 - Engine output restriction control is operating.
 - The Parking Support Brake determines that an immediate brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (static objects) will stop operating when**

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
 - The system determines that the collision has become avoidable with normal brake operation.

- The static object is no longer 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.
- Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- The static object is no longer 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake function (static objects)

→P.348

■ Detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects)

The detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) differs from the detection range of the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.336) Therefore, even if the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object and provides a warning, the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not start operating.

■ Objects that the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not detect

The sensors may not be able to detect certain objects, such as the following:

- Pedestrian
- Cotton cloth, snow, and other materials that are poor reflectors of ultrasonic waves
- Objects which are not perpendicular to the ground, are not perpendicular to the traveling direction of the vehicle, are uneven or are waving
- Low objects
- Thin objects such as wires, fences, ropes and signposts
- Objects that are extremely close to the bumper
- Sharply-angled objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehi-

cle

■ Situation in which the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not operate

When driving with the shift lever in N.

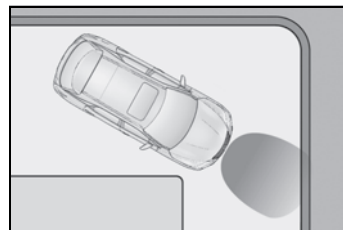
■ Lexus parking assist-sensor buzzer

Regardless of whether the Lexus parking assist-sensor buzzer is enabled or not (→P.333), if the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) is enabled (→P.344), the front or rear sensors detect an object and brake control is performed, the Lexus parking assist-sensor buzzer will sound to notify the driver of the approximate distance to the object.

■ Situations in which the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

In some situations, such as the following, the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- Vehicle surroundings
- When driving on a narrow road



- When driving on a gravel road or in an area with tall grass



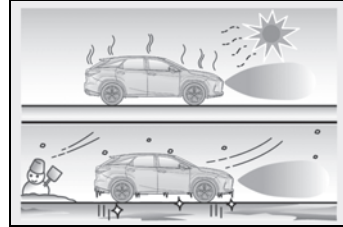
- When driving toward a banner, flag, low-hanging branch or boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings,

- toll gates and parking lots)
- When driving on a narrow path surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When parallel parking
- When there is a rut or hole in the surface of the road
- When driving on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches
- When driving on a steep slope
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road
- Weather
 - If a sensor is covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. (when cleared, the system will return to normal)
 - If heavy rain or water strikes a sensor
 - When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm
 - When strong winds are blowing
- Other ultrasonic wave sources
 - When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle
 - If a sticker or an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna is installed near a sensor
- Changes in the vehicle posture
 - If the vehicle is significantly tilted
 - If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
 - If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact

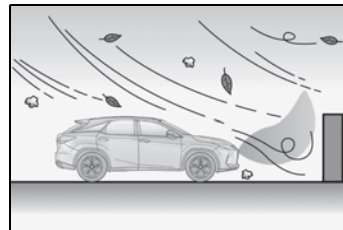
■ **Situations in which the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not operate properly**

In some situations, such as the following, this function may not operate properly.

- Weather
 - When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold



- When strong winds are blowing



- If a sensor is covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. (when cleared, the system will return to normal)
- If heavy rain or water strikes a sensor
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When the sensor is frozen (Once the sensor thaws, the system will return to normal)
- Vehicle surroundings
 - When an object that cannot be detected is between the vehicle and a detected object
 - If an object such as a vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle or pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or runs out from the side of the vehicle
 - The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
 - If objects draw too close to the sensor.
- Other ultrasonic waves sources
 - When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle
 - If a sticker or an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna is installed near a

sensor

- Changes in the vehicle posture
 - If the vehicle is significantly tilted
 - If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
 - If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact
 - When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
 - If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
 - If a sensor has been painted or covered with a sticker, etc.

Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)*

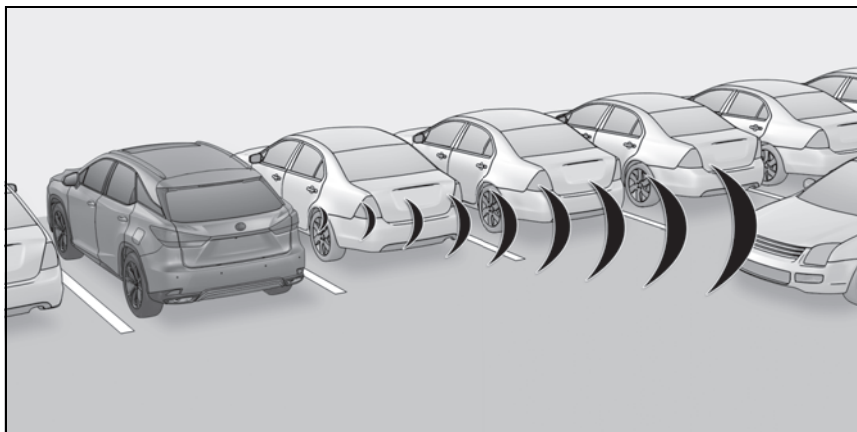
* : If equipped

If a rear radar sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, this function will perform brake control to reduce the likelihood of an impact with the approaching vehicle.

Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if a vehicle is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

- When reversing, a vehicle is approaching and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late



Types of sensors

→P.327

⚠ WARNING

- To ensure the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) can operate properly

Observe the following precautions regarding the rear radar sensors (→P.327). Failure to do so may cause a sensor to not operate properly, and may cause an accident.

- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.

**WARNING**

- Do not replace a rear radar sensor with a part other than a genuine part.
- Do not damage the rear radar sensors, and always keep the radar sensors and their surrounding area on the bumper clean.
- If the area around a rear radar sensor is subjected to an impact, the system may not operate properly due to a sensor malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Observe the rear radar sensor handling precautions. (→P.344)

■ The Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) will operate when

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.117, 118) and all of the following conditions are met:

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
 - The vehicle speed is 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- Vehicles which are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph)
- The shift lever is in R.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger than normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.
- Brake control
 - Engine output restriction control is operating.
 - The Parking Support Brake determines that an emergency brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

■ The Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) will stop operating when

The function will stop operating if any of the

following conditions are met:

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
 - The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
 - A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.
- Brake control
 - The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
 - Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
 - The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
 - A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)

→P.348

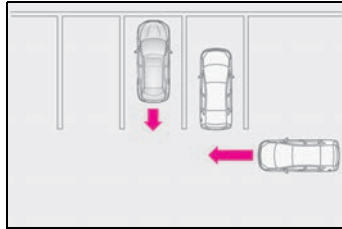
■ Detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)

The detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) differs from the detection area of the RCTA function (→P.341). Therefore, even if the RCTA function detects a vehicle and provides an alert, the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) may not start operating.

■ Conditions under which the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) will not detect a vehicle

The Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



- Vehicles which suddenly accelerate or decelerate near your vehicle
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- Objects which are extremely close to a radar sensor*
- Vehicles which are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph)
- Vehicles which are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of more than approximately 24 km/h (15 mph)

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

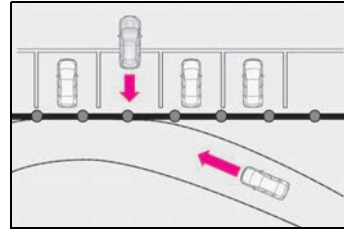
■ PKSB buzzer

If the Parking Support Brake is enabled and brake control is performed, a buzzer will sound to notify the driver.

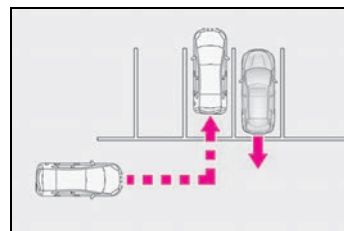
■ Situations in which the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision

In some situations such as the following, the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

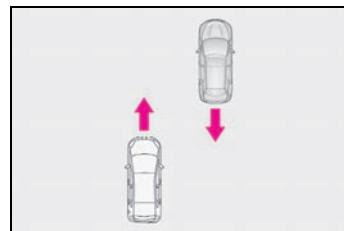
- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



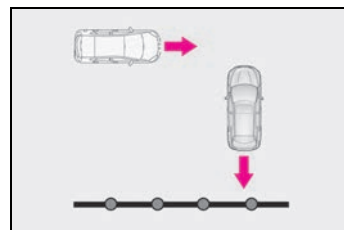
- When a detected vehicle turns while approaching the vehicle



- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle



- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short



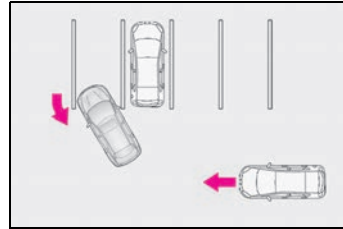
- When there are spinning objects near your vehicle such as the fan of an air conditioning unit
- When water is splashed or sprayed toward the rear bumper, such as from a

sprinkler

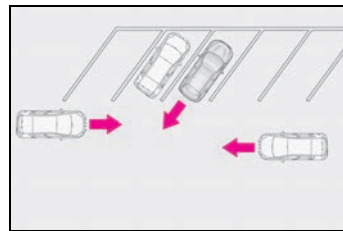
■ **Situations in which the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) may not operate properly**

In some situations, such as the following, the radar sensors may not detect an object and this function may not operate properly

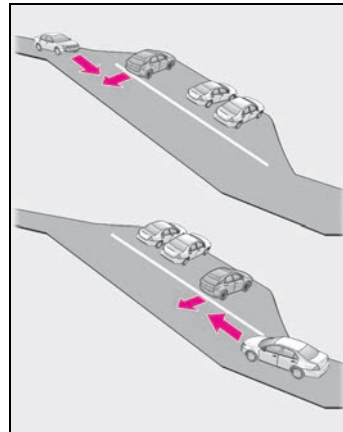
- Stationary objects
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the rear bumper is covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc.
- When it is raining heavily or water strikes the vehicle
- If the vehicle is significantly tilted
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eye-let, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- If an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna is installed near a radar sensor
- If the orientation of a radar sensor has been changed
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- If a vehicle is approaching the rear of your vehicle rapidly
- Situations in which the radar sensor may not detect a vehicle
 - When a vehicle approaches from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle while you are turning while backing up
 - When turning while backing up



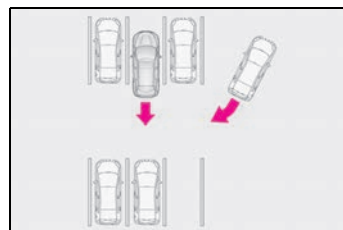
- When backing out of a shallow angle parking spot



- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



- When a vehicle turns into the detection area



4

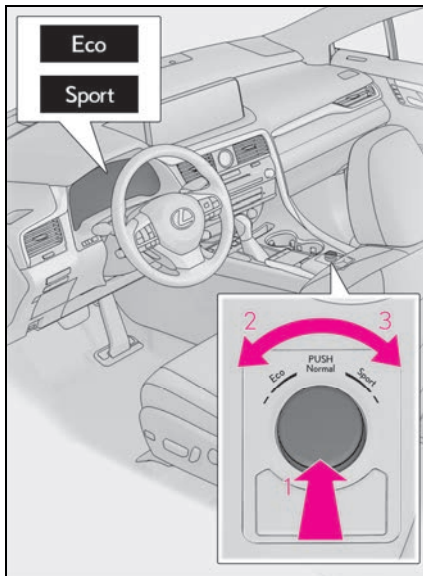
Driving

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving conditions.

Selecting a drive mode

- Vehicles without AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)



1 Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when Eco drive mode or sport mode is selected.

2 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heat-

ing/cooling).

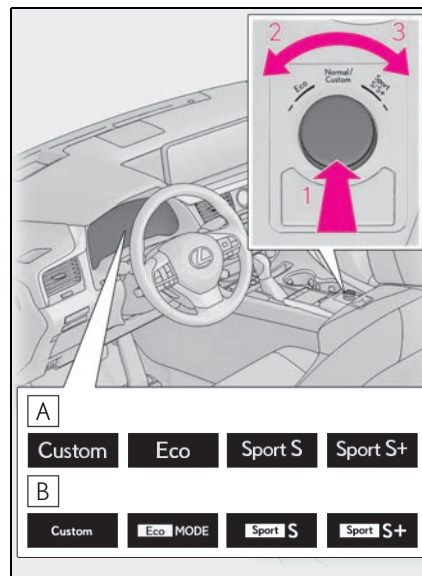
When not in Eco drive mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the Eco drive mode indicator will come on.

3 Sport mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode also changes the steering feel, making it suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in sport mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "Sport" indicator will come on.

- Vehicles with AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)



A Except F SPORT models

B F SPORT models

1 Normal mode/Custom mode

Normal mode and custom mode are selected by pressing the driving mode select switch. Each time the switch is

pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and custom mode. When custom mode is selected, the "Custom" indicator will be illuminated.

When Eco drive mode or sport mode is selected, pressing the switch changes the driving mode to normal mode.

- Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

- Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the following functions set to your preferred settings. Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of the Center Display. (→P.559)

Function	Setting
Powertrain	Normal
	Power
	Eco
Chassis	Normal
	Sport
Air conditioning system	Normal
	Eco

2 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When not in Eco drive mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the Eco drive mode indicator will come on.

3 Sport mode

- Sport S mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in Sport S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "Sport S" indicator will come on.

- Sport S+ mode

Helps to ensure steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the transmission and engine. Suitable for sportier driving.

When in Sport S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "Sport S+" indicator will come on.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ Automatic deactivation of sport mode and custom mode

If the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode or custom mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

■ Driving mode pop-up display (12.3-inch display only)

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the side display. (→P.380)

All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)

All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.

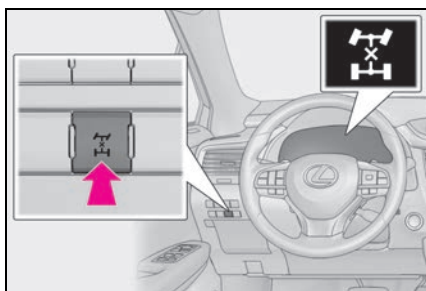
Using All-wheel drive lock mode

Press the switch.

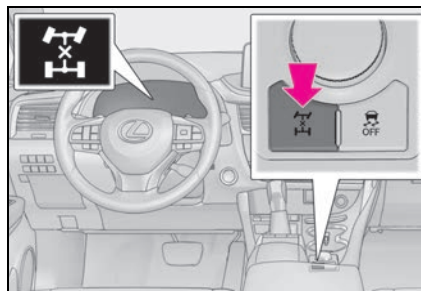
The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the Dynamic Torque Control AWD system to normal mode. (→P.364)

► RX300



► RX350/RX350L



■ All-wheel drive lock mode can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Automatic release for the all-wheel drive lock mode

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.
- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system*

* : If equipped

The GPF system collects particulate matter in the exhaust gas by using an exhaust gas filter. The system will operate to regenerate the filter automatically, depending on the vehicle conditions.

■ If “Exhaust Filter Full See Owner’s Manual” is shown on the multi-information display

- The message may be displayed while high load driving with particulate matter accumulating.
- Engine output is restricted while the message is displayed, however, it is possible to drive the vehicle unless the malfunction indicator lamp comes on.
- Particulate matter can accumulate more quickly if the vehicle is frequently driven short trips or at low speeds, or if the engine is regularly started in an extremely cold environment. Excessive accumulation of particulate matter can be prevented by periodically driving long distances continuously with intermittent releasing of the accelerator pedal, such as when driving on highways and freeways.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on or “Engine Maintenance Required Visit Your Dealer” is shown on the multi-information display

The amount of accumulated particulate matter has exceeded a certain level. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.



NOTICE

- To prevent the GPF system from not operating properly
- Do not use fuel other than the specified type
- Do not modify the exhaust pipes

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.

Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

■ Trailer Sway Control (if equipped)

Helps the driver to control trailer sway

by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing driving torque when trailer sway is detected.

■ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ Active Cornering Assist (ACA)

Helps to prevent the vehicle from drifting to the outer side by performing inner wheel brake control when attempting to accelerate while turning

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ Dynamic Torque Control AWD system (AWD models)

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to all-wheel drive (AWD) according to the driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow, rain, etc.

■ AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) (if equipped)

Controls the damping force of the shock absorber of each wheel according to the road and driving conditions, helping achieve a comfortable ride, excellent driveability and a high level of stability.

If Sport S+ mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, the damping force will become more suitable for sporty driving. (→P.360)

■ VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) (if equipped)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output and steering assist.

■ Emergency brake signal (if equipped)

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

■ The Secondary Collision Brake

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automatically controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision.

■ When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.



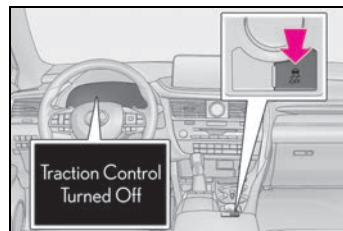
■ Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing the  switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the  switch.

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the  switch again to turn the system back on.



■ Turning off both TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems

To turn the TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems off, press and hold the  switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on

and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press the  switch again to turn the system back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Collision System), PCS will also be disabled (only Pre-Collision warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.270)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the  switch has not been pressed**

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline)
- The vehicle is stopped
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed
- The parking brake is not engaged

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted to P or N
- The accelerator pedal is depressed
- The parking brake is engaged
- 2 seconds at maximum elapsed after the brake pedal is released

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, Trailer Sway Control, TRC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine

compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **Active Cornering Assist operation sounds and vibrations**

When the Active Cornering Assist is operated, operation sounds and vibrations may be generated from the brake system, but this is not a malfunction.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed

increases

If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ Operating conditions of Active Cornering Assist

The system operates when the following occurs.

- TRC/VSC can operate
- The driver is attempting to accelerate while turning
- The system detects that the vehicle is drifting to the outer side
- The brake pedal is released

■ Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph)
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation

■ Automatic system cancellation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is not a sudden braking operation

■ Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion.

However, the system does not operate in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph)
- Components are damaged

■ Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed drops below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph)
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount



WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC/VSC system is operating. Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

**WARNING**

■ **Active Cornering Assist does not operate effectively when**

- Do not overly rely on Active Cornering Assist. Active Cornering Assist may not operate effectively when accelerating down slopes or driving on slippery road surfaces.
- When Active Cornering Assist frequently operates, Active Cornering Assist may temporarily stop operating to ensure proper operation of the brakes, TRC and VSC.

■ **Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when**

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ **When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ **When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off**

- Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off unless necessary.

- Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC is turned off or experiences a malfunction.

■ **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ **Handling of tires and the suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

■ **Trailer Sway Control precaution**

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

■ **If trailer sway occurs**

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead. Do not try to control trailer sway by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed. Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

**WARNING**

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P.224)

■ Secondary Collision Brake

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

Ensure that all tires are of the specified size and the same brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.

- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) system. (if equipped)
- Do not use the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. (if equipped)



NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from your Lexus dealer or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the

driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

- Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels. Failure to do so may be dangerous

because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P.239)

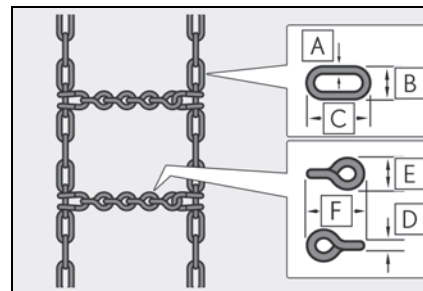
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

*: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



A Side chain (3 mm [0.12 in.] in diameter)

B Side chain (10.8 mm [0.43 in.] in width)

C Side chain (25 mm [0.98 in.] in

length)

D Cross chain (3.9 mm [0.15 in.] in diameter)

E Cross chain (13.8 mm [0.54 in.] in width)

F Cross chain (25.3 mm [1.00 in.] in length)

tions are expected, change the rest position of the windshield wipers from the retracted position below the hood to the service position using the wiper lever. (→P.258)

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only.
Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5—1.0 km (1/4—1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.



NOTICE

■ Fitting tire chains (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Windshield wipers

To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when heavy snow or icy condi-

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO₂ emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.360)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.128)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your

stopping position. Release the accelerator pedal early and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the air conditioning system on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the air conditioning system off. Using the air conditioning system when unnecessary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
 - Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.
 - Using the Stop & Start system (if equipped) will help improve fuel economy. (→P.314)
 - RX300: Idling before stopping the engine (→P.217) is performed in order to maintain vehicle functions and is not considered unnecessary idling.
- inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.
- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.440)

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire

Utility vehicle precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity.

Utility vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause the vehicle to rollover.

**WARNING**

■ **Utility vehicle precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

Your vehicle is not designed to be driven off-road. However, in the event that off-road driving cannot be avoided, please observe the following precautions to help avoid the areas prohibited to vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get

owner's permission before entering private property.

- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.

- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.



NOTICE

■ To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differential, transmission and transfer (AWD models only) case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

5-1. Remote Touch/Display	
Remote Touch.....	378
Center Display.....	380
5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge	
Lexus Climate Concierge.....	383
5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger	
Front automatic air conditioning system	384
Rear automatic air conditioning system	396
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators.....	399
5-4. Using the interior lights	
Interior lights list.....	402
5-5. Using the storage features	
List of storage features	405
Luggage compartment features	411
5-6. Using the other interior features	
Other interior features	416
Garage door opener.....	425

Remote Touch

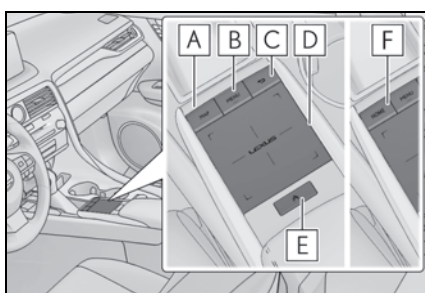
The Remote Touch can be used to operate the Center Display.

For details on the Remote touch, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

Remote Touch operation

■ Switches



A Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: "MAP" button

Vehicles with navigation function:
Press this button to display the vehicle's current position.

Vehicles without navigation function:
Press this button to display the compass mode screen.

B "MENU" button

Press this button to display the menu screen.

C Back button

Press this button to display the previous screen.

D Touchpad

Slide your finger on the touchpad and move the pointer to select a function, letter and screen button.

Press the touchpad to enter the selected function, letter or screen button. Certain finger movements on the touchpad can perform functions, such as changing map scalings and scrolling list screens.

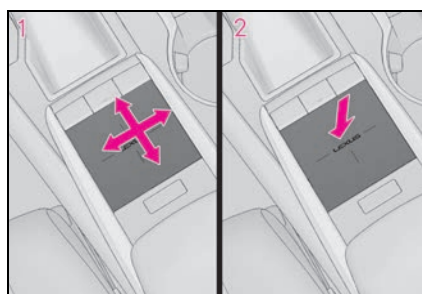
E Sub function button

When  is displayed on the screen, a function screen assigned to the screen can be displayed.

F Vehicles with a 8-inch display: "HOME" button

Press this button to display the compass mode screen.

■ Using the touchpad



1 Select: Touch the touchpad to select the desired button on the screen.

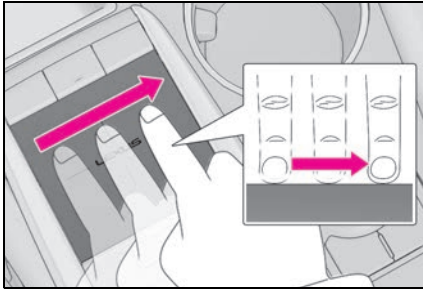
2 Enter: Buttons on the screen can be selected by either depressing or double tapping the touchpad. Once a button has been selected, the screen will change.

■ Touch operation

Operations are performed by touching the touchpad with your finger.

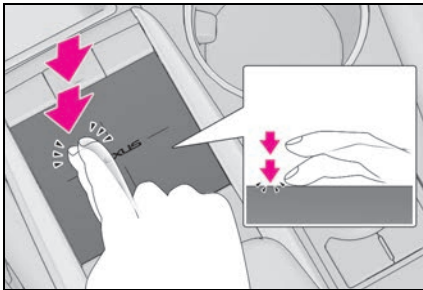
● Trace

Trace the pad surface while maintaining contact with the touchpad. Moving the cursor and the pointer.



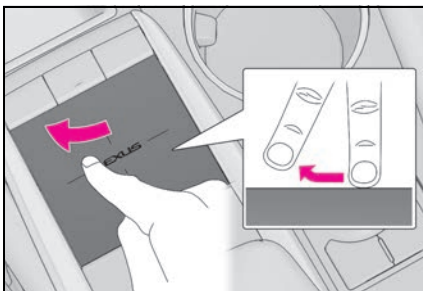
● Double tap

Tap the touchpad twice, quickly. Select the button on the screen.



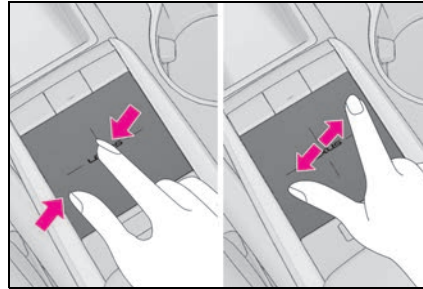
● Flick

Quick and short movement along the touchpad with your finger. Move the list screen.



● Pinch in/Pinch out

Slide fingers toward each other or apart on the touchpad. Change the scale of the map.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the Remote Touch.

- Do not allow food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes to contact the Remote Touch.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact.
- Do not push the touchpad with a strong force or use a sharp pointed object to operate the pad.

Center Display

Center Display overview

■ Menu screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the menu screen.

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.

For details, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

The displays shown in the illustrations are used for example only and may differ from the actual vehicle.

► Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display



► Vehicles with a 8-inch display



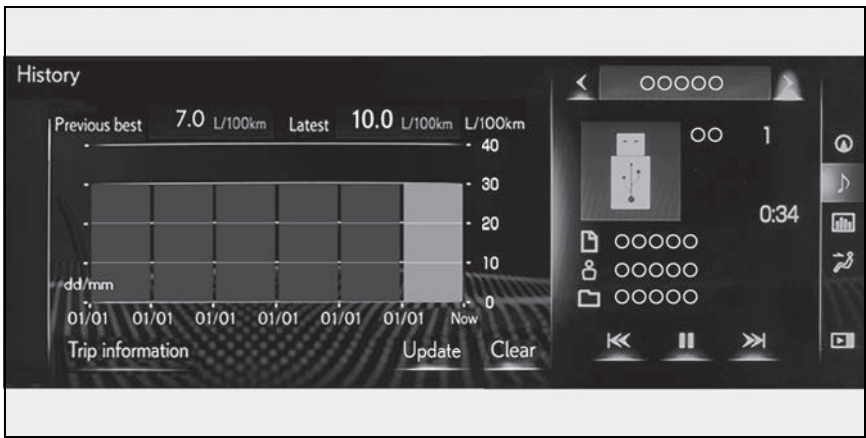
Switch	Function
	Select to display the "Destination" screen. ^{*1, 2}
	Select to display the audio control screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the hands-free control screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the "Apps" screen. ^{*1, 2}
	Select to display the home screen of Apple CarPlay. ^{*1, 2}
	Select to display the home screen of Android Auto. ^{*1, 2}
	Select to display the information screen. ^{*1} (→P.138)
	Select to display the setup screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.384)
	Select to adjust the contrast and brightness of the screens, turn the screen off, etc. ^{*1, 2}

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: This function is not made available in some models or areas.

■ **Split-screen display (vehicles with a 12.3-inch display)**

Different information can be displayed on the left and right sides of the screen. For example, air conditioning system screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed. The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.



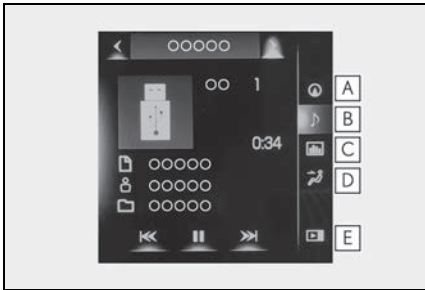
■ **Main display (vehicles with a 12.3-inch display)**

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual” or “Multimedia Owner’s Manual”.

■ **Side display (vehicles with a 12.3-inch display)**

The following functions can be displayed and operated on the side display.

Select **<** or **>** to display the desired screen.



- A** Navigation system *
- B** Audio *
- C** Vehicle information (→P.140)
- D** Air conditioning system (→P.384)
- E** Show/hide the side display *

* : Refer to “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual” or “Multimedia Owner’s Manual”.

■ **Screen display during low temperatures**

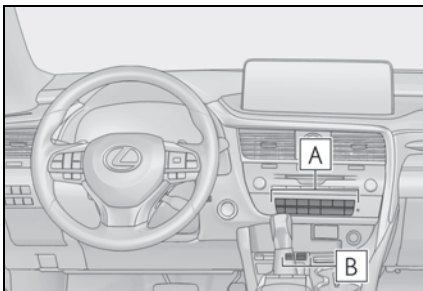
When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

Lexus Climate Concierge^{*}

^{*}: If equipped

The climate control seats are automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge



A Front automatic air conditioning system (→P.384)

Set the air conditioning system to automatic mode.

The temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat can be adjusted individually.

B Seat heaters and ventilators (→P.399)

Select "AUTO" mode on each seat.

Seat heater or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

Front automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select  to display the air conditioning control screen.

Vehicles with a 12.3-inch display: The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display.

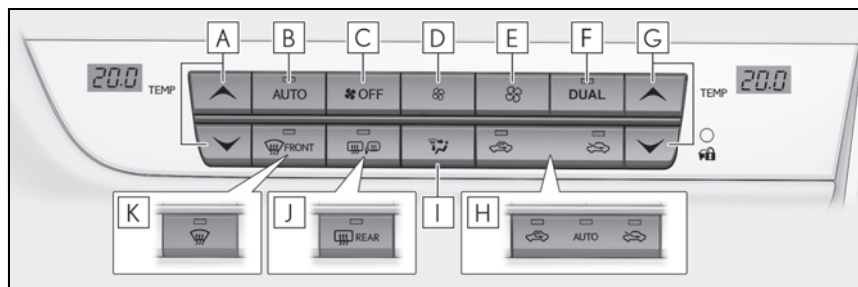
The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

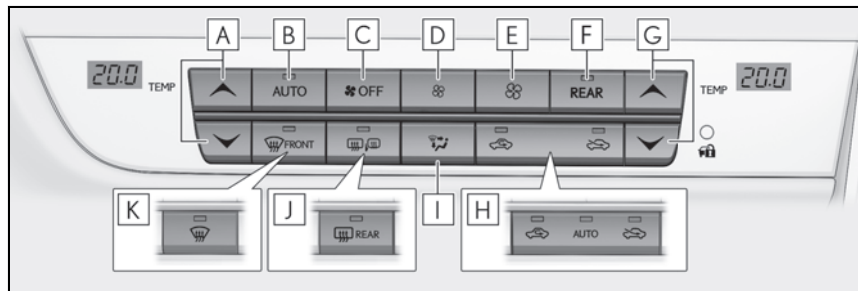
Air conditioning controls

► RX300/RX350



- A** Left-hand side temperature control switch
- B** Automatic mode switch
- C** Off switch
- D** Fan speed decreases switch
- E** Fan speed increases switch
- F** DUAL switch
- G** Right-hand side temperature control switch
- H** Outside/recirculated air mode switch
- I** Air flow mode switch

- J** Rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch (if equipped)
- K** Windshield defogger switch
- RX350L



- A** Left-hand side temperature control switch
- B** Automatic mode switch
- C** Off switch
- D** Fan speed decreases switch
- E** Fan speed increases switch
- F** REAR switch
- G** Right-hand side temperature control switch
- H** Outside/recirculated air mode switch
- I** Air flow mode switch
- J** Rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch (if equipped)
- K** Windshield defogger switch

■ Adjusting the temperature

Press to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature.

■ Setting the fan speed

Operate the switch to increase the fan speed and the switch to decrease the fan speed.

Press the off switch to turn the fan off.

■ Changing the air flow mode

→P.387

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

► Type A

Press .

The mode switches between .

(recirculated air mode) and  (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

► Type B

Press .

The mode switches between  (recirculated air mode), automatic and  (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped)

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ Blower customization (if equipped)

→P.391

■ Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

→P.391

■ Fogging up of the windows

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Selecting "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ When driving on dusty roads

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys (vehicles with driving position memory)

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic

key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock a passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed.* For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

* : The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.360)

■ When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

■ Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
 - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
 - The start timing of the blower may be

delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode or pollen removal mode.

■ Using the voice command system

Air conditioning system can be operated using voice commands. For details, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Air conditioning filter

→P.478

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)



WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

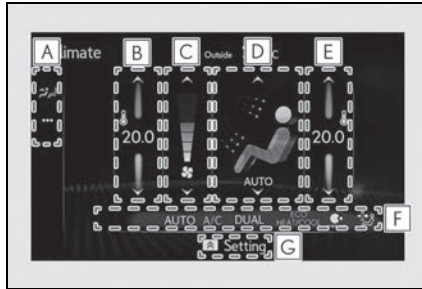
Air conditioning control screen

■ Main control screen

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen.

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.

- Vehicles with DUAL-ZONE climate control



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the main screen.



: Display the air conditioning control screen



: Display the option control screen

B Adjust the left side seat temperature setting

C Adjust the fan speed setting

D Select the air flow mode



: Air flows to the upper body



: Air flows to the upper body and feet



: Air flows to the feet



: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

E Adjust the right side seat temperature setting

F Function on/off indicators

When the function is on, the indicator illu-

minates on the control screen.

G Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.

"AUTO": Set automatic mode on/off (→P.392)

"Off": Turn the fan off

"A/C": Set cooling and dehumidification function

If the "A/C" display is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

"DUAL": Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.394)

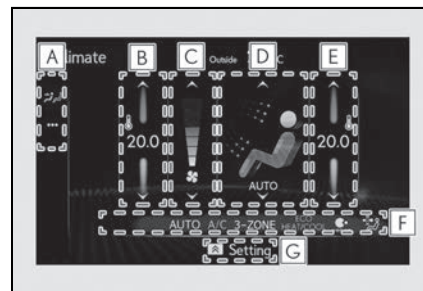


: Changing the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation (Blower customization) (if equipped)



: Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)

- Vehicles with 3-ZONE climate control



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the main screen.



: Display the air conditioning control screen

⋮ : Display the option control screen

B Adjust the left side seat temperature setting

C Adjust the fan speed setting

D Select the air flow mode



: Air flows to the upper body



: Air flows to the upper body and feet



: Air flows to the feet



: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

E Adjust the right side seat temperature setting

F Function on/off indicators

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

G Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.

"AUTO": Set automatic mode on/off (→P.392)

"Off": Turn the fan off

"A/C": Set cooling and dehumidification function

If the "A/C" display is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

"3-ZONE": Adjust the temperature for the driver, front passenger and rear passenger seats separately ("3-ZONE" mode) (→P.394)



: Changing the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation

(Blower customization) (if equipped)

ECO HEAT/COOL: Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)

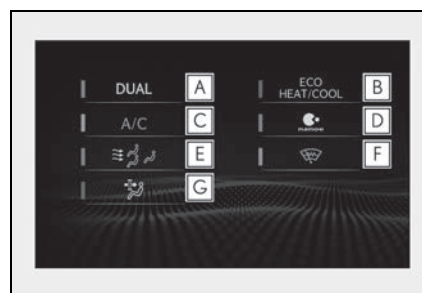
■ Option control screen

Select ⋮ on the sub menu to display the option control screen.

The functions can be switched on and off.

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the screen.

► Vehicles with DUAL-ZONE climate control



A Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.394)

B Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

C Cooling and dehumidification function

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

D nanoe™ system on/off (if equipped)

E Select S-FLOW mode (→P.392)

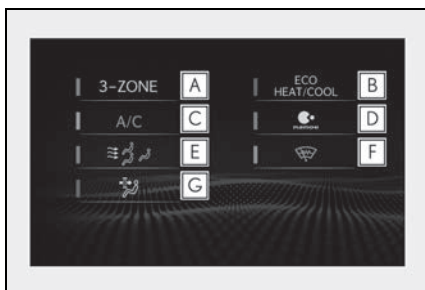
F Prevent ice from building up on the

windshield and wiper blades (Windshield wiper de-icer) (if equipped)

- G** Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

* : nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

- Vehicles with 3-ZONE climate control



- A** Adjust the temperature for driver, passenger and rear seats separately ("3-ZONE" mode) (→P.394)

- B** Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

- C** Cooling and dehumidification function

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

- D** nanoe™* system on/off (if equipped)

- E** Select S-FLOW mode (→P.392)

- F** Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (Windshield wiper de-icer) (if

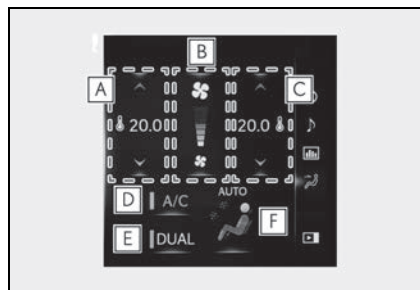
equipped)

- G** Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

* : nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

■ Side display

- Vehicles with DUAL-ZONE climate control



- A** Adjust the left side seat temperature setting

- B** Adjust the fan speed setting

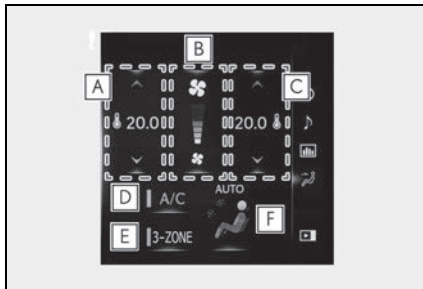
- C** Adjust the right side seat temperature setting

- D** Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

- E** Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.394)

- F** Select the air flow mode

- Vehicles with 3-ZONE climate control



- A** Adjust the left side seat temperature setting
- B** Adjust the fan speed setting
- C** Adjust the right side seat temperature setting
- D** Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off
- E** Adjust the temperature for driver, passenger and rear seats separately ("3-ZONE" mode) (→P.394)
- F** Select the air flow mode

■ Blower customization (if equipped)

Fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation can be customized.

Each time  is selected, the fan speed setting mode changes as follows.

"NORMAL" → "ECO" → "FAST" → "NORMAL"

■ Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

The windshield de-icer will automatically turn off after a while.

■ Pollen removal mode

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will automatically turn off after a while.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate or the outside/recirculated air mode may not switch to  (recirculated air) mode.

Pollen is filtered even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ nanoe™ system (if equipped)

The air conditioning system adopts nanoe™ technology. This helps to fill the cabin with refreshing air by emitting slightly acidic nanoe™ ions coated with water particles through the window side air outlet of the driver's seat*.

- When the fan is turned on and nanoe™ on the option control screen is selected, the nanoe™ system is activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, performance will be limited.

- The ,  or  air outlets are being used.
- The window side air outlet of the driver's seat is open.

- When nanoe™ is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.

- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

* According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ system may not operate at full capacity.

**WARNING****■ To prevent burns (vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer)**

Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

■ nanoe™ generator (if equipped)

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

**NOTICE****■ To prevent damage to the nanoe™ (if equipped)**

Do not insert anything into the driver's side vent, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the driver's side vent. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

Using automatic mode

- 1** Press the automatic mode switch or select "AUTO" on the sub function menu. (→P.387)
- 2** Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch to switch to automatic air intake mode. (if equipped)

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

- 3** Adjust the temperature setting.
- 4** To stop the operation, press the off switch or select "Off" on the sub function menu. (→P.387)

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is main-

tained.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the automatic mode switch is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.

■ Automatic mode for air intake control (if equipped)

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

S-FLOW mode

In S-FLOW mode, priority for the airflow is given to the front seats, reducing the airflow and air conditioning effect on the rear seats. When in S-FLOW mode, airflow from the rear air conditioning system is stopped. (RX350L)

Operation in S-FLOW mode differs according to the following conditions:

- Priority is given to the driver's seat only when:
 - Manual S-FLOW mode: When no passenger is judged to be in the front passenger seat.
 - Automatic S-FLOW mode: When no passengers are judged to be in the front passenger seat or rear seats.

- Priority is given to the front seats when: Manual S-FLOW mode is selected or no passengers are judged to be in the rear seats when in automatic S-FLOW mode.
- S-FLOW mode will be disabled when: A passenger is judged to be in a rear seat when in automatic S-FLOW mode.

Depending on the set temperature, operation in S-FLOW mode may not change as described above.

When certain conditions are met and priority is given to the driver's seat only, the temperature indicator for the front passenger side will turn off.

How the system judges if a passenger is in the vehicle: →P.393

The following S-FLOW modes are available:

► Automatic S-FLOW mode

In this mode, when a passenger is judged to be in a rear seat, S-FLOW mode will be automatically disabled. (→P.393)

The indicator will illuminate on the air conditioning control screen when S-FLOW mode is enabled.

To enable/disable S-FLOW mode and enter manual S-FLOW mode, select the S-FLOW mode switch.

How the system judges if a passenger is in the vehicle: →P.393

► Manual S-FLOW mode

When the S-FLOW mode switch is selected, S-FLOW mode will be manually enabled/ disabled.

The indicator will illuminate on the air conditioning control screen when S-FLOW mode is enabled.

In manual S-FLOW mode, as the system does not judge if a passenger is in a rear seat.

To disable S-FLOW mode automatically by opening and closing a rear door or operating the rear air conditioning system (RX350L), change to automatic S-FLOW mode. (→P.393)

■ How the system judges if a passenger is in the vehicle when in S-FLOW mode

In S-FLOW mode, the system judges if a passenger is in the vehicle as follows:

- Front passenger seat: A passenger is judged to be in the front passenger seat when the system detects an object on the front passenger seat, fastening of the front passenger seat belt, changing of the set temperature for the front passenger seat or the opening and closing of the front passenger door. (However, when only opening and closing of the front passenger door is detected, the system will judge that a passenger is not in the front passenger seat after the vehicle speed reaches approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or more.)
- Rear seats (automatic S-FLOW mode only): A passenger is judged to be in a rear seat when the system detects the opening and closing of a rear door or the operation of the rear air conditioning system (RX350L).

If a passenger is judged to be in the vehicle, the system will retain the judgement for a certain amount of time after the engine switch is turned off.

■ Operation of automatic S-FLOW mode

When the system is operating in automatic S-FLOW mode, if the system detects the opening and closing of a rear door or the operation of the rear air conditioning system (RX350L), S-FLOW mode will be disabled. To enable S-FLOW mode, select the

S-FLOW mode switch. (In this case, the system will operate in manual S-FLOW mode.)

■ Changing from manual S-FLOW mode to automatic S-FLOW mode

- 1 Select the S-FLOW mode switch to disable S-FLOW mode.
- 2 Turn the engine switch off.
- 3 After 60 minutes have elapsed, change the engine switch to ON mode.

Adjusting the temperature for the driver and passenger seats separately

- Vehicles with DUAL-ZONE climate control

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

- Select "DUAL" on the sub function menu. (→P.387)
- Select "DUAL" on the option control screen.
- Adjust the passenger's side temperature setting.

The indicator on the main control screen comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

- Vehicles with 3-ZONE climate control

To turn on the "3-ZONE" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

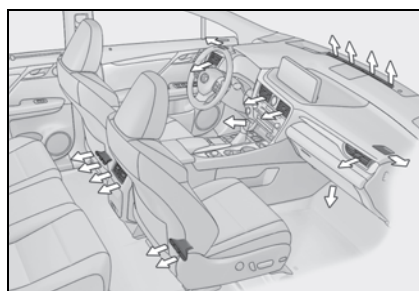
- Select "3-ZONE" on the sub function menu. (→P.387)
- Select "3-ZONE" on the option control screen.
- Adjust a passenger seat temperature setting.

The indicator on the main control screen comes on when the "3-ZONE" mode is on.

Air outlet layout and operations

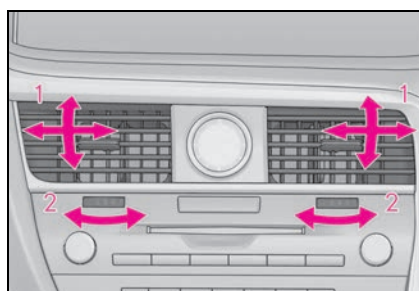
■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.



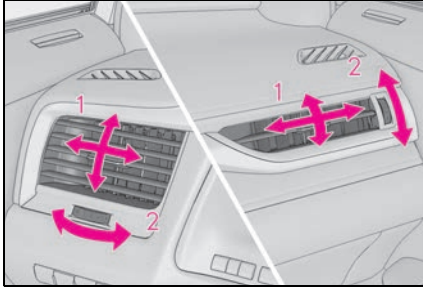
■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

- Front center



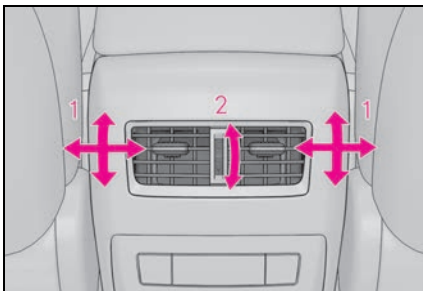
- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

► Front side



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent

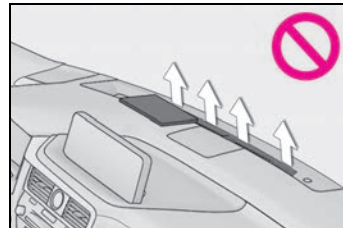
► Rear



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent

! WARNING**■ To prevent the windshield defogger from operating improperly**

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



Rear automatic air conditioning system (RX350L)

The air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

The rear air conditioning system can be operated using the Center Display and rear air conditioning system control panel.

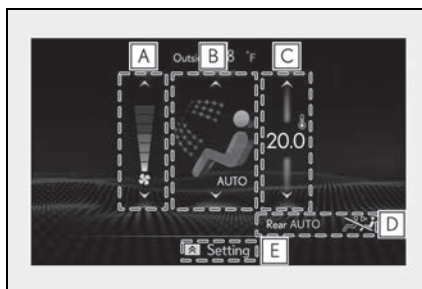
Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the main menu and move the cursor to  to display the climate control shortcut buttons. Then, select  to display the rear air conditioning control screen.

Rear air conditioning control operation

■ Center Display

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen.

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.



A Adjust the rear seats fan speed set-

ting

B Select the rear seats air flow mode



: Air flows to the upper body



: Air flows to the upper body and feet



: Air flows to the feet

C Adjust the rear seats temperature setting

D Function on/off indicators

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

E Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.

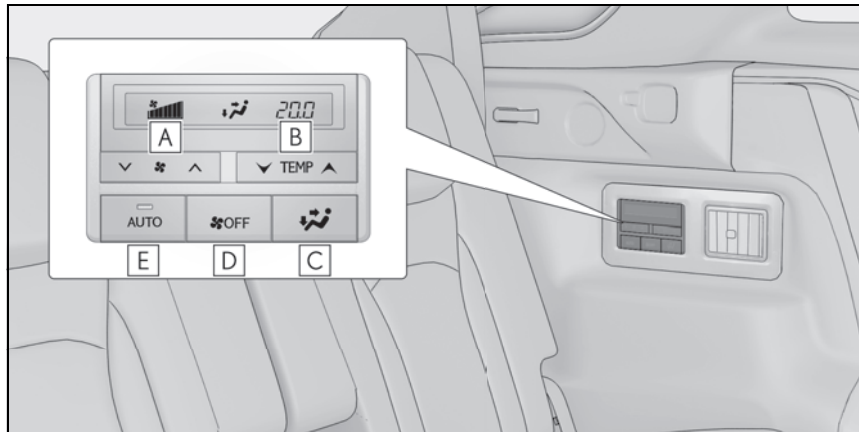
"Rear off": Turn the rear seats fan off

"Rear AUTO": Set the rear seats automatic mode on/off (→P.397)



: Disables operation of the rear air conditioning system using the Rear air conditioning system control panel

■ Rear air conditioning system control panel



A Adjust the rear seats fan speed setting

Press to increase the fan speed and to decrease the fan speed.

Press the OFF switch to turn the fan off.

B Adjust the rear seats temperature setting

Press to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature.

C Select the air flow mode

D OFF switch

E AUTO button

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

Using automatic mode

► Center Display

- 1 Select "Rear AUTO" on the sub function menu. (→P.396)
- 2 To stop the operation, select "Rear off" on the sub function menu. (→P.396)

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However,

automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

► Rear air conditioning system control panel

- 1 Press "AUTO" on the rear air conditioning system control panel.
- 2 To stop the operation, select "OFF" on the rear air conditioning system control panel.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic

mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after "Rear AUTO" is selected or "AUTO" is touched.

Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.

Adjusting the temperature setting of the rear seats

The temperature setting of the rear seats can be adjusted using the following methods:

- When the "3-ZONE" indicator is off: Adjust the driver's seat temperature.

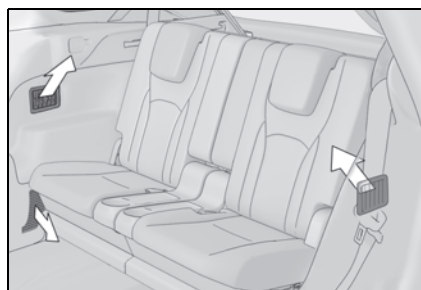
Adjust the temperature setting of each rear seat using the Center Display or rear air conditioning system control panel.

- Adjust the temperature setting of rear seats using the Center Display (rear air conditioning control screen) or rear air conditioning system control panel.

Air outlets

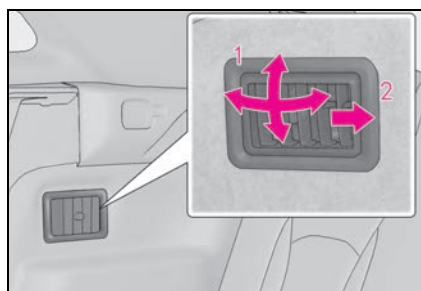
■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.



■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob fully to the back of the vehicle to close the vent



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel* /seat heaters* /seat ventilators*

*: If equipped

● Heated steering wheel

Warms up the grip of the steering wheel

● Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

● Seat ventilators

Maintain good ventilation using a fan built into the seat

! WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

! NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

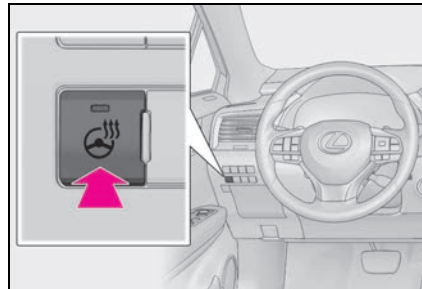
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel

Turns the heated steering wheel on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heated steering wheel is operating.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Timer function

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Seat heaters

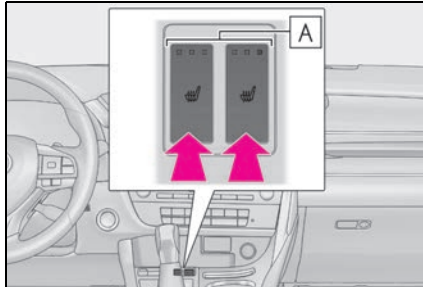
■ Front seats

► Vehicles without seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

The level indicator (amber) **A** lights up during operation.

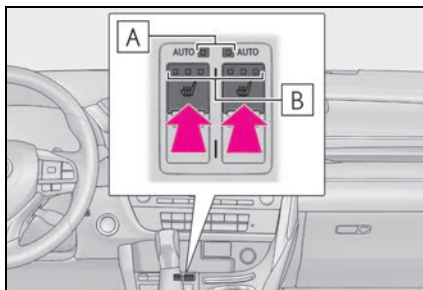


► Vehicles with seat ventilators

When any switch is pressed, the system is set to automatic mode and the "AUTO" indicator (green) **A** lights up. Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

The level indicator (amber) **B** lights up during operation.



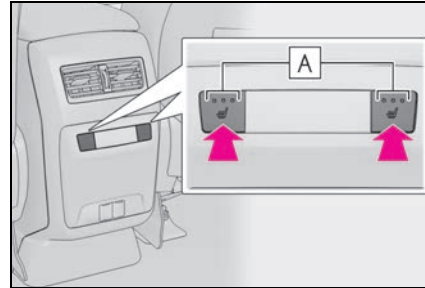
■ Second-row seats

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

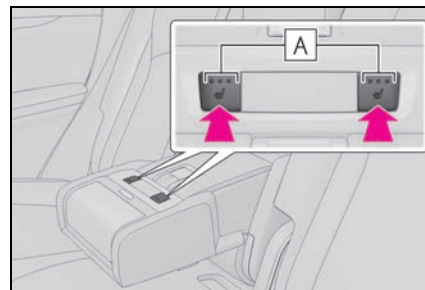
Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

The level indicator (amber) **A** lights up during operation.

► Type A



► Type B



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.559)

! WARNING

■ To prevent overheating and minor burn injuries

Observe the following precautions when using the seat heaters.

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

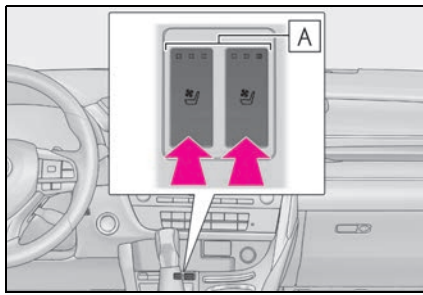
Seat ventilators (front seats)

► Vehicles without seat heaters

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

The level indicator (green) **A** lights up during operation.



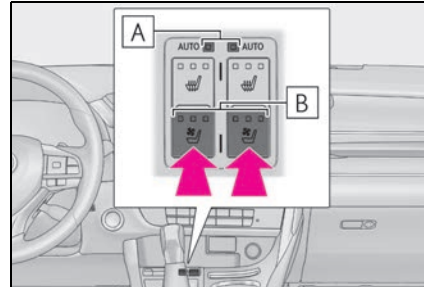
► Vehicles with seat heaters

When any switch is pressed, the system is set to automatic mode and the "AUTO" indicator (green) **A** lights up.

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit)→Mid (2 segments lit)→Lo (1 segment lit)→Off

The level indicator (green) **B** lights up during operation.



■ Operation condition

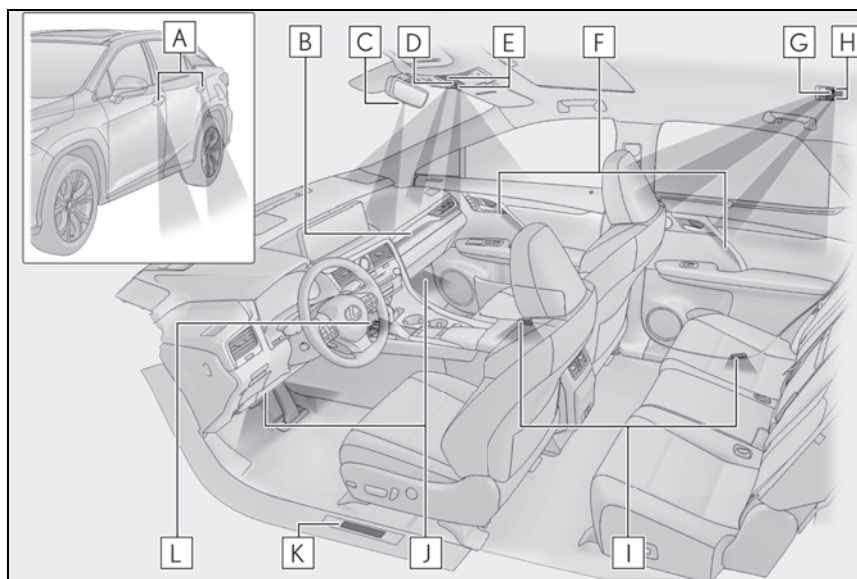
The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights

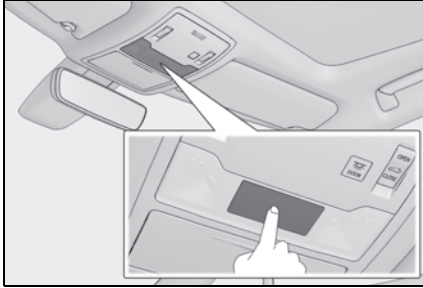


- A** Outer foot lights
- B** Instrument panel ornament light (if equipped)
- C** Shift lever light (if equipped)
- D** Front interior light (→P.403)
- E** Front personal lights (→P.403)
- F** Door trim ornament lights (if equipped)
- G** Rear interior light (→P.403)
- H** Rear personal lights (→P.403)
- I** Door courtesy lights
- J** Footwell lights
- K** Scuff lights (if equipped)
- L** Front center console light

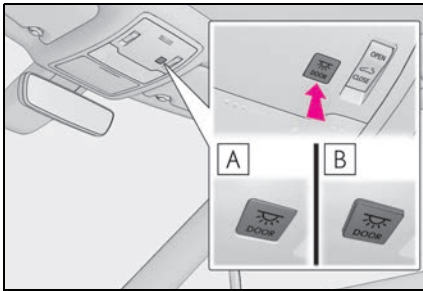
Operating the interior lights

■ Front interior light

Turns the lights on/off (touch the light)



Turns the door position on/off



A On

B Off

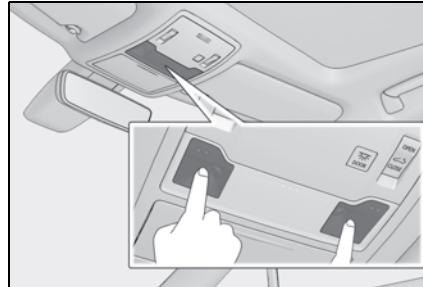
■ Rear interior light

The rear interior light turns on/off together with the front interior light.

Operating the personal lights

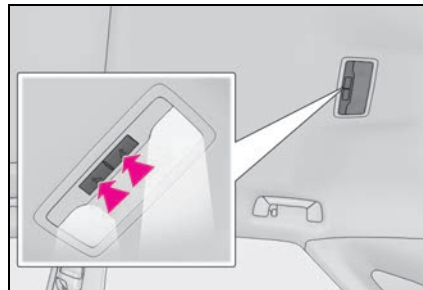
■ Front personal lights

Turns the lights on/off (touch the lights)



■ Rear personal lights

Turns the lights on/off



■ Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ When front interior light or front personal lights do not respond as normal

In the following cases, the interior lights and front personal lights may not respond as normal.

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

■ **The interior lights may turn on automatically when**

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the interior lights will turn on automatically.

The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured.

(The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)



NOTICE

■ **Removing light lenses**

Never remove the lens for the front interior light and front personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If the lens needs to be removed, contact your Lexus dealer.

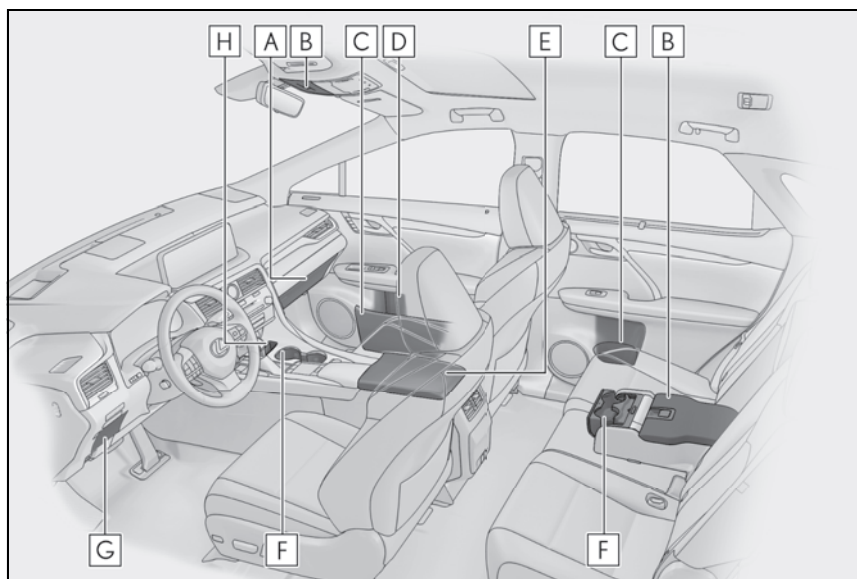
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

List of storage features

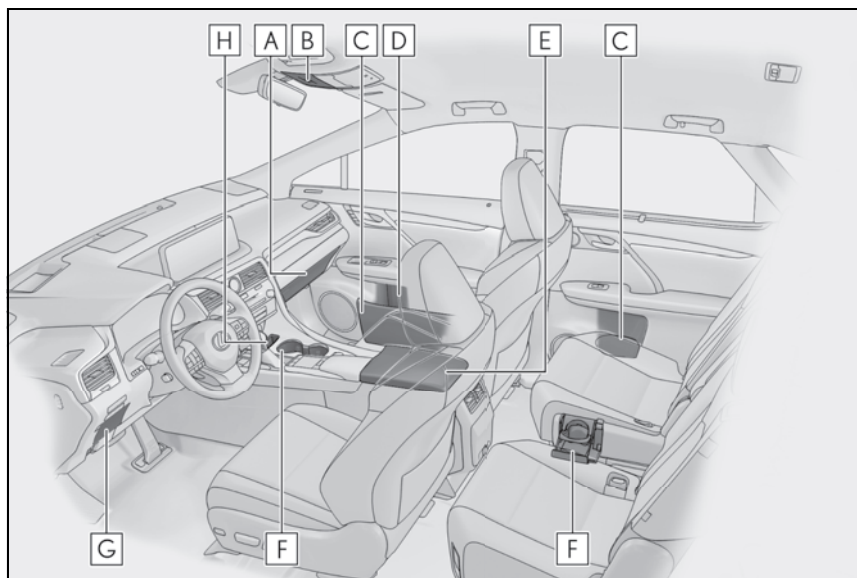
Location of the storage features

- Vehicles with bench-type second-row seats



- A** Glove box (→P.407)
- B** Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P.410)
- C** Door pockets (→P.409)
- D** Bottle holders (→P.409)
- E** Console box (→P.407)
- F** Cup holders (→P.408)
- G** Coin box (→P.410)
- H** Smartphone holder (→P.407)

► Vehicles with separate-type second-row seats



- A** Glove box (→P.407)
- B** Auxiliary boxes (→P.410)
- C** Door pockets (→P.409)
- D** Bottle holders (→P.409)
- E** Console box (→P.407)
- F** Cup holders (→P.408)
- G** Coin box (→P.410)
- H** Smartphone holder (→P.407)

⚠ WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

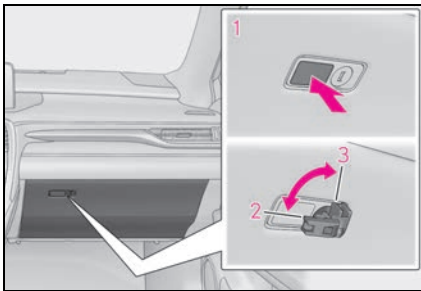
- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.

- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

! WARNING**■ When storage compartments are not in use**

When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box

- 1** Open (press the button)
- 2** Unlock with the mechanical key
- 3** Lock with the mechanical key

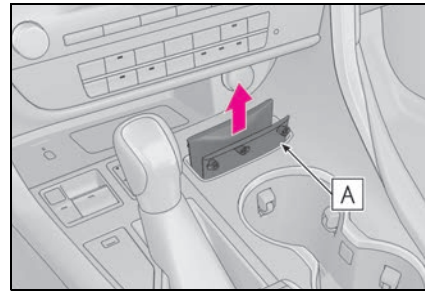
■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Smartphone holder**■ When cleaning the interior**

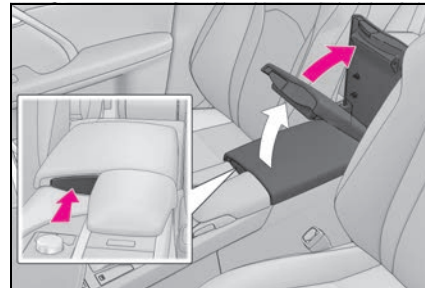
Remove **A** to clean it.

When installing **A**, engage the left and right claws and then engage the center claw.

**Console box**

Push the knob.

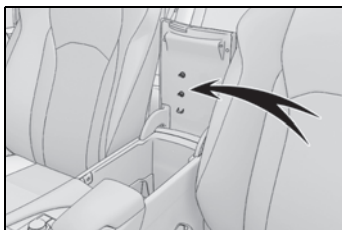
Lift by hand to fully open the console box.

**■ Console box light**

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

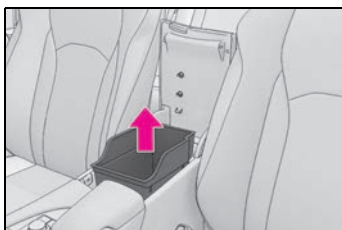
■ Pen holder

A pen can be stored in the pen holder on the underside of the lid.



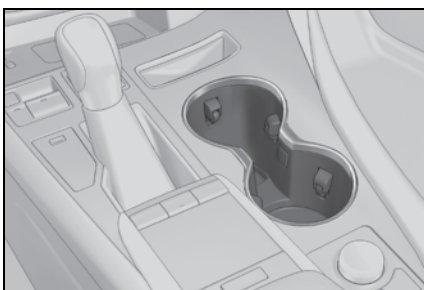
■ Tray in the console box

Remove the tray to access a storage space under the tray.



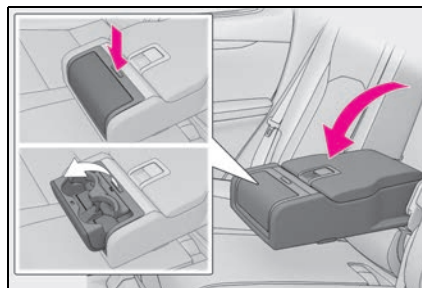
Cup holders

► Front seats



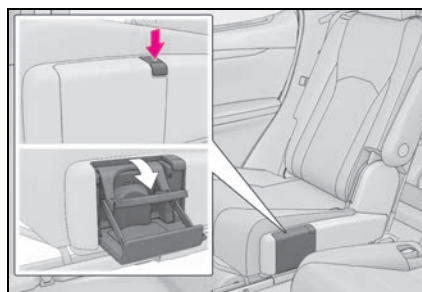
► Bench-type second-row seats

Pull down the armrest and then press down the button.



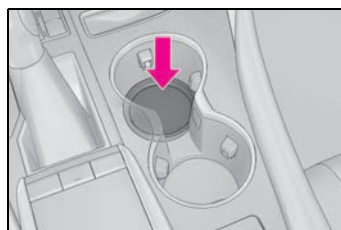
► Separate-type second-row seats

Press in the button.

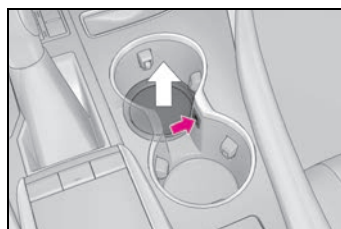


■ The depth of the front cup holder can be changed.

- 1 To store a water bottle, push down the bottom of the cup holder.



- 2 To return the bottom to its original position, press the button.



⚠ WARNING**■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

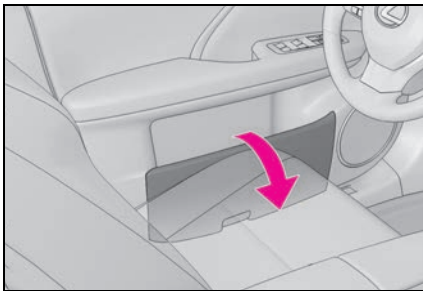
- Do not place anything other than cups, aluminum cans, or water bottles in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, possibly causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.
- Rear cup holder: When not in use, keep the cup holders are closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent damage to the rear cup holder**

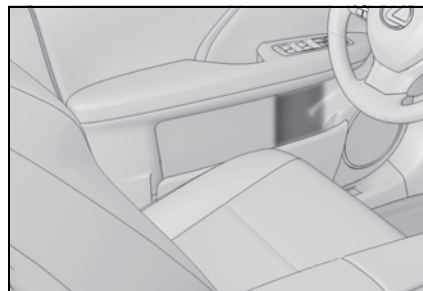
Stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.

Door pockets**► Front**

The door pockets can be opened and closed.

**► Rear****⚠ WARNING****■ Caution while driving**

Front door pockets: Keep the door pockets closed while driving. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Bottle holders**■ Bottle holders**

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

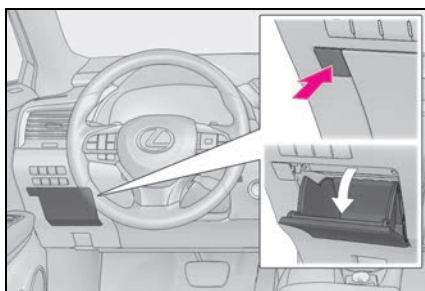
**NOTICE**

■ **Items unsuitable for the bottle holders**

Do not place open bottle, glass or paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. Otherwise, contained liquid may be spilled. Glass cups may break if used in the bottle holders.

Coin box

Press in the button.

**WARNING**

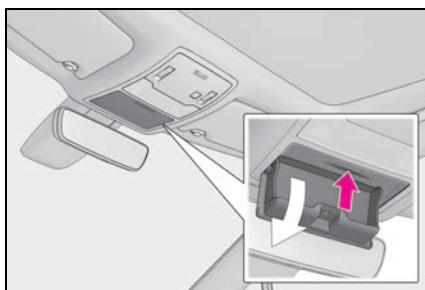
■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the coin box closed while driving. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Auxiliary boxes

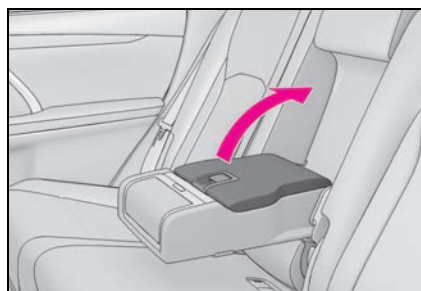
► **Type A**

Press in the lid.



► **Type B (if equipped)**

Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the lid.

**WARNING**

■ **Items unsuitable for storing (Type A)**

Do not store items heavier than 200 g (0.44 lb.). Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

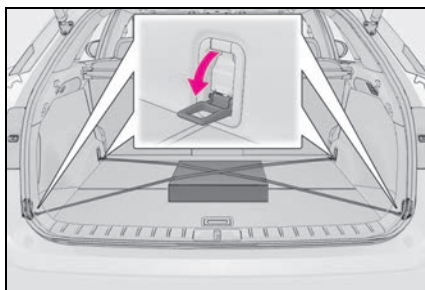
Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks

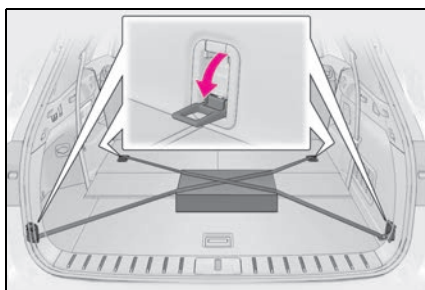
Pull down the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

► RX300/RX350



► RX350L



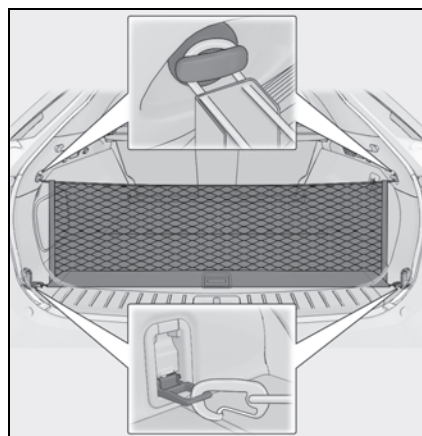
! WARNING

■ When cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Cargo net hooks

To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and rear cargo hooks.



! WARNING

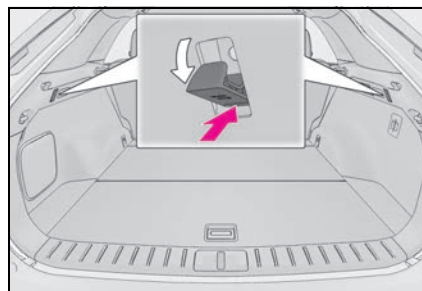
■ When the cargo net is not in use

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

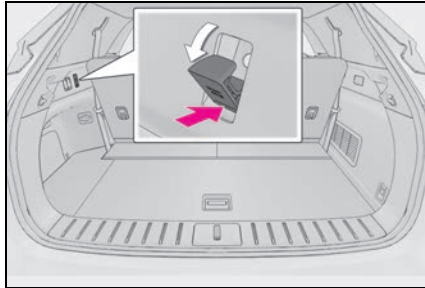
Grocery bag hooks

To use the grocery bag hook, push it in.

► RX300/RX350



► RX350L



NOTICE

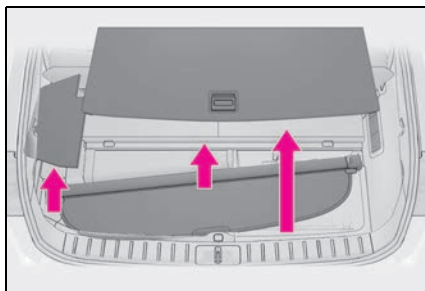
■ **To prevent damage to the grocery bag hooks**

Do not hang any object heavier than 4 kg (8.8 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

Luggage cover

■ **Removing the luggage cover unit (RX350L)**

Remove the deck board and side auxiliary box cover and take out the luggage cover unit. (→P.413)

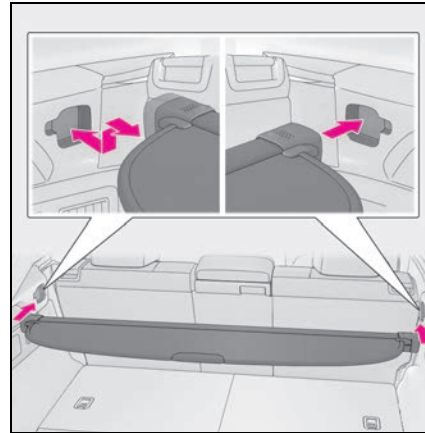


■ **Using the luggage cover**

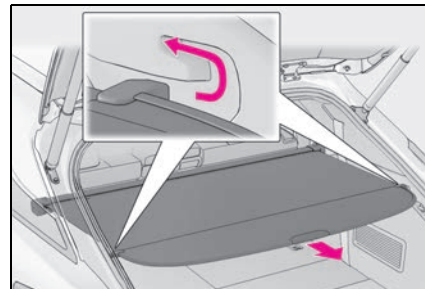
RX350L: Before installing the luggage cover, fold down the third-row seats. (→P.180)

- 1 Insert either end of the luggage cover into the recess, then com-

press the other end of the luggage cover and insert it into the recess.

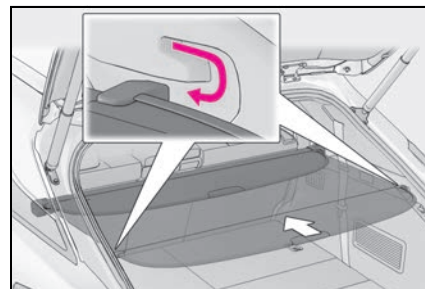


- 2 Pull out the luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.



■ **Removing the luggage cover**

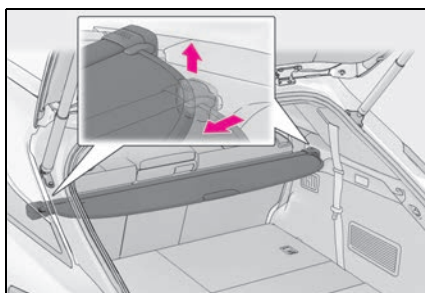
- 1 Release the cover from the left and right anchors and allow it to retract.



- 2** Compress the end of the luggage cover and lift the luggage cover up.

RX300/RX350: After removing the luggage cover, place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment.

RX350L: Stow the luggage cover under the deck board and side auxiliary box cover.

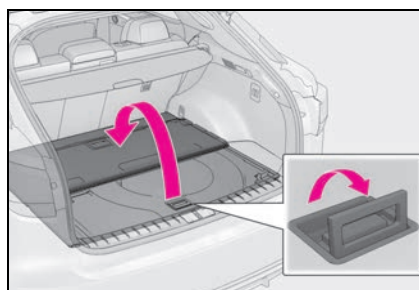


! WARNING

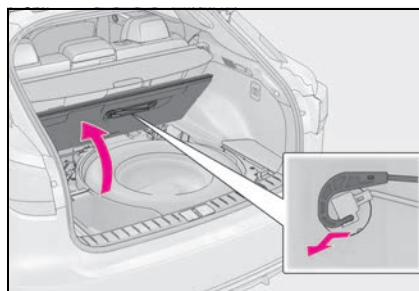
- Do not place anything on the luggage cover. In the event of sudden braking or turning, the item may go flying and strike an occupant. This could lead to an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

Auxiliary boxes (RX300/RX350)

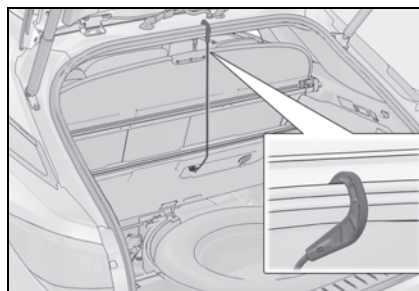
- 1** Pull the lever up and fold the flap of the deck board.



- 2** Lift the deck board and disengage the hook on the underside of the deck board.

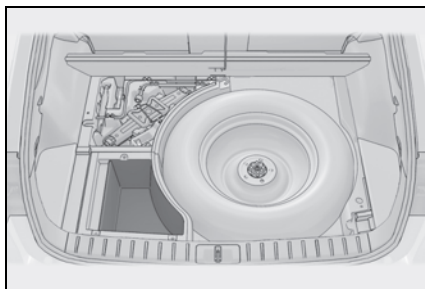


- 3** Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.

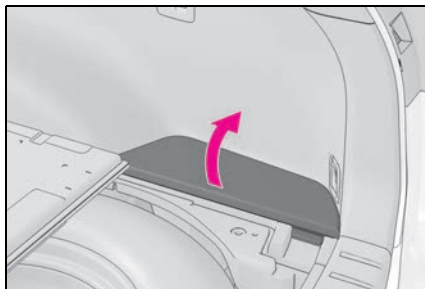


■ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

► Deck floor box

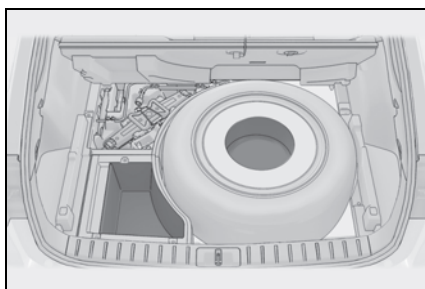


► Deck side box

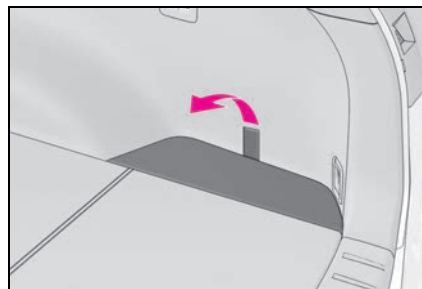


■ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

► Deck floor box



► Deck side box



WARNING

■ If the deck board is folded or removed

Return it to its original position before driving. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck board or the items stored in the deck under tray.

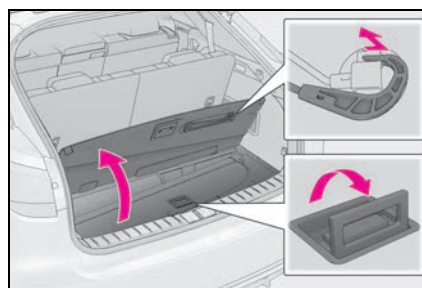
NOTICE

■ When closing the back door

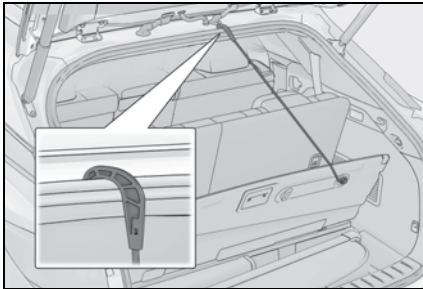
Do not leave the deck board hook hooked on the edge of the back door opening. The deck board hook may get damaged.

Auxiliary boxes (RX350L)

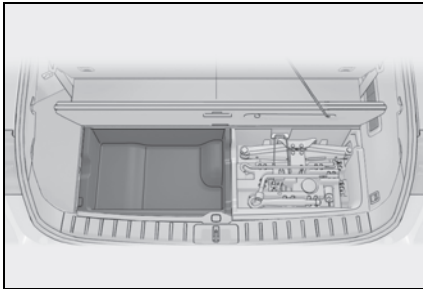
- 1 Pull up the lever, lift the deck board and pull out the hook from the underside of the deck board.



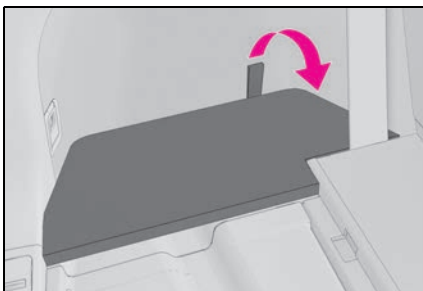
- 2 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.



- Deck floor box (if equipped)



- Deck side box



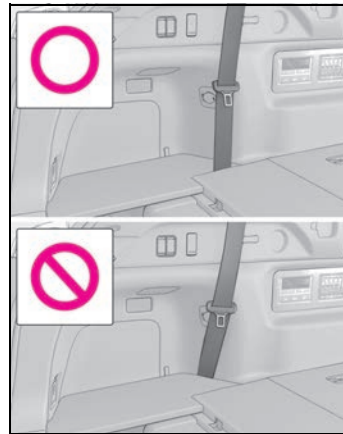
⚠ WARNING

- If the deck board is folded or removed

Return it to its original position before driving. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck board or the items stored in the deck under tray.

- When installing the side auxiliary box and side auxiliary box cover

Make sure that the third-row seat seatbelt is positioned correctly. If the seatbelt is positioned incorrectly, the seatbelt may be damaged when a passenger uses the seatbelt. Also, in the case of sudden braking, the side auxiliary box cover may come off and things stored in the side auxiliary box may fly about and strike an occupant, possibly resulting in death or serious injury.



⚠ NOTICE

- When closing the back door

Do not leave the deck board hook hooked on the edge of the back door opening. The deck board hook may get damaged.

Other interior features

USB charging ports

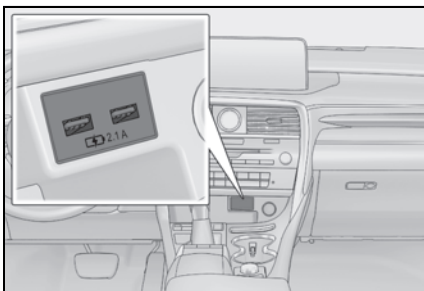
The USB charging ports are used to supply 2.1 A of electricity at 5 V to external devices.

The USB charging ports are for charging only. They are not designed for data transfer or other purposes.

Depending on the external device, it may not charge properly. Refer to the manual included with the device before using a USB charging port.

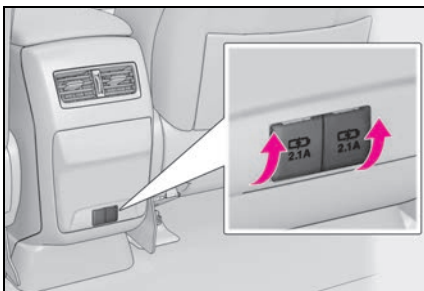
■ Using the USB charging ports

- On the instrument panel



- On the rear console

Open the lid.



- Armrest (RX350L with bench-type second-row seats)



■ The USB charging ports can be used when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Situations in which the USB charging ports may not operate correctly

- If a device which consumes more than 2.1 A at 5 V is connected
- If a device designed to communicate with a personal computer, such as a USB memory device, is connected
- If the connected external device is turned off (depending on device)
- If the temperature inside the vehicle is high, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun

■ About connected external devices

Depending on the connected external device, charging may occasionally be suspended and then start again. This is not a malfunction.



NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the USB charging ports
- Do not insert foreign objects into the ports.
- Do not spill water or other liquids into the ports.

**NOTICE**

- Rear console: When the USB charging ports are not in use, close the lids. If a foreign object or liquid enters a port may cause a short circuit.
- Do not apply excessive force to or impact the USB charging ports.
- Do not disassemble or modify the USB charging ports.
- **To prevent damage to external devices**
 - Do not leave external devices in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to an external device.
 - Do not push down on or apply unnecessary force to an external device or the cable of an external device while it is connected.
- **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the USB charging ports for a long period of time with the engine stopped.

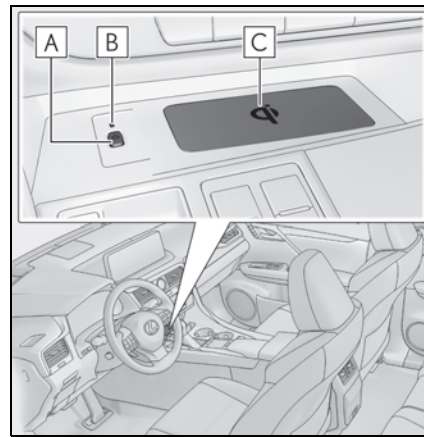
Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device, such as a smartphone or mobile battery, can be charged by just placing it on the charging area, provided the device is compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard created by the Wireless Power Consortium.

The wireless charger cannot be used with a portable device that is larger than the charging area. Additionally, depending on the portable device, the wireless charger may not operate properly. Refer to the operation manual of the portable device.

■ The “Qi” symbol

The “Qi” symbol is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

**■ Name for all parts**

- A** Power supply switch
- B** Operation indicator light
- C** Charge area

■ Using the wireless charger

- 1** Press the power supply switch of the wireless charger.

Pressing the switch again turns the wireless charger off.

When turned on, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

When the engine switch is turned off, the on/off state of the wireless charger will be

memorized.

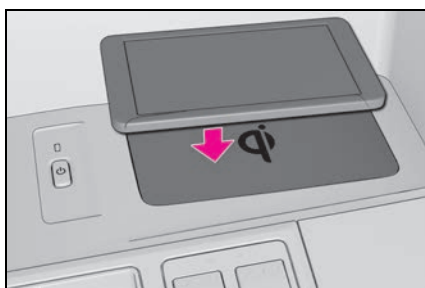


- 2 Place a portable device on the charging area with its charging surface facing down.

While charging, the operation indicator light (orange) will be illuminated.

If charging does not begin, move the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) will illuminate.



■ Recharging function

- If a certain amount of time has elapsed since charging completed and the portable device has not been moved, the wireless charger will restart charging.
- If the portable device is moved within the charging area, charging will stop temporarily then restart.

■ Operation indicator light status

Operation indicator light	State
Off	The Wireless charger is off
Green (illuminated)	Standby (charging is possible)
	Charging is complete *
Orange (illuminated)	A portable device has been placed on the charging area (identifying the portable device)
	Charging in progress

*: Depending on the portable device, the operation indicator light may stay illuminated (orange) after charging has completed.

■ If the operation indicator light blinks

If an error is detected, the operation indicator light will blink (orange). Take the appropriate measures according to the table below.

- Blinks (orange) at a one second interval continuously

Suspected causes	Measure
Vehicle to charger communication failure.	Contact your Lexus dealer.

- Blinks (orange) 3 times repeatedly

Suspected causes	Measure
A foreign object exists between the portable device and charging area.	Remove the foreign object.
Portable device is not positioned properly on the charging area.	Move the portable device toward the center of the charging area.

- Blinks (orange) 4 times repeatedly

Suspected causes	Measure
The temperature of the wireless charger is excessively high.	Stop charging immediately and continue charging after a while.

■ The wireless charger can be operated when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Portable devices that can be charged

- Portable devices compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard can be charged by the wireless charger. However, compatibility with all devices which meet the Qi wireless charging standard is not guaranteed.
- The wireless charger is designed to supply low power electricity (5 W or less) to a cellular phone, smartphone, or other portable device.

■ If a cover or accessory is attached to the portable device

Do not charge a portable device if a cover or accessory which is not Qi compatible is attached. Depending on the type of cover and/or accessory attached, it may not be possible to charge the portable device. If the portable device is placed on the charging area and does not charge, remove the cover and/or accessories.

■ If interference is heard in AM radio broadcasts while charging

Turn off the wireless charger and check if the noise is reduced. If noise is reduced, press and hold the power supply switch of the wireless charger for 2 seconds. The frequency of the wireless charger is changed and noise may be reduced. When the frequency is changed, the operation indicator light will blink (orange) 2 times.

■ Charging precautions

- If the electronic key cannot be detected in the cabin, charging cannot be performed. When a door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- While charging, the wireless charger and the portable device will become warm. This is not a malfunction. If a portable device becomes warm while charging and charging stops due to the protection function of the portable device, wait until the portable device cools down and charge it again.

■ Sound generated during operation

When the power supply switch is turned on or while a portable device is being identified, operation sounds may be heard. This is not a malfunction.

■ Cleaning the wireless charger

→P.436

■ Certification for the wireless charger

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

When charging a portable device while driving, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the portable device.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger.

Operations of the wireless charger may have an affect on medical devices.

■ To prevent damage or burns

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in the possibility of fire, equipment failure or damage, or burns due to heat.

- Do not put any metallic objects between the charging area and the portable device while charging.
- Do not attach metallic objects, such as aluminum stickers, to the charging area.
- Do not cover the wireless charger with a cloth or other object while charging.
- Do not attempt to charge portable devices which are not compatible with the Qi wireless charging standard.

- Do not disassemble, modify or remove the wireless charger.

- Do not apply force or impact to the wireless charger.



NOTICE

■ Conditions in which the wireless charger may not operate correctly

In the following situations, the wireless charger may not operate correctly:

- When a portable device is fully charged
- When there is a foreign object between the charging area and portable device
- When a portable device becomes hot while charging
- When a portable device is placed on the wireless area with its charging surface facing up
- When a portable device is not centered on the charging area
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise

**NOTICE**

- When the portable device is in contact with, or is covered by any of the following metallic objects:
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Metal hand warmers
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When wireless keys (that emit radio waves) other than those of your vehicle are being used nearby.

If in situations other than above the wireless charger does not operate properly or the operation indicator light is blinking, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **To prevent failure or damage to data**

- Do not bring magnetic cards, such as a credit card, or magnetic recording media, close to the wireless charger while charging. Otherwise, data may be erased due to the influence of magnetism. Additionally, do not bring precision instruments such as wrist watches, close to the wireless charger, as such objects may malfunction.
- Do not leave portable devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become high when parked in the sun, and cause damage to the device.

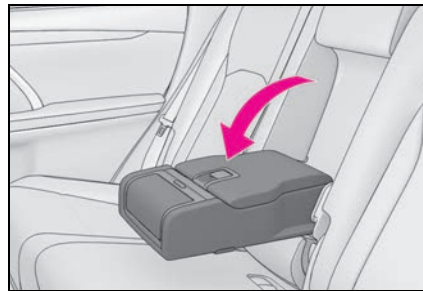
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the wireless charger for a long period of time with the engine is stopped.

Armrest

- ▶ RX300/RX350/RX350L with bench-type second-row seats

Pull the armrest down for use.



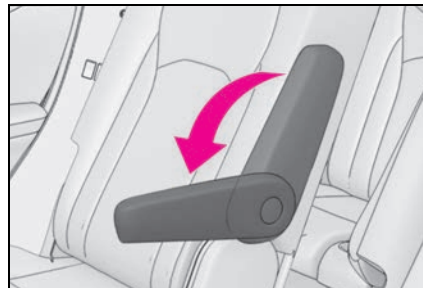
- ▶ RX350L with separate-type second-row seats

To adjust the armrest angle, raise the armrest to the highest position and then lower the armrest to the lowest position.

Raise the armrest again to the desired position and the armrest will be locked at that position.

When the armrest is locked, the armrest cannot be lowered.

To lower the armrest, raise the armrest to the highest position again.





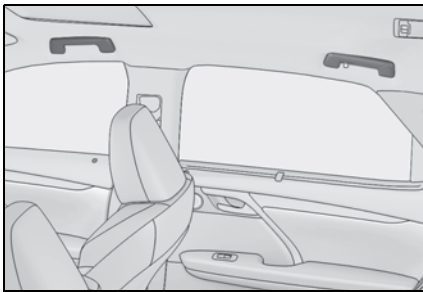
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

■ Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.



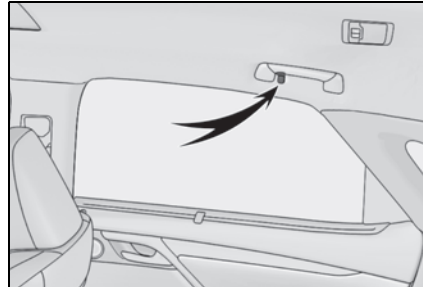
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



WARNING

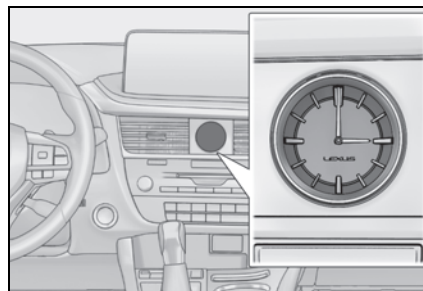
■ Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.

For details, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".



Power outlets

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of

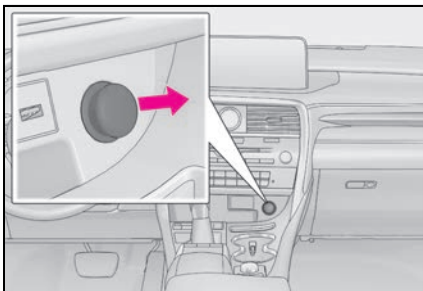
120 W).

Observe the following when using electronic goods:

- Make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets on the instrument panel and in the luggage compartment is less than 120 W.
- Make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets inside the console box is less than 120 W.

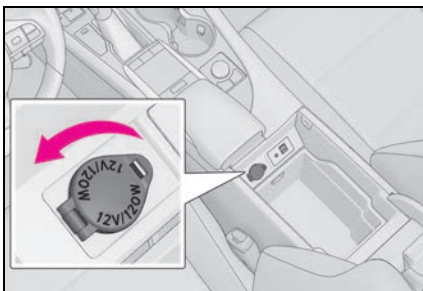
- On the instrument panel

Remove the cap.



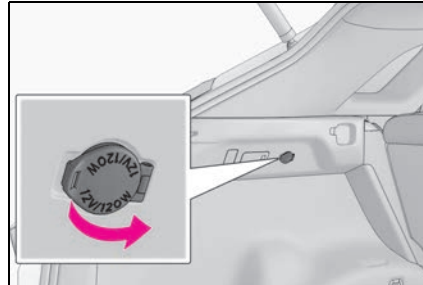
- Inside the console box

Open the lid.



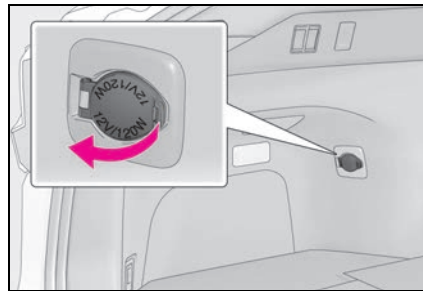
- In the luggage compartment (RX300/RX350)

Open the lid.



- In the luggage compartment (RX350L)

Open the lid.

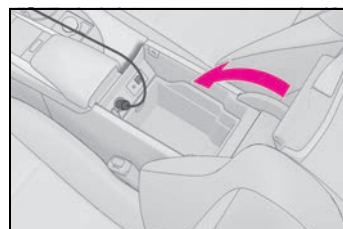


■ The power outlet can be used when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Using the power outlet

- Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: When the engine restarts after having been stopped by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.
- The shape of the console box rim allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is closed.



■ When turning the engine switch off

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs. If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the power outlet

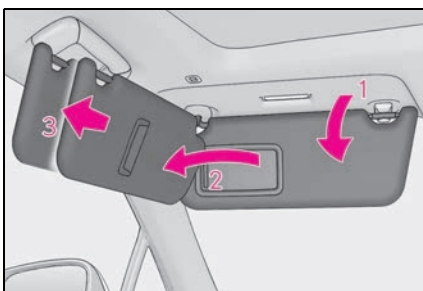
Install the cap or close the lid when the power outlets is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Sun visors

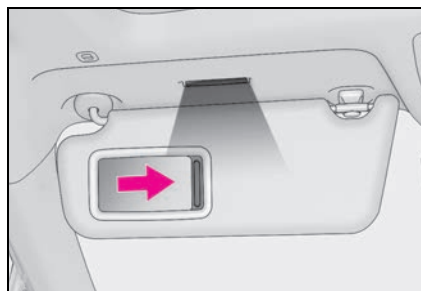


- 1** To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
- 2** To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.
- 3** To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



■ To prevent battery discharge

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

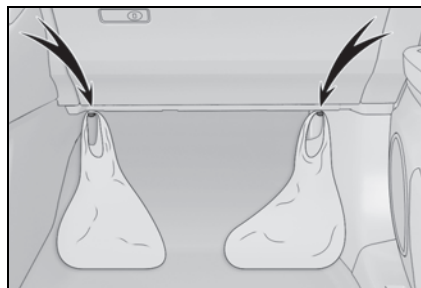
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Front passenger footwell hooks

Use the front passenger footwell hooks to help support and prevent objects placed on the floor, such as a grocery bag, from overturning.



**NOTICE**

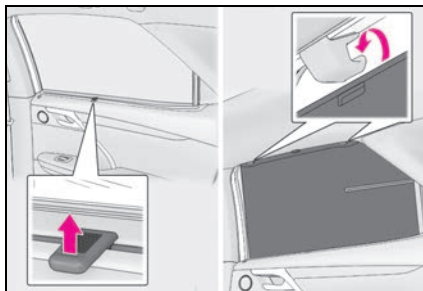
■ **To prevent damage to the hooks**

Do not hang anything from a hook or apply excessive force to it.

Rear door sunshades (if equipped)

Pull the sunshade up using the tab and hook the sunshade on to the anchors.

To lower the sunshade, pull it up slightly using the tab, unhook it from the anchors, and lower it slowly.

**WARNING**

When a rear door sunshade is in use, do not put fingers, etc. on the anchors or in the groove of the rear door sunshade. Otherwise, a finger, etc. may get caught, possibly causing an injury.

**NOTICE**

● Do not put anything in an area where it may interfere with the operation of a rear door sunshade.

● To prevent damage to the rear door sunshades, do not apply excessive load or attach items to the rear door sunshades.

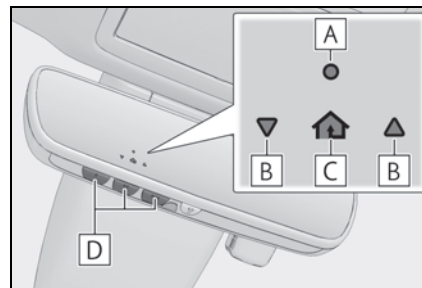
Garage door opener*

*: If equipped

The garage door opener can be programmed using the HomeLink® to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

System components

The HomeLink® wireless control system in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming methods on the following pages to determine the method which is appropriate for the device.



A HomeLink® indicator light

B Garage door operation indicators

C HomeLink® icon

Illuminates while HomeLink® is operating.

D Buttons

■ Codes stored in the HomeLink® memory

● The registered codes are not erased even

if the battery cable is disconnected.

- If learning failed when registering a different code to a HomeLink[®] button that already has a code registered to it, the already registered code will not be erased.

⚠ WARNING

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door or other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

■ When operating or programming HomeLink[®]

Never allow a child to operate or play with the HomeLink[®] buttons.

Programming the HomeLink[®]

■ Before programming HomeLink[®]

- During programming, it is possible that garage doors, gates, or other devices may operate. For this reason, make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or other devices to prevent injury or other potential harm.

- It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the remote control transmitter for more accurate programming.
- Garage door opener motors manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, you may need a stepladder or other sturdy, safe device to reach the “Learn” or “Smart” button on the garage door opener motor.

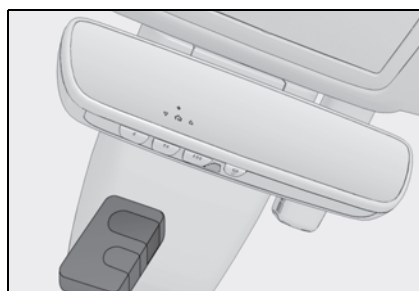
■ Programming HomeLink[®]

- 1 Press and release the HomeLink[®] button you want to program and check that the HomeLink[®] indicator light flashes (orange).

Perform **3** within 60 seconds of **1**, or the indicator light will stop flashing and programming will not be able to be completed.

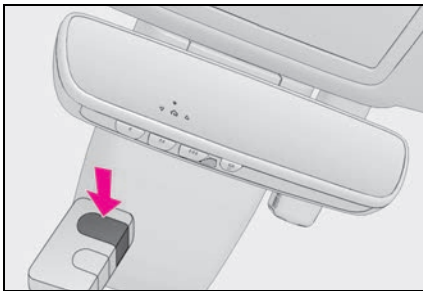
- 2 Point the remote control transmitter for the device at the rear view mirror, 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) from the HomeLink[®] buttons.

Keep the HomeLink[®] indicator light in view while programming.



► Garage door type A

- 3 Press and hold the handheld transmitter button until the HomeLink[®] indicator light changes from slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing green (rolling code) or continuously lit green (fixed code), then release the button.



► Garage door type B (Programming an entry gate/Programming the HomeLink[®])

- 3 Press and release the remote control transmitter button at 2 second intervals, repeatedly, until the HomeLink[®] indicator light changes from slowly flashing (orange) to rapidly flashing (green) (rolling code) or continuously lit (green) (fixed code).
- 4 Test the HomeLink[®] operation by pressing the newly programmed button and observing the indicator light:
 - Device with fixed code: If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming has been completed and your garage door or other device should operate when the

HomeLink[®] button is pressed and released.

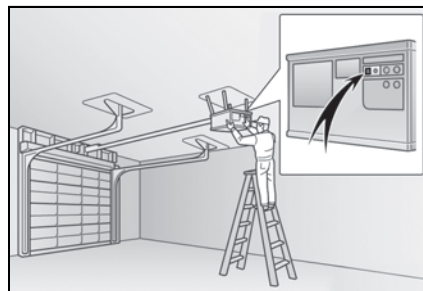
- Device with rolling code: If the indicator light flashes rapidly, your garage door opener motor (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code. Complete the programming process by firmly pressing and holding the programmed HomeLink[®] button for 2 seconds and then release the button.
- If the garage door or other device does not operate, proceed to "Programming a rolling code system".

- 5 Repeat the steps above to program another device for any of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

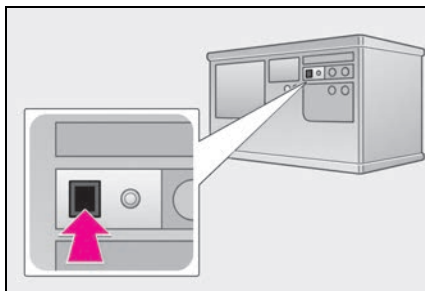
■ Programming a rolling code system

- 1 Locate the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor in the garage.

This button can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer. Refer to the owner's manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for details.



- 2 Press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button.
Perform 3 within 30 seconds after performing 2.



- 3 Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button (inside the vehicle) for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this sequence (press/hold/release) up to 3 times to complete programming. If the garage door opener motor operates when the HomeLink® button is pressed, the garage door opener motor recognizes the HomeLink® signal.



■ Enabling 2-way communication with a garage door (except for Argentina)

When enabled, 2-way communication allows you to check the status of the

opening and closing of a garage door through indicators in your vehicle.

2-way communication is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

- 1 Within 5 seconds after programming the garage door opener has been completed, if the garage door opener motor is trained to HomeLink®, both garage door operation indicators will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

If the indicators do not flash, perform 2 and 3 within the first 10 presses of the HomeLink® button after programming has been completed.

- 2 Press a programmed HomeLink® button to operate a garage door.
- 3 Within 1 minute of pressing the HomeLink® button, after the garage door operation has stopped, press the “Learn” or “Smart” button on the garage door opener motor. Within 5 seconds of the establishment of 2-way communication with the garage door opener, both garage door operation indicators in the vehicle will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

■ Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button

When the following procedure is performed, buttons which already have devices registered to them can be overwritten:

- 1 With one hand, press and hold the desired HomeLink® button.
- 2 When the HomeLink® indicator starts flashing (orange), continue to hold the HomeLink® button and perform “Programming HomeLink®” 1 (it takes 20 seconds for the HomeLink® indicator to start flashing).

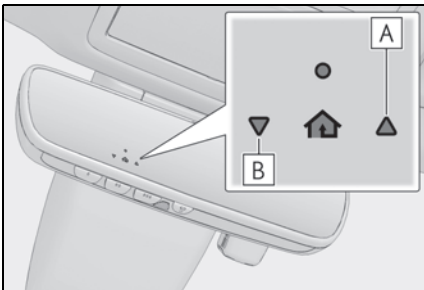
■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

Operating HomeLink® (except for Argentina)

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The status of the opening and closing of a garage door is shown by the indicators.



A Opening

B Closing

This function is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

Color	Status
Orange (flashing)	Currently opening/closing
Green	Opening/closing has completed
Red (flashing)	Feedback signals cannot be received

The indicators can operate within approximately 250 m (820 ft.) of the garage door. However, if there are obstructions between the garage door and the vehicle, such as houses and trees, feedback signals from the garage door may not be received.

To recall the previous door operation status, press and release either

HomeLink® buttons  and

 or  and  simultaneously. The last recorded status will be displayed for 3 seconds.

Erasing the entire HomeLink[®] memory (all three codes)

Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the HomeLink[®] indicator light changes from continuously lit (orange) to rapidly flashing (green).

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink[®] memory.



Maintenance and care

6

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior **432**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior **435**

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements **438**

Scheduled maintenance **440**

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions **451**

Hood **453**

Positioning a floor jack..... **453**

Engine compartment..... **455**

Tires **464**

Tire inflation pressure..... **475**

Wheels **477**

Air conditioning filter..... **478**

Windshield wiper inserts **480**

Electronic key battery **482**

Checking and replacing fuses **484**

Light bulbs..... **485**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the water-proof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature. The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.

- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

■ Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
 - Fold the mirrors
 - Turn off the power back door (if equipped)

Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Extend the mirrors before driving.

- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

■ High pressure car washes

As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

■ When using a car wash

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.167)

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
 - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent
 - Do not use hard brushes
 - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or park-

ing in hot weather

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ Front side windows water-repellent coating

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
 - Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
 - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
 - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
 - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Plated portions

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

- Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.
- To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.



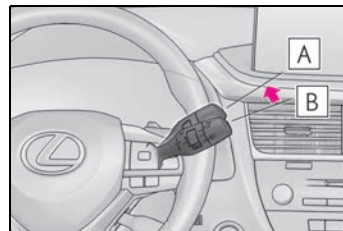
WARNING

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to off. If the switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

**WARNING**

■ **Precaution regarding the rear bumper**

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the following systems may not function correctly. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

- Lexus Safety System + (if equipped)
- BSM (if equipped)
- RCTA (if equipped)
- PKSB (if equipped)

**NOTICE**

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
 - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to the off position. If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ **When using a high pressure car wash**

- When washing the vehicle, do not let water of the high pressure washer hit directly or the vicinity of the camera. Due to the shock from the high pressure water, it is possible the device may not operate as normal.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
 - Traction related parts
 - Steering parts
 - Suspension parts
 - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged.

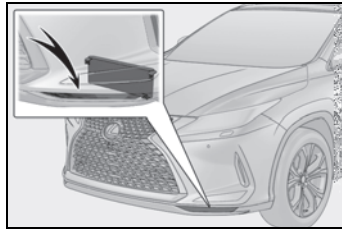
Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.

**NOTICE**

- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously.

If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.

- Except for Korea: Do not point the nozzle of a high pressure washer at the areas shown in the illustration, as high pressure water may damage the oil cooler.



Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

**WARNING****■ Water in the vehicle**

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle. Doing so may cause electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.

- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.44)
An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles with wireless charger: Do not let the wireless charger (→P.417) get wet. Failure to do so may cause the charger to become hot and cause burns or could cause electric shock resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

**NOTICE****■ Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following liquids, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
 - Center Display: Organic substances such as benzine or gasoline, alkaline solutions, and alcohol
 - Seats: Alkaline solutions, organic substances such as thinner or benzene, and alcohol
 - Other parts: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach

- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water. Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System+)

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.264)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

**NOTICE**

- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
 - Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
- Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
 - Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:



WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.460)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.

Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.

- Where to go for maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained special-

ists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in this section.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend

that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

■ Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.121)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition. (See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

A. Road Conditions 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow. 2. Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.) 3. Operating on road which has road salt applied.	B. Driving Conditions 1. Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.) 2. Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.) 3. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use. 4. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.
--	--

Maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

T = Tighten to specified torque

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING										MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80		
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48		
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS												
1	Drive belts			I		I		I		I	24	
2	Engine oil	Except for Hong Kong and Macau	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>									
		For Hong Kong and Macau	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12	
3	Engine oil filter	Except for Hong Kong and Macau	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>									
		For Hong Kong and Macau	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12	
4	Cooling and heater system <<See note 2.>>					I				I	24	
5	Engine coolant (RX300: Include intercooler coolant) <<See note 3.>>					I				I	-	
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings			I		I		I		I	12	
IGNITION SYSTEM												
7	Spark plugs	RX300						R			-	
		RX350/RX350L	Replace every 100000 km (60000 miles)								-	
8	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12	
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS												
9	Fuel filter <<See note 4.>>									R	96	
10	Fuel injection system <<See note 5 and 6.>>		Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).									
11	Air cleaner filter			I		R		I		R	I: 24 R: 48	
12	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve <<See note 2.>>					I				I	24	

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
13	Charcoal canister (except for Korea)					I				I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY											
14	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 7.>>		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
15	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
16	Brake fluid		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I: 6 R: 24
17	Brake pipes and hoses			I		I		I		I	12
18	Vacuum pump for brake booster		Inspect every 200000 km (120000 miles)								
19	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box			I		I		I		I	12
20	Drive shaft boots			I		I		I		I	24
21	Suspension ball joints and dust covers			I		I		I		I	12
22	Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)					I				I	24
23	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections (RX350 and RX350L)					I				I	24
24	Transfer oil (AWD models)			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
25	Rear differential oil (AWD models)			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
26	Propeller shaft (AWD models)			T		T		T		T	12
27	Front and rear suspension			I		I		I		I	12
28	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
29	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80		
	x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48		
30	Air conditioning filter	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12	
31	Refrigerant amount for air conditioner		I		I		I		I	12	

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 10000 km (6000 miles) since the last oil change. This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 10000 km (6000 miles). Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.
2. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.
3. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (50000 miles).
4. Including the filter in fuel tank.
5. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.
6. RX300: Macau only.
RX350: Bahrain, Saudi Arabia, Syria and Yemen only.
RX350L: Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Guatemala, Honduras, Panama, Philippines, El Salvador, Bolivia, Saudi Arabia, Aruba, Curacao, Peru and Yemen only.
7. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection * of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
A-3: Operating on road which has road salt applied.	
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.)	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	L: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
• Replacement of transfer oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
• Replacement of rear differential oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
B-2: Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macau)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/ private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
• Replacement of transfer oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
• Replacement of rear differential oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

Maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

T = Tighten to specified torque

SERVICE INTERVAL:	ODOMETER READING							MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
	x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS								
1	Drive belts	I	I	I	I	I	I	12

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING							MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
2	Engine oil	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>							
3	Engine oil filter	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>							
4	Cooling and heater system		I		I		I		24
5	Engine coolant <<See notes 2.>>		I		I		I		-
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings	I	I	I	I	I	I		12
IGNITION SYSTEM									
7	Spark plugs <<See note 3.>>						R		-
8	Battery	I	I	I	I	I	I		12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS									
9	Fuel filter <<See note 4.>>					R			96
10	Air cleaner filter	I	I	I	R	I	I		I: 24 R: 48
11	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve		I		I		I		24
12	Charcoal canister			I			I		24
CHASSIS AND BODY									
13	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 5.>>		I		I		I		24
14	Brake pads and discs	I	I	I	I	I	I		12
15	Brake fluid	I	R	I	R	I	R		I: 12 R: 24
16	Brake pipes and hoses	I	I	I	I	I	I		12
17	Vacuum pump for brake booster	Inspect every 200000 km (120000 miles)							
18	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	I	I	I	I	I	I		12
19	Propeller shaft	T	T	T	T	T	T		6

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING							MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
20	Drive shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	24
21	Suspension ball joint and dust covers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
22	Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)				I			I	36
23	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections				I			I	36
24	Transfer oil		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
25	Rear differential oil		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
26	Front and rear suspension		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
27	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
28	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
29	Air conditioning filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
30	Refrigerant amount for air conditioner		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 15000 km (9000 miles) since the last oil change. This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 15000 km (9000 miles). Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.
2. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (48000 miles).
3. It is possible to replace every 100000 km (60000 miles).
4. Including the filter in fuel tank.
5. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of brake pipes and hoses	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * of drive shaft boots	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection * of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months R: Every 60000 km (36000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
• Replacement of air conditioning filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
A-3: Operating on road which has road salt applied.	
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (For example, using a car top carrier and so forth.)	
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts of propeller shaft	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months
• Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.460)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine/inter-cooler coolant level (→P.459)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.456)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)

Items	Parts and tools
Fuses (→P.484)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.485)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator, condenser and inter-cooler radiator (→P.460)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.475)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.463)	• Water or washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

- **When working on the engine compartment**
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.

**WARNING**

- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ **When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille**

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.460)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

**NOTICE**

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

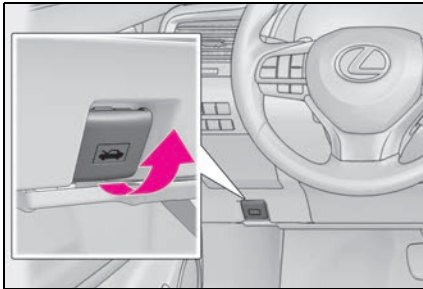
Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

Hood

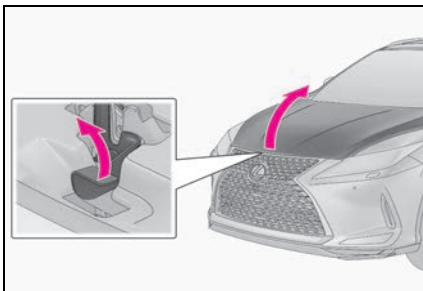
Opening the hood

- 1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



- 2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

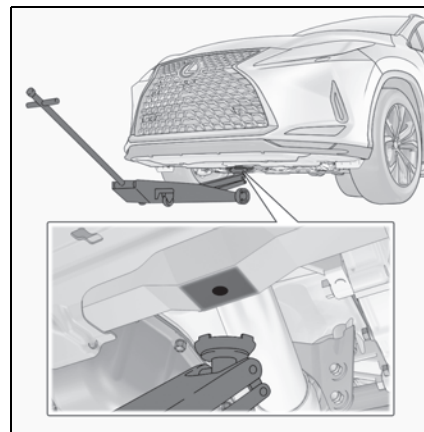
Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

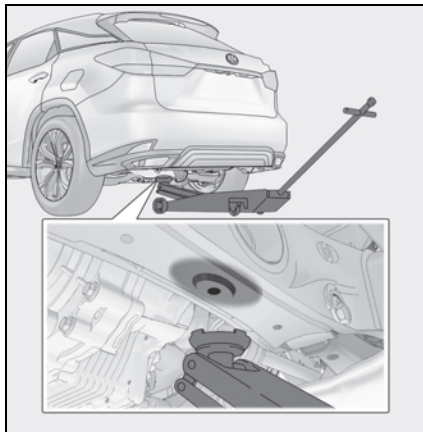
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Location of the jack point

■ Front



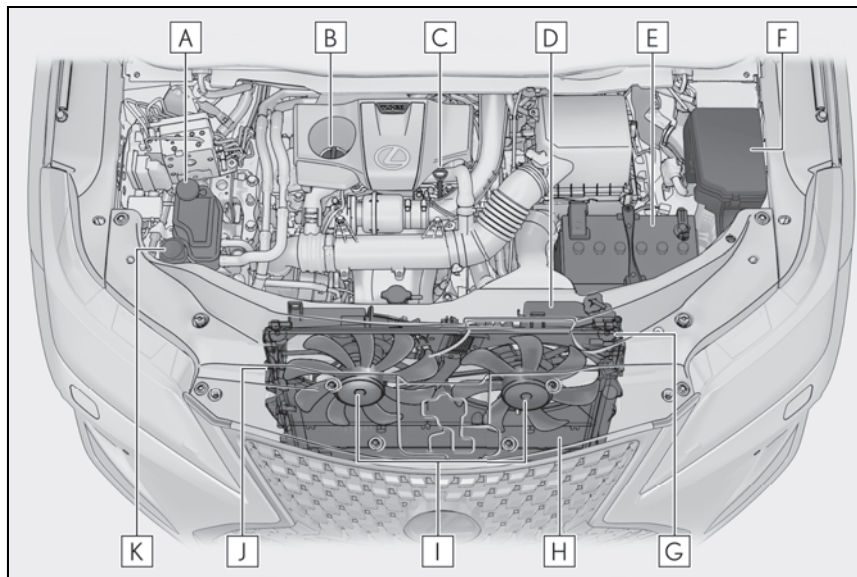
■ Rear



Engine compartment

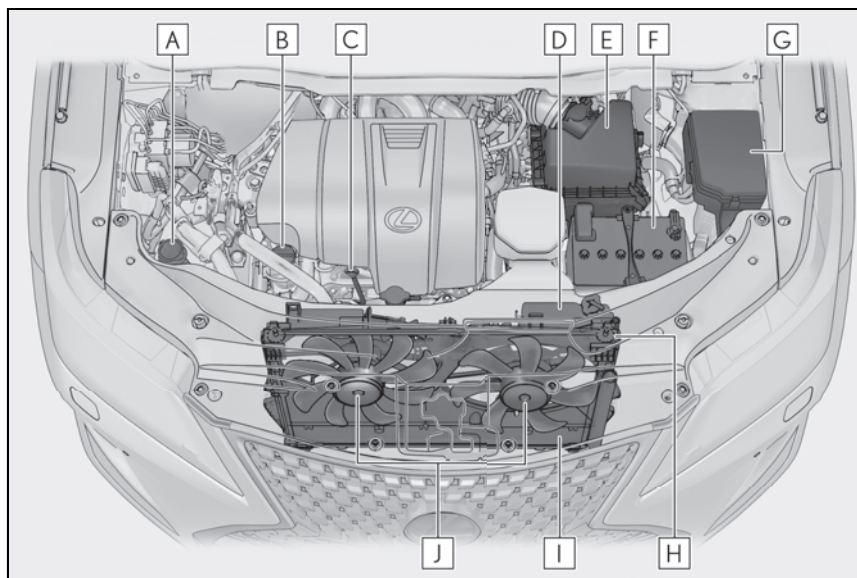
Components

► RX300



- A** Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P.459)
- B** Engine oil filler cap (→P.457)
- C** Engine oil level dipstick (→P.456)
- D** Engine coolant reservoir (→P.459)
- E** Battery (→P.460)
- F** Fuse box (→P.484)
- G** Radiator (→P.460)
- H** Condenser (→P.460)
- I** Electric cooling fans
- J** Intercooler radiator (→P.460)
- K** Washer fluid tank (→P.463)

► RX350/RX350L



- A** Washer fluid tank (→P.463)
- B** Engine oil filler cap (→P.457)
- C** Engine oil level dipstick (→P.456)
- D** Engine coolant reservoir (→P.459)
- E** Air cleaner (→P.463)
- F** Battery (→P.460)
- G** Fuse box (→P.484)
- H** Radiator (→P.460)
- I** Condenser (→P.460)
- J** Electric cooling fans

Checking and adding the engine oil

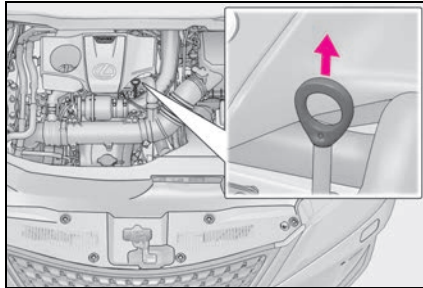
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

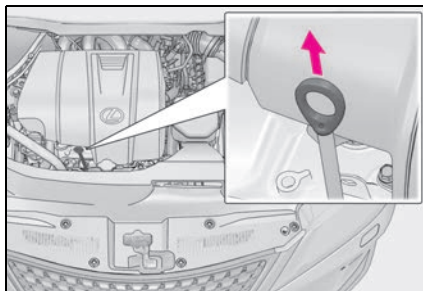
- 1** Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

- 2** Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

► RX300

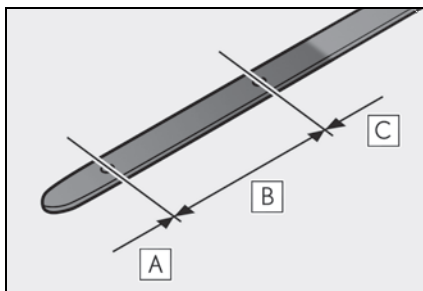


► RX350/RX350L



- 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.
4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.
5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

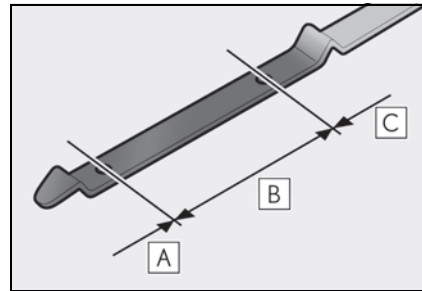
► Flat dipstick



A Low

- B** Normal
C Excessive

► Non-flat dipstick



- A** Low
B Normal
C Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

- 6** Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

■ **Checking the oil type and preparing the item needed**

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

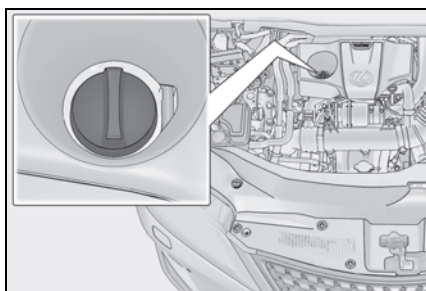
- Engine oil selection
→ P.549, 551
- Oil quantity (Low → Full)
RX300: 1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
RX350/RX350L: 1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.6 Imp. qt.)
- Item
Clean funnel

■ **Adding engine oil**

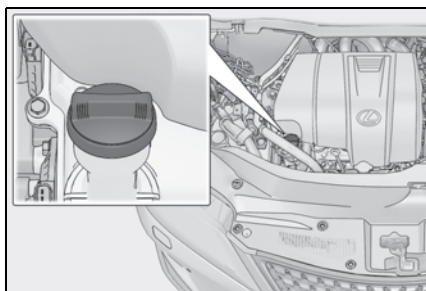
If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same

type as that already in the engine.

► RX300



► RX350/RX350L



- 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
- 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.
- 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or

with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently

- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ After changing the engine oil (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

- 1 Press < or > of the meter control switch to select  on the multi-information display.
- 2 Press ^ or v of the meter control switch, select the "Vehicle Settings" then "Oil Maintenance". (To confirm setting, press .)
- 3 Select the "Yes" and press .
- 4 A message is displayed on the multi-information display.

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

**NOTICE**

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

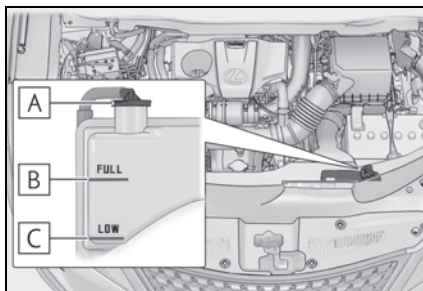
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the coolant

■ Engine coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

► RX300



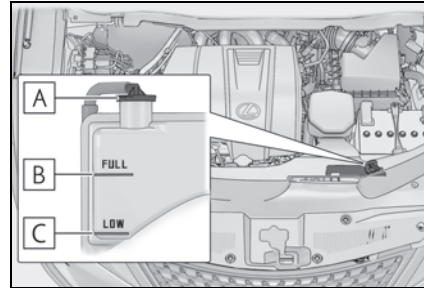
A Reservoir cap

B "FULL" line

C "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line.
(→P.541)

► RX350/RX350L



A Reservoir cap

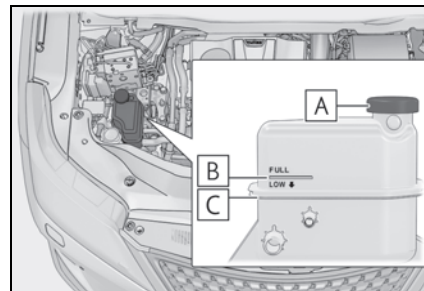
B "FULL" line

C "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line.
(→P.541)

■ Intercooler coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



A Reservoir cap

B "FULL" line

C "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line.
(→P.541)

■ Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.



WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap, intercooler coolant reservoir cap and radiator cap.

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.



NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator (if equipped)

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator and clear away any foreign objects.

If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Caution symbols

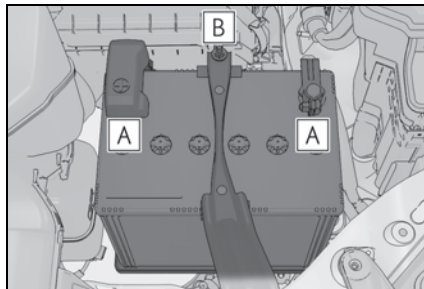
The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Battery acid
	Shield eyes
	Note operating instructions

	Keep away from children
	Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

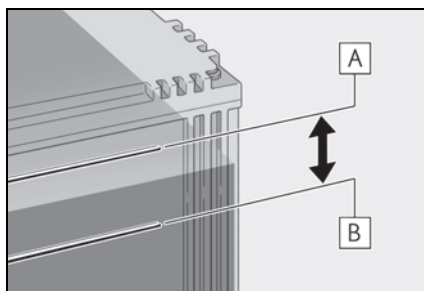


A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the "UPPER LEVEL" and "LOWER LEVEL" lines.



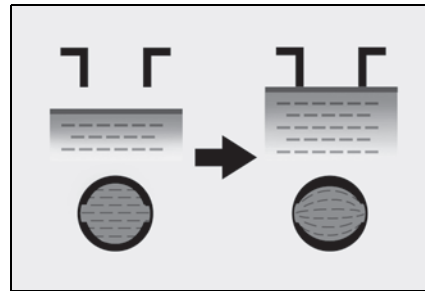
A "UPPER LEVEL" line

B "LOWER LEVEL" line

If the fluid level is at or below the "LOWER LEVEL" line, add distilled water.

■ Adding distilled water

- 1 Remove the vent plug.
- 2 Add distilled water.



If the "UPPER LEVEL" line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.

- 3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the battery

- The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.
- 1 Shift the shift lever to P.
 - 2 Open and close any of the doors.
 - 3 Restart the engine.
- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible

immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.

- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is disconnected and reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to the battery being disconnected is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at all the methods above, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Chemicals in the battery

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ When there is insufficient battery fluid

Do not use if there is insufficient fluid in the battery. There is a possible danger that the battery may explode.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

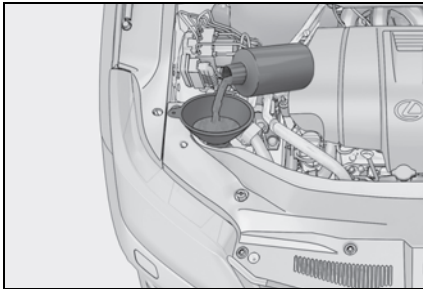
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine anti-freeze instead of washer fluid.

Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ Diluting washer fluid

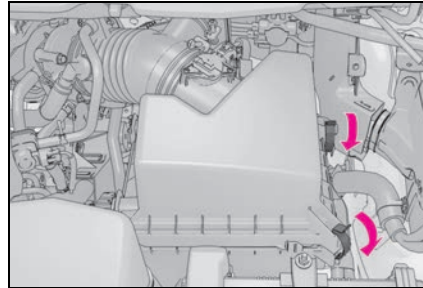
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.

Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Checking the air cleaner filter

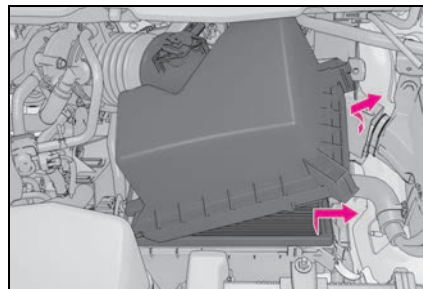
Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

1 Release the clips.

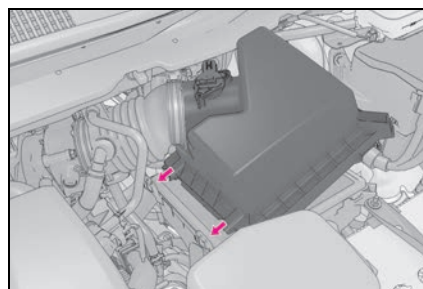


2 Lift the cover and take out the air cleaner filter.

Inspect the outer surface of the filter, and replace the filter if it is extremely dirty. If the filter is only moderately dusty, use compressed air to blow dust out of the filter.



3 After checking, make sure the filter is set properly. Fully engage the claws and then secure the upper cover of the air cleaner case using the clips.



**WARNING**

■ **To prevent inhaling dust**

Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

**NOTICE**

■ **To prevent damaging the engine**

Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.

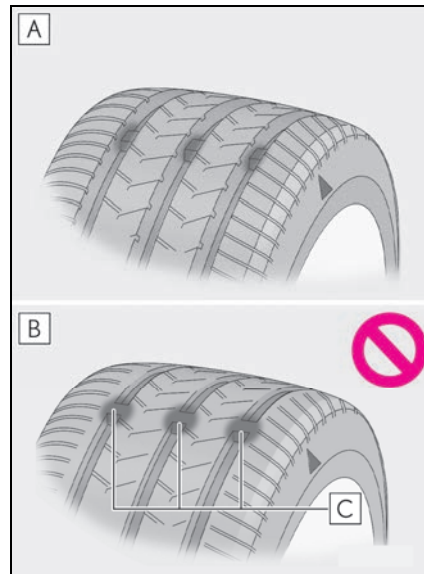
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or "△" mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

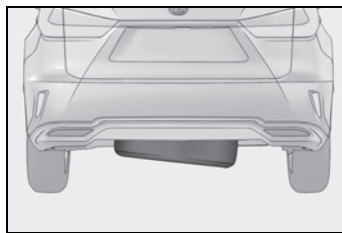
■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Proper storage of the spare tire (RX350L)

As an improperly stored spare tire may cause damage to the wire cable that holds it, check that the spare tire is stored properly on a daily basis.

- If the stored spare tire appears to be slanted or rattles while driving, the spare tire may not be properly stored. Store the spare tire again by performing the following tire change procedure correctly:



- 1 If the spare tire is slanted, the hoist assembly may be stuck in the wheel opening. If the spare tire rattles while driving, it may not be fully raised. Lower the spare tire to the ground and make sure that the hoist assembly is perpendicular to the wheel opening.

- 2 Raise the tire slowly and steadily until a click is heard and the jack handle skips.

If the spare tire cannot be lowered, the wire cable may be severed. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.



WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

**NOTICE**

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

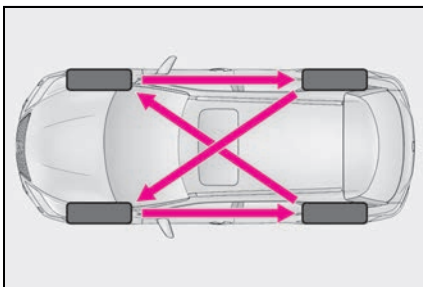
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

► **Vehicles with a compact spare tire**

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:

Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

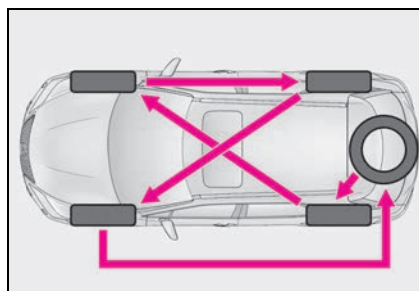
AWD models:

Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.
(vehicle with the tire pressure warning system)

► **Vehicles with a full-size spare tire**

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:

Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models:

Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.
(vehicle with the tire pressure warning system)

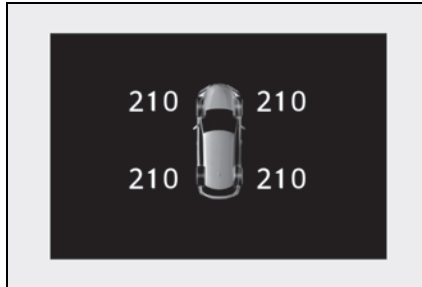
Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.125)

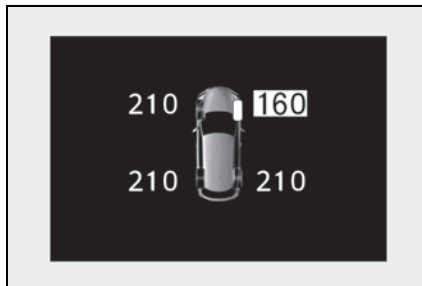
The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-infor-

mation display.



- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P.509)

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly

- In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
 - If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
 - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.

- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheel without the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- Performance may be affected in the following situations.
 - Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
 - When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

- When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.
- When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]
 Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.
 Dirección: Av.Mariscal Lopez 2801/2899 Asuncion, Paraguay

47953/SDPPI/2016
3505

Complies With
IMDA Standards
DA101418

47953/SDPPI/2016
3505

Complies With
IMDA Standards
DA101418

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Identification Number: MSIP-CRM-PCX-PMV-C215

Equipment Name (Model Number): 특정소출력무선기기(PMV-C215)

Manufactured date: See product

Applicant: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.

Manufacturer: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.

Country of Origin: Japan

Identification Number: MSIP-CRM-PCX-PMV-C215

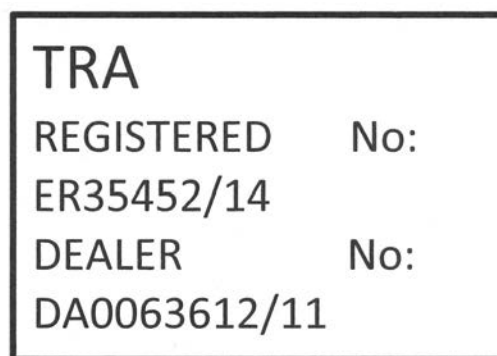
Equipment Name (Model Number): 특정소출력무선기기(PMV-C215)

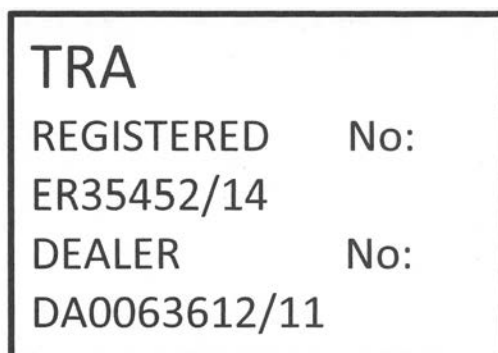
Manufactured date: See product

Applicant: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.

Manufacturer: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.

Country of Origin: Japan





Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/249

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/249

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES
H-17757



NR: 2018-07-I-000350

Name and Address of local dealer
Toyotoshi S.A.
Av. Mariscal López esq. Victor Cáceres,
San Lorenzo, Central, Paraguay

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.



TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.



Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P.475)

■ Replacing tires and wheels

► Except for Chile

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1

minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

► For Chile

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

- **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**
- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**NOTICE**

● Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.

● When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.472)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when the tire size is changed.
- When rotating the tires.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

- 1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

- 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P.554)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

- 3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 4 Select  on the multi-information display.

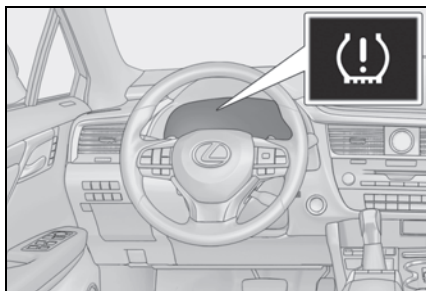
- 5 Press  or  of the meter control switch, select the "Vehicle Settings" screen and then press the .

- 6 Press  or  of the meter control switch, select the "TPMS" screen and then press and hold the  until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.

"- -" will be displayed for inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display while the tire pressure warning system determines the position of each tire.

When position of each tire is determined, the inflation pressure of each tire will be

displayed on the multi-information display.



- 7** Drive the vehicle at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes until the inflation pressure of each tire is displayed on the multi-information display.

If tire inflation pressure becomes low before the inflation pressure is displayed, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

Depending on the vehicle and driving conditions, initialization may take up to approximately 1 hour to complete.

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ If you press the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ Initialization procedure

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to restart the initialization again as initialization will restart automati-

cally when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.

- If you accidentally restart the initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.
- While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization may take longer to complete if the vehicle is driven on an unpaved road. When performing initialization, drive on a paved road if possible. Depending on the driving environment and condition of the tires, initialization will be completed in approximately 10 to 30 minutes. If initialization is not complete after driving approximately 10 to 30 minutes, continue driving for a while.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is not displayed after driving for approximately 1 hour, perform the following procedure.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes. Then drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

However, in the following situations, the tire inflation pressure will not be recorded and the system will not operate properly. Perform initialization again.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on while driving.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is still not displayed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING**■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

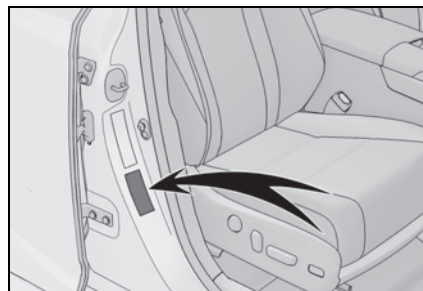
Tire-loading information label

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label on the driver's side pillar as shown.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

**■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure

may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.



WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires

- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)



NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on. If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ When replacing wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.472)



WARNING

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels. Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.



NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600

km (1000 miles).

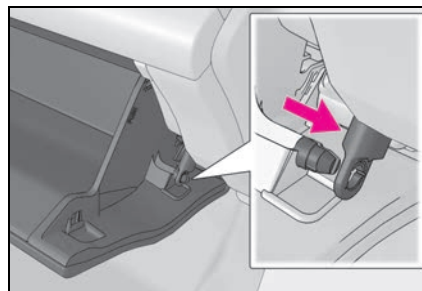
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

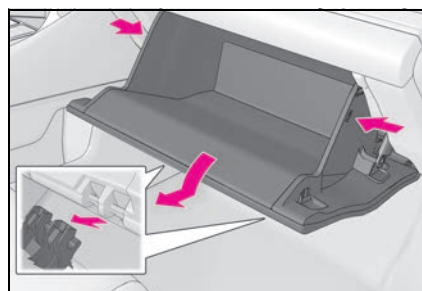
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

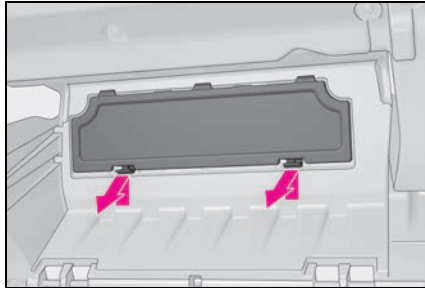
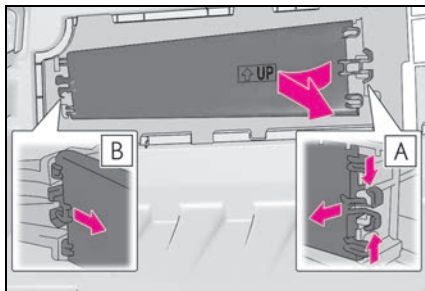
Removing the air conditioning filter

- 1** Turn the engine switch off.
- 2** Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

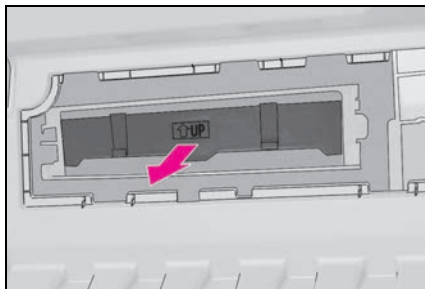


- 3** Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.



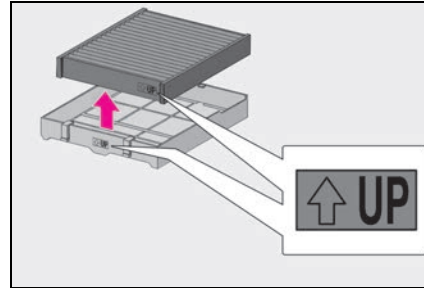
4 Remove the cover.**5** Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.**6** Remove the filter case.

There may be foreign objects on top of the air conditioning filter.

**7** Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑ UP" marks shown on the filter

and the filter case should be pointing up.

**■ Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period. When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning filter.

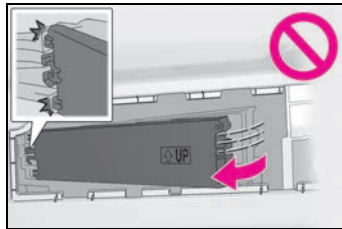
**NOTICE****■ When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

**NOTICE**

■ **To prevent damage to the filter cover**

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.

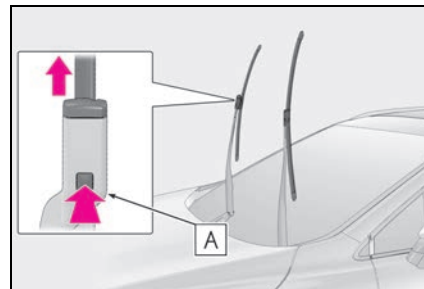


Windshield wiper inserts

Replacing a windshield wiper insert

- 1 Change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever and then lift a windshield wiper. (→P.258)
- 2 While pressing and holding the wiper blade lock release button, remove the wiper blade.

When performing this operation, make sure to hold the hook portion of the wiper arm securely.



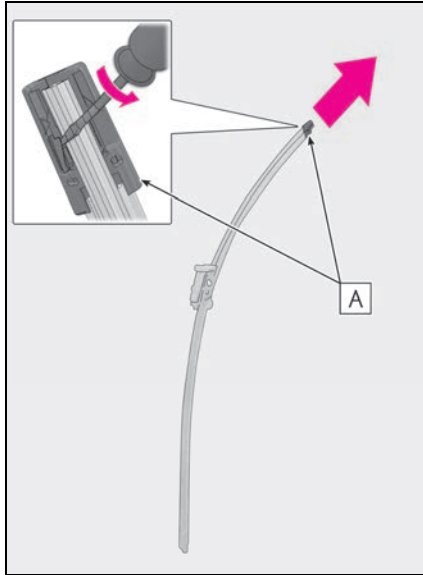
A Hook portion

- 3 While disengaging the cap lock, using a tool such as a flathead screwdriver if necessary, remove the wiper insert.

Hold the cap on the end of the wiper insert when removing the wiper insert. (The cap is integrated into the wiper insert.)

If using a screwdriver, make sure to wrap its

tip with tape to protect the wiper blade.



A Cap lock

4 Install a new wiper insert.

Make sure to push the wiper insert firmly until the cap lock is engaged.

After installation, check that the cap lock is locked securely.

5 Install the wiper blade to the wiper arm.

Make sure to push the wiper blade until it is locked.

When performing this operation, make sure to hold the hook portion of the wiper arm securely.

After installation, check that the wiper blade is locked securely.

6 After replacing the wiper inserts, place the windshield wipers on the windshield and lower them to the retracted position. (→P.259)

Do not drive the vehicle with the windshield wipers lifted.

■ Replacing the rear wiper insert

Have the rear wiper insert replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Handling of the windshield wiper blades and inserts

Improper handling of the windshield wiper blades and inserts may cause them to be damaged. If it is difficult to follow the wiper blade and insert replacement procedure precisely, contact your Lexus dealer.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

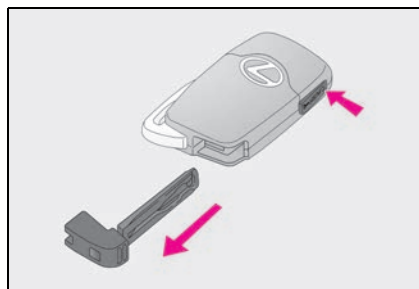
■ Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

Replacing the battery

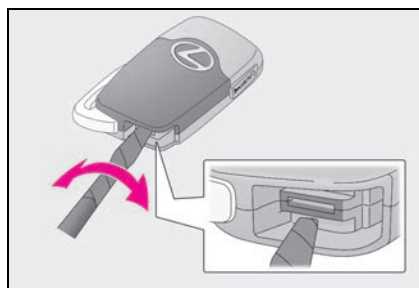
► Type A

1 Take out the mechanical key.

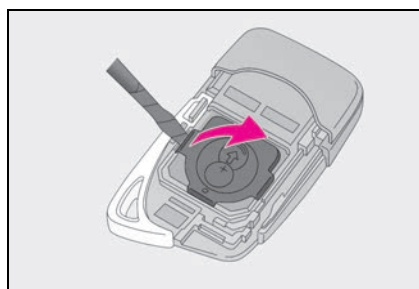


2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a tape.



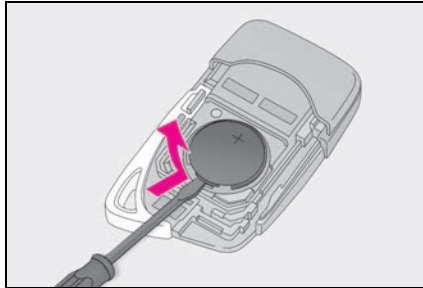
3 Remove the battery cover.



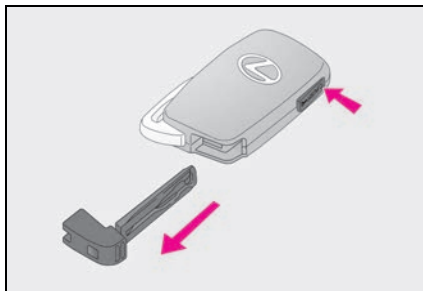
4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

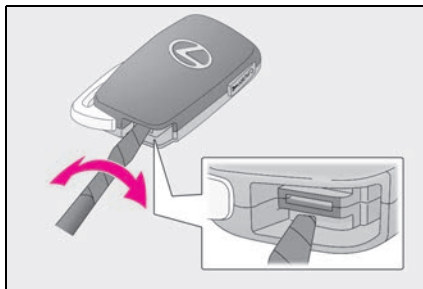
facing up.



► Type B

1 Take out the mechanical key.**2** Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a tape.

**3** Remove the depleted battery.

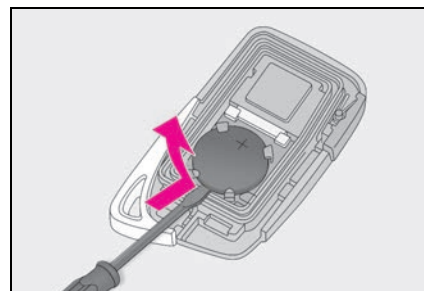
When removing the cover, the electronic key module may stick to the cover and the battery may not be visible. In this case, remove the electronic key module in order to remove the battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

facing up.



廢電池請回收。

**! WARNING****Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

! NOTICE**For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

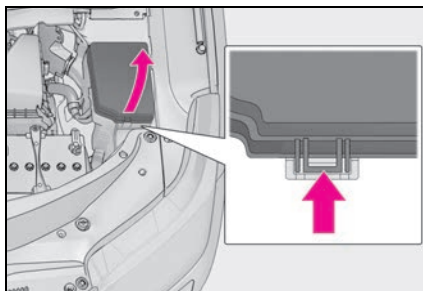
- Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

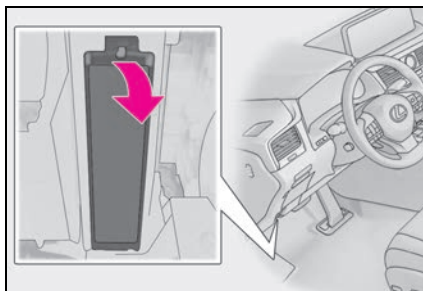
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Checking and replacing fuses

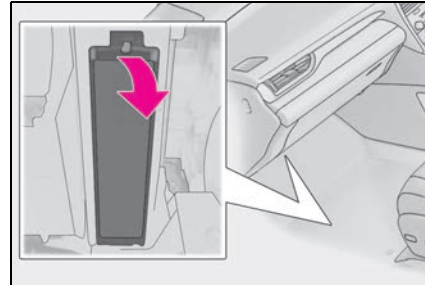
- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
- 2 Open the fuse box cover.
 - Engine compartment
 Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



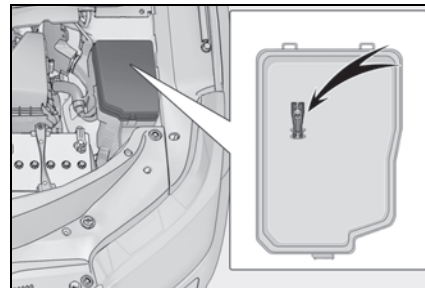
- Left side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)
- Remove the lid.



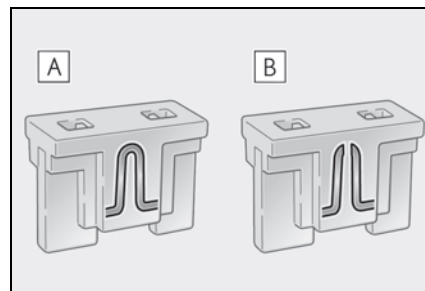
- Left side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)
- Remove the lid.



- 3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.
Only some fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.



- 4 Check if the fuse is blown.



- A Normal fuse
- B Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Many types of fuse are used on this vehicle.

This illustration shows a common type of fuse used on this vehicle.

- **After a fuse is replaced**
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.485)
 - If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- **If there is an overload in a circuit**
- The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.
- **When replacing light bulbs**
- Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

 **WARNING**

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

 **NOTICE**

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

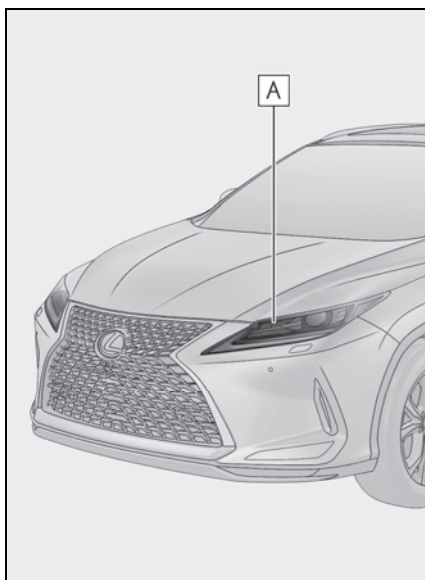
Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P.557)

Canceling the power back door system

→P.164

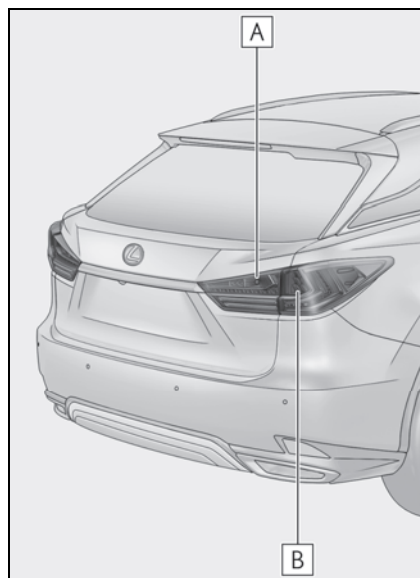
Bulb locations

■ Front



A Front turn signal light (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

■ Rear



A Back-up light (bulb type)

B Rear turn signal light (bulb type)

■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front turn signal lights (vehicles without single-beam headlights)
- Front fog lights (if equipped)
- Cornering lights (if equipped)
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop/tail lights
- Back-up lights (LED type)
- Rear turn signal light (LED type)

- Rear fog lights (if equipped)
- Rear side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Outer foot lights

■ LED Lights

The lights other than the front turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights), rear turn signal lights (bulb type) and back-up lights (bulb type) each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

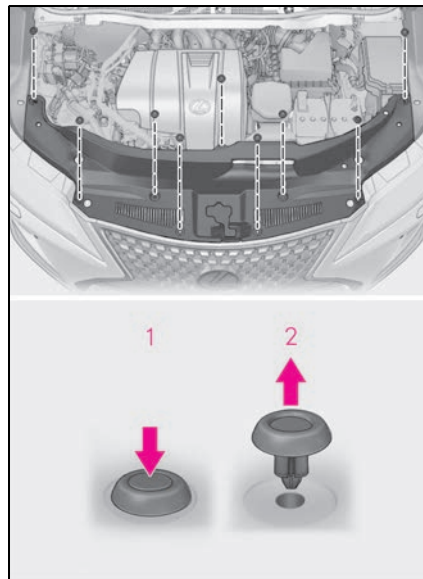
■ When replacing light bulbs

→P.485

Replacing light bulbs

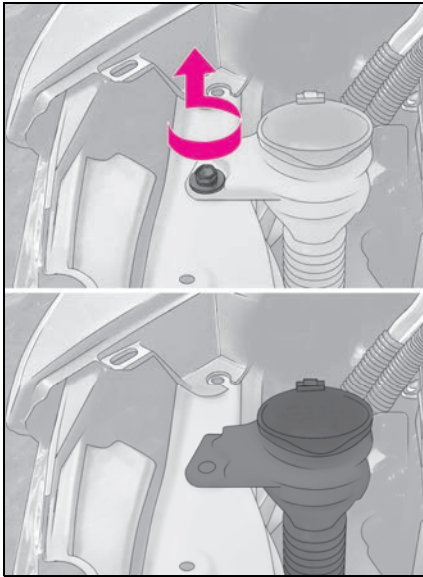
■ Front turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

- 1 Removing the engine compartment cover.

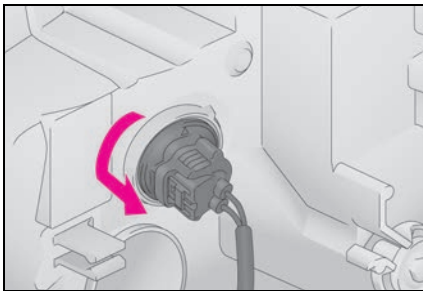


- 1 Push the center of the clip.
- 2 Remove the clip.

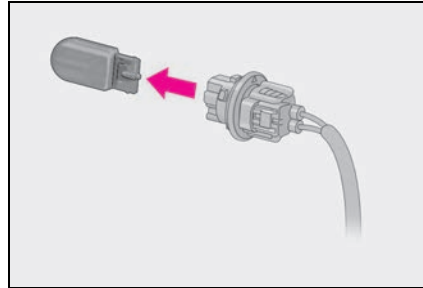
- 2** For the right side only: Remove the bolt, and move the washer fluid inlet.



- 3** Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

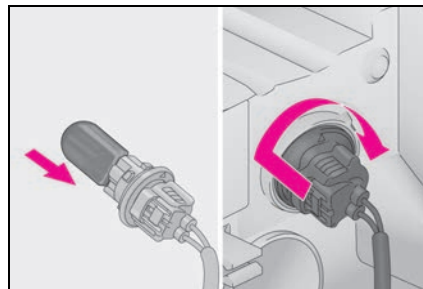


- 4** Remove the light bulb.

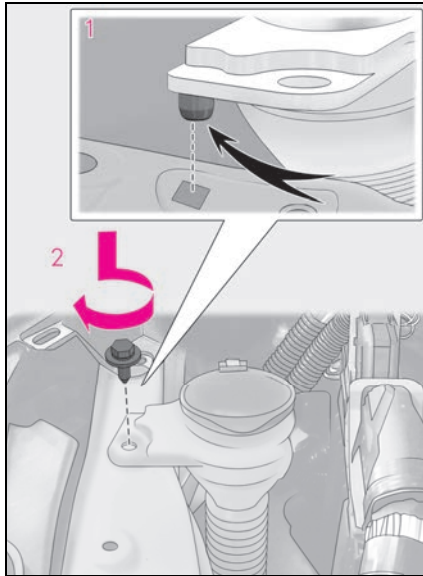


- 5** Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn the lights on to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.

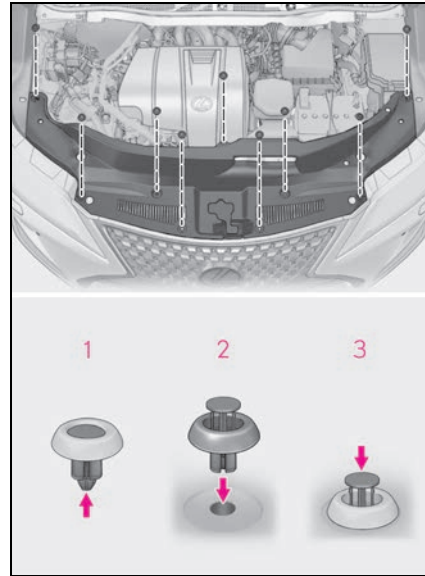


- 6** For the right side only: Fix the washer fluid inlet.



- 1** Align the tab position and install washer fluid inlet.
2 Fasten the bolt.

- 7** Install the engine compartment cover.

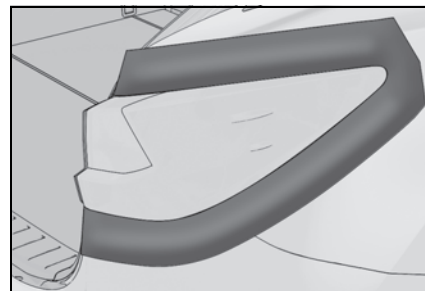


- 1** Push up center portion
2 Insert
3 Press

■ Rear turn signal lights (bulb type)

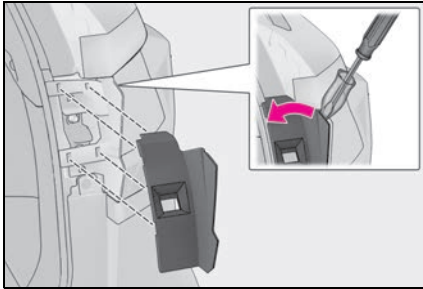
- 1** Open the back door and apply protective tape to the vehicle body around the taillight.

Use masking tape, etc. Do not use duct tape, as it may leave residue or damage the paint when removed.

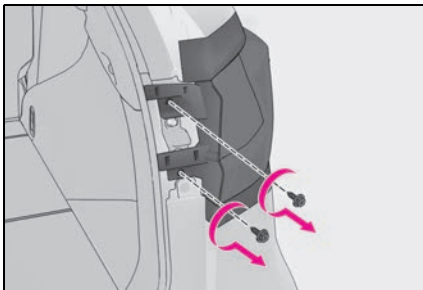


- 2** Using a flathead screwdriver, remove the cover.

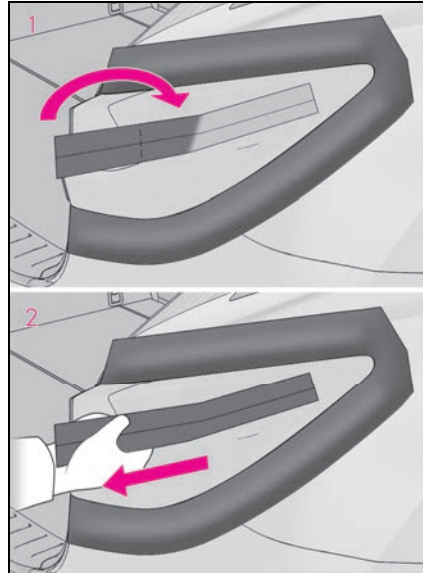
To prevent scratching the vehicle, wrap the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a cloth, etc.



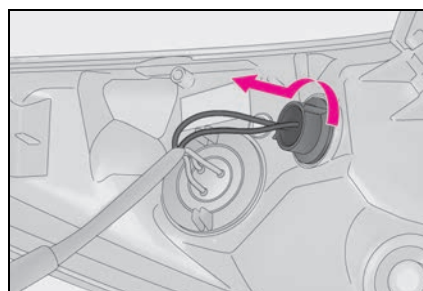
- 3** Remove the 2 screws.

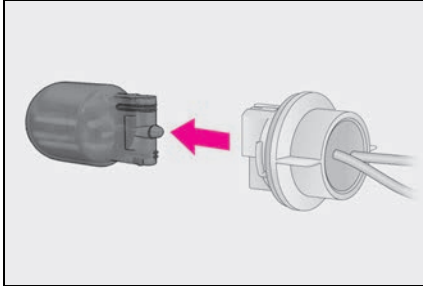


- 4** Remove the taillight unit.

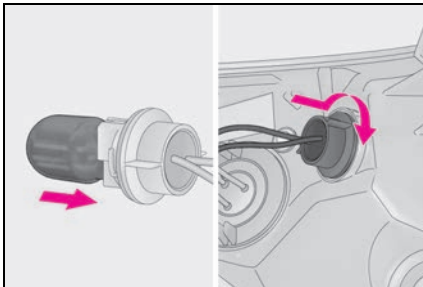


- 1** Attach 2 long pieces of masking tape to the taillight unit and fold the excess in half.
- 2** Hold the folded portion and pull it toward the rear of the vehicle to remove the light unit.
- 5** Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

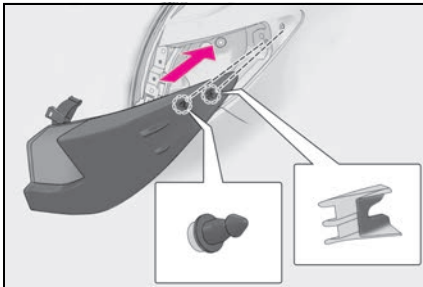
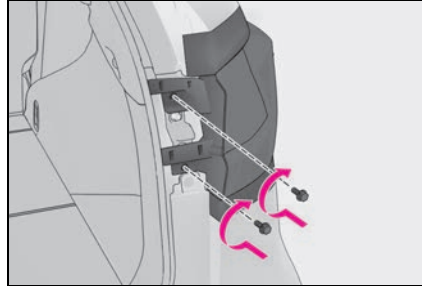
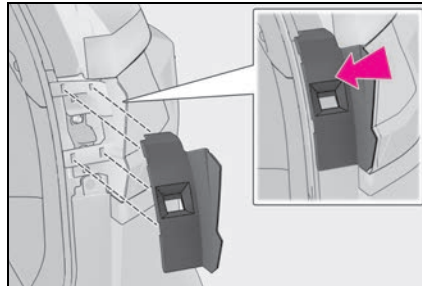


6 Remove the light bulb.**7** Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn on the rear turn signal lights to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.

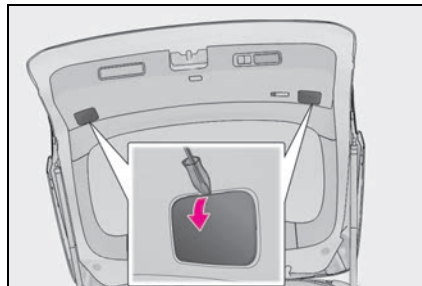
**8** Install the light unit.

Align the tabs and push the light unit toward the front of the vehicle to install it.

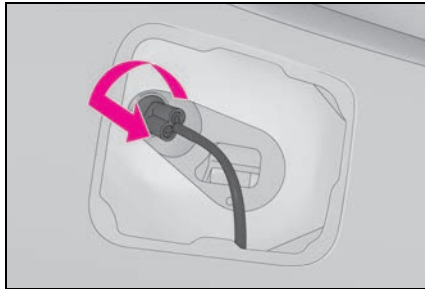
**9** Install the 2 screws.**10** Install the cover.**11** Remove the protective tape.**Back-up lights (bulb type)****1** Open the back door and remove the cover.

Using a flathead screwdriver, remove the cover.

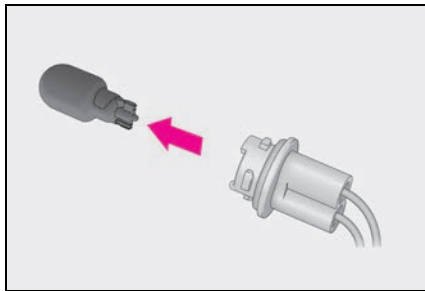
To prevent scratching to the vehicle, wrap the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a cloth, etc.



- 2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.

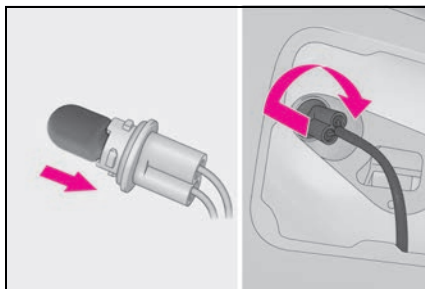


- 3 Remove the light bulb.



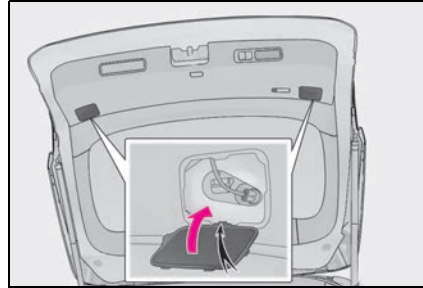
- 4 Install a new light bulb and then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning it clockwise.

After installing the bulb base, wiggle it lightly to make sure it is securely installed and turn on the back-up lights to visually check that there is no light leaking from between the bulb base and light unit.



- 5 Install the cover.

Align the tabs of the cover with the grooves and install the cover.



⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent injury

Before performing any light bulb replacement procedure, be sure to turn the engine switch off. Failure to do so may result in burns from hot components or a part of your body may get caught on an operating component, possibly causing serious injury.

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights. The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb. Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

**WARNING**

- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble the light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts. Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.
- **To prevent damage or fire**
- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

When trouble arises

7

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 496

If your vehicle has to be stopped in
an emergency 496If the vehicle is trapped in rising
water 497

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed
..... 499If you think something is wrong
..... 503

Fuel pump shut off system 504

If a warning light turns on or a
warning buzzer sounds 505If a warning message is displayed
..... 514

If you have a flat tire 517

If the engine will not start 531

If you lose your keys 533

If the fuel filler door cannot be
opened 533If the electronic key does not
operate properly 534If the vehicle battery is discharged
..... 537

If your vehicle overheats 541

If the vehicle becomes stuck
..... 544

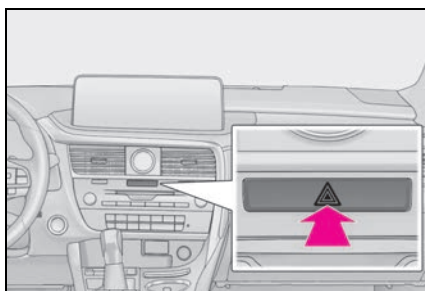
Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped on the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically. The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

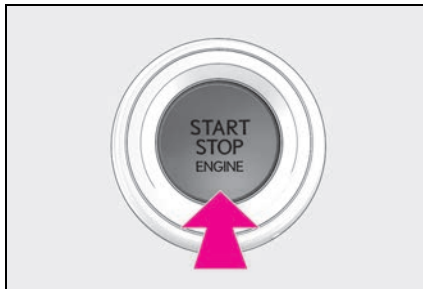
Stopping the vehicle

- 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

- 2 Shift the shift lever to N.
 - ▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N
- 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.
- 4 Stop the engine.
 - ▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N
- 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.
- 4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



- 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

! WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water

In the event the vehicle is submerged in water, remain calm and perform the following.

- Remove the seat belt first.
- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the window can not be opened using the power window switch, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle, and then open the door and exit the vehicle.

! WARNING

■ Using an emergency hammer* for emergency escape

The rear side windows and rear window of this vehicle can be shattered by an emergency hammer* used for emergency escape, however, since the windshield and front side windows are laminated glass they can not be shattered by an emergency hammer*.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

**WARNING****■ Escaping the vehicle from the window**

There are cases where escaping the vehicle from the window is not possible due to seating position, passenger body type, etc.

When using an emergency hammer, consider your seat location and the size of the window opening to ensure that the opening is accessible and large enough to escape.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P.501)

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P.501)

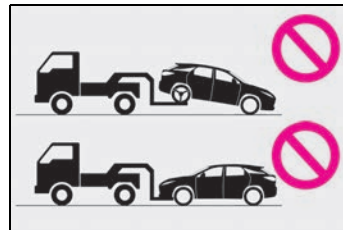
WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When towing the vehicle

► 2WD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.



► AWD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.



While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not turn the engine switch off. There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing**

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

■ **When towing a vehicle equipped with a Stop & Start system (if equipped)**

If it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 wheels on the ground, perform the following procedure before towing the vehicle, in order to protect the system. Turn the engine switch off and then start the engine or turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

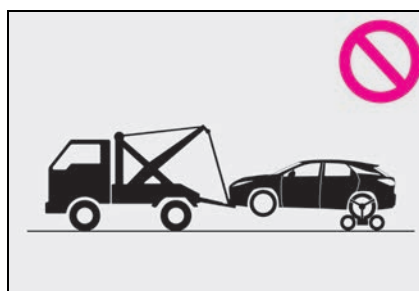
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

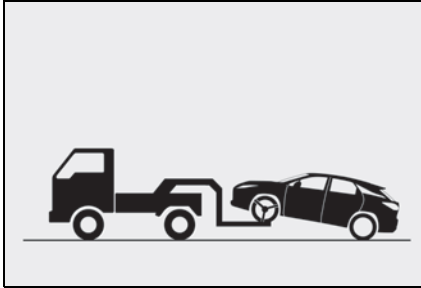
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



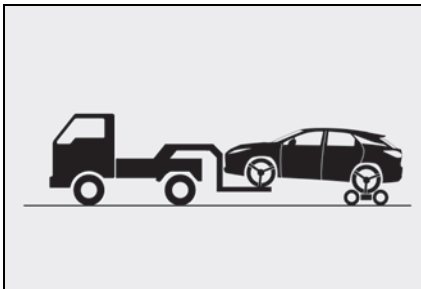
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

- From the front (2WD models)



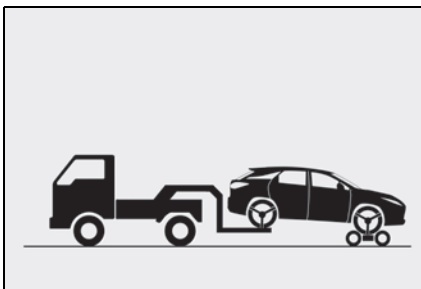
Release the parking brake.

- From the front (AWD models)



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

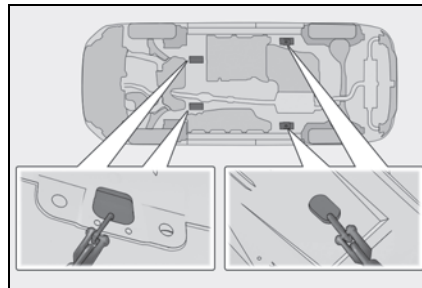
- From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

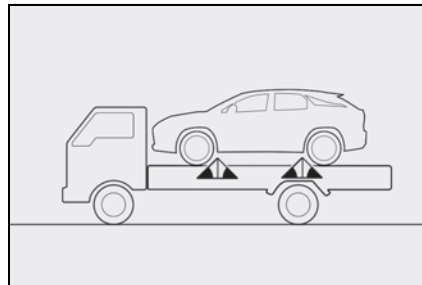
Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing

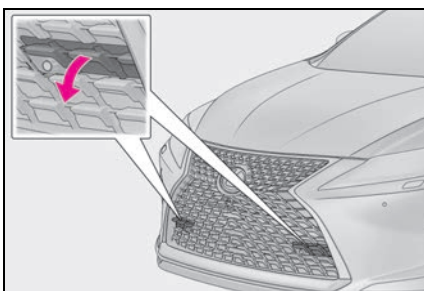
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph). A driver must be in the vehicle to steer

and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

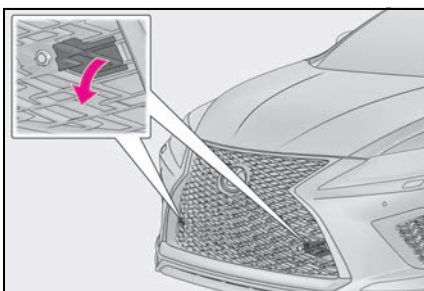
Emergency towing procedure

To have your vehicle towed by another vehicle, the towing eyelet must be installed to your vehicle. Install the towing eyelet using the following procedure.

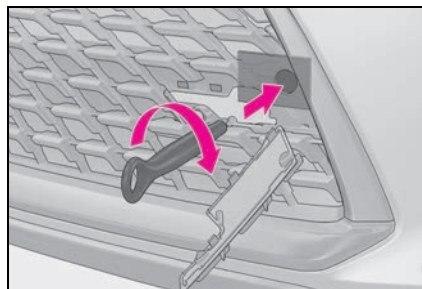
- 1** Take out the towing eyelet. (→P.518)
- 2** Remove the eyelet cover.
- ▶ Except F SPORT models



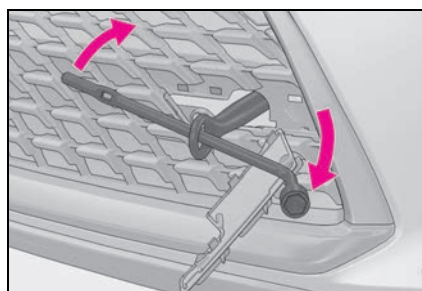
- ▶ F SPORT models



- 3** Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



- 4** Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench or hard metal bar.



- 5** Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

- 6** Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

- 7** Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

When the shift lever cannot be shifted:
→P.234

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel nut wrench

Wheel nut wrench is installed in luggage compartment. (→P.518)

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side

when braking

- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

- 1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.
- 2 Restart the engine.



NOTICE

Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

■ Brake system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.541)

* : This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Charging system warning light*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

* : Except F SPORT models: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.
F SPORT models: This light illuminates on the meter.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

* : This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronic engine control system; ● The electronic throttle control system; or ● The electronic automatic transmission control system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ ABS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Brake Override System warning light/Drive-Start Control warning light^{*} (warning buzzer)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: ● Brake Override System is malfunctioning; ● Drive-Start Control is operating; ● Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning; or ● PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped) is operating → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. When a buzzer does not sound: Brake Override System is operating → Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.

^{*}: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red) or  (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Low fuel level warning light**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.8 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less → Refuel the vehicle.

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)^{*1}

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → Fasten the seat belt. If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.

^{*1}: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

- For GCC countries ^{*2}, Iraq, Egypt, Jordan, Lebanon, Syria and Yemen

The driver's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

The front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

- Except for GCC countries ^{*2}, Iraq, Egypt, Jordan, Lebanon, Syria and Yemen

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

^{*2}: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light ^{*1}(warning buzzer) ^{*2}

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (if equipped)	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → Fasten the seat belt.

^{*1}: This light illuminates on the center panel.

^{*2}: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches

a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (if equipped)	Indicates the following: ● Low tire pressure due to flat tire; ● Low tire pressure due to natural causes; or ● The tire pressure warning system is malfunctioning → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.512)

■ LTA indicator/LDA indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (orange) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.294)

■ Stop & Start cancel indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Stop & Start system (The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on when the system is canceled: →P.315) → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor function → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.334)

■ RCTA OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. Indicates that the rear bumper around the radar sensor is covered with dirt, etc. (→P.326) → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.340)

■ PKSB OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.348, 514)

■ PCS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes or illuminates) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.268, 516) If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → P.277

■ Slip indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the warning light is illuminated: Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC system; ● The TRC system; or ● The hill-start assist control system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. When the warning light flashes: Indicates that the VSC or TRC system is operating

■ Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released → Operate the parking brake switch once again. This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.

■ Brake hold operated indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Master warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.514

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.

- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Inspect the tires to check if a tire is punctured.

If a tire is punctured: →P.517

If none of the tires are punctured:
Turn the engine switch off then turn it to IGNITION ON mode. Check if the tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks.

- ▶ If the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on

There may be a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- ▶ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

- 1 After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.
- 2 If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, check that the inflation pressure of each tire is at the specified level and perform initialization. (→P.473)

If the warning light does not turn off several minutes after the initialization has been performed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Vehicles with a compact spare tire: The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: The spare tire is also equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

→P.467

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized.
(→P.559)

**WARNING****■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy.

When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

Be sure to observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking.
If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

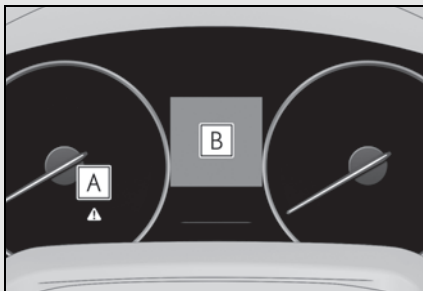
**NOTICE****■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

Except F SPORT models:



A Master warning light

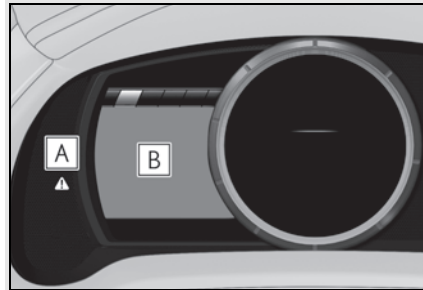
The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

F SPORT models:



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The master warning light and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	Warning buzzer *	Warning
Comes on	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
Flashes	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

- In some situations, the master warning light and warning buzzer may not operate as specified. In this case, follow the instructions displayed in the warning message.
- If a warning light comes on or flashes at the same time that a warning message is displayed, take corrective action according to the warning light. (→P.505)

* : A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

■ If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is displayed

Message is displayed when the driver's

door is opened without turning the engine switch off with the shift lever in any position other than P.

Shift the shift lever to P.

■ If "Power Turned Off to Save Battery" is displayed

This message is displayed when the power was cut off due to the automatic power off function. The next time the engine is started, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain it at that speed for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

■ If “AWD System Overheated Switching to 2WD Mode” or “AWD System Overheated 2WD Mode Engaged” is displayed (AWD models)

This message may be displayed when driving under extremely high load conditions.

Drive the vehicle at low speeds or stop the vehicle in a safe place with the engine running until the message is cleared.

If the message is not cleared, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If “Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer” is displayed

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

■ If “Radar Cruise Control Unavailable See Owner’s Manual” is displayed (if equipped)

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system or dynamic radar cruise control system is suspended temporarily or until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (causes and coping methods: →P.268)

■ If “Radar Cruise Control Unavailable” is displayed (if equipped)

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system or dynamic radar cruise control system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ If “Front Camera Unavailable” or “Front Camera Unavailable See Owner’s Manual” is displayed

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.268, 510)

- PCS (Pre-Collision system) (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)

- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)

- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)

- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)

- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

■ If “Check Fuel Cap” is displayed (if equipped)

The fuel tank cap is not properly installed. Correctly install the fuel tank cap.

■ If “Oil Maintenance Required Soon” is displayed (if equipped)

Indicates that the engine oil should be scheduled to be changed.

Check the engine oil and change it if necessary. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.458)

■ If “Oil Maintenance Required” is displayed (if equipped)

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed.

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.458)

■ If “Speed Limit Exceeded” is displayed (if equipped)

Indicates that vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 120 km/h (75 mph).

The buzzer will stop sounding after 6 seconds or if you decelerate below 120 km/h (75 mph). (The warning message will remain displayed.)

Reduce your vehicle speed.

■ If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is displayed

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is displayed

- "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions. (→P.541)
- "Exhaust Filter Full" is shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions. (→P.363)
- "Transmission Fluid Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display, the automatic transmission fluid temperature may be too high. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P with the engine running and wait until the message is cleared. If the message is not cleared, contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the following message is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
 - "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction"
- If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.
 - "Braking Power Low"
 - "Charging System Malfunction"
 - "Oil Pressure Low"



NOTICE

■ If "High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is displayed frequently

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: →P.464



WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

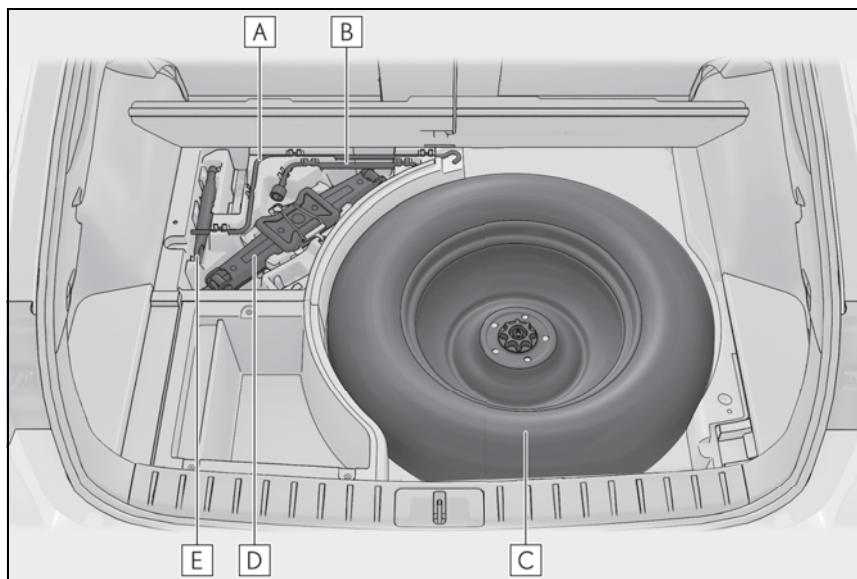
Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.496)

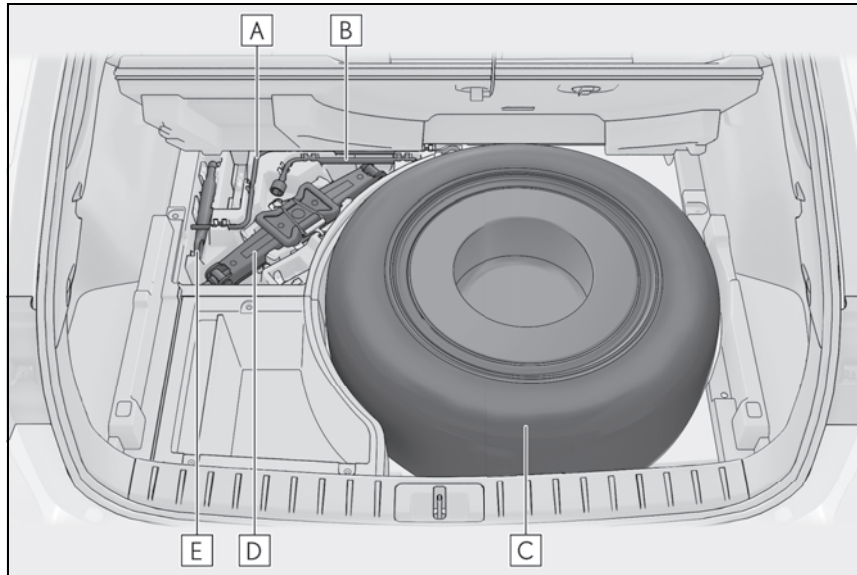
Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

► Type A



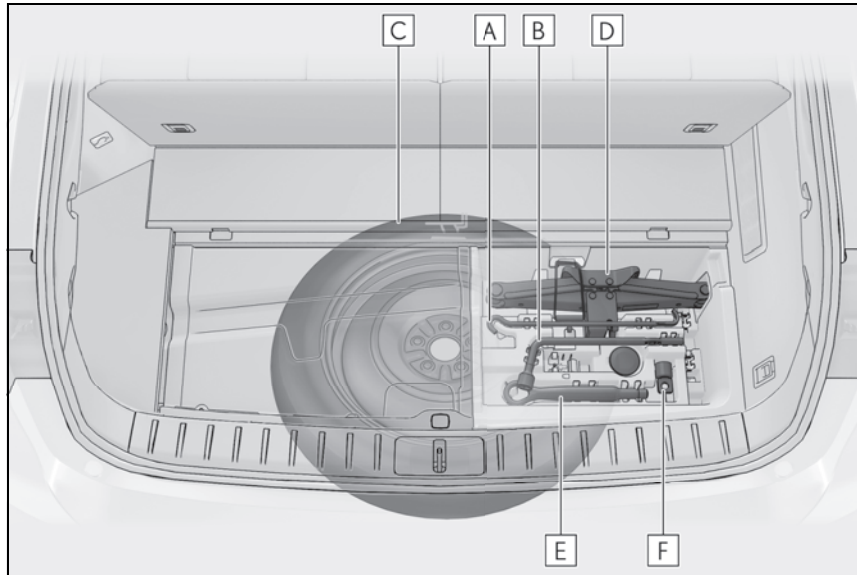
- A** Jack handle
- B** Wheel nut wrench
- C** Spare tire
- D** Jack
- E** Towing eyelet

► Type B



- A** Jack handle
- B** Wheel nut wrench
- C** Spare tire
- D** Jack
- E** Towing eyelet

► Type C



- A** Jack handle
- B** Wheel nut wrench
- C** Spare tire
- D** Jack
- E** Towing eyelet
- F** Adapter socket

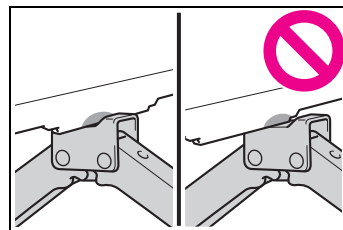
⚠ WARNING

■ **Using the tire jack**

Observe the following precautions. Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.

- Put the jack properly in its jack point.



- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.

! WARNING

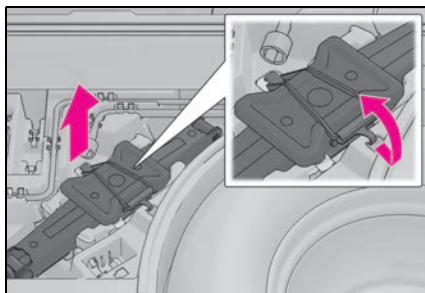
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

- 1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P.413)
- 2 Disengage the hook and take out the jack.

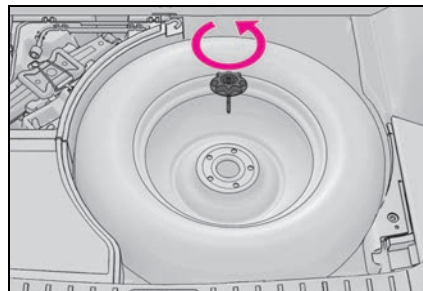
Type A and B: Remove the wheel nut wrench and then the jack.

Type C: Remove the jack handle and then the jack.

**Taking out the spare tire**

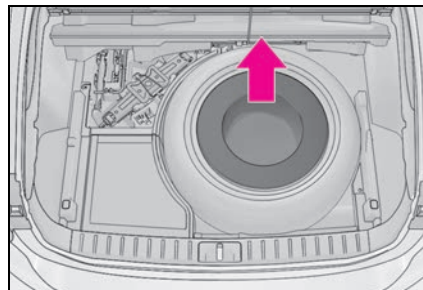
► Type A

- 1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P.413)
- 2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



► Type B

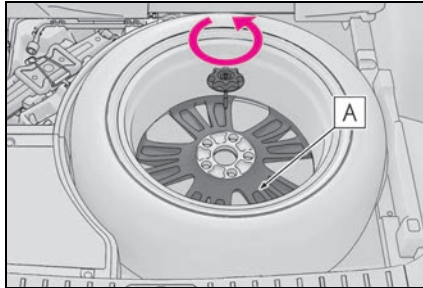
- 1 Secure the deck board using the hook. (→P.413)
- 2 Remove the spare tire cover.



- 3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

When taking out the spare tire, wear working gloves, firmly hold the spokes, and take

out the tire with the proper posture.

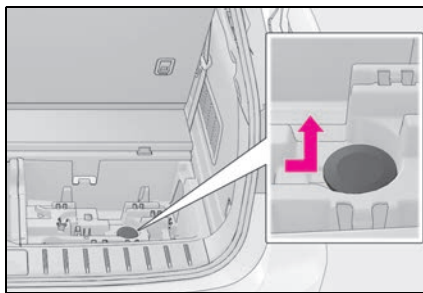


A Spokes

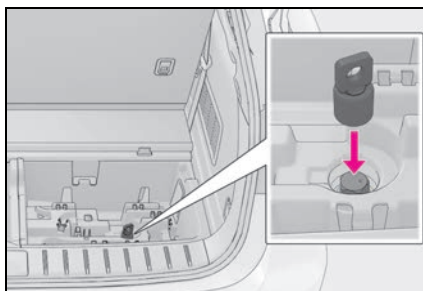
► Type C

1 Remove the deck board.

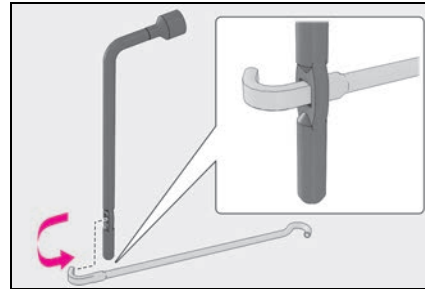
2 Remove the cover.



3 Attach the adapter socket to the spare tire clamp bolt.



4 Assemble the jack handle extension.

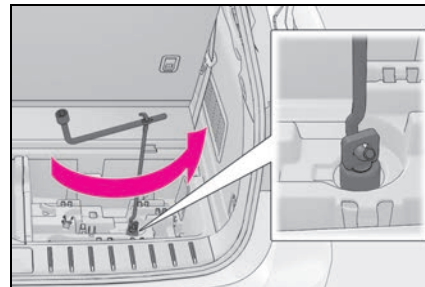


5 Connect the jack handle to the adapter socket. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise.

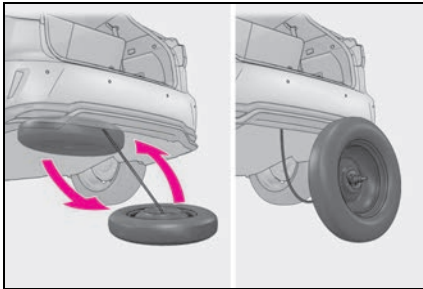
The tire will be lowered completely to the ground.

Turn the jack handle slowly to lower the spare tire. If the handle is turned quickly, the wire cable may come off the shaft inside the unit and the tire may not be lowered.

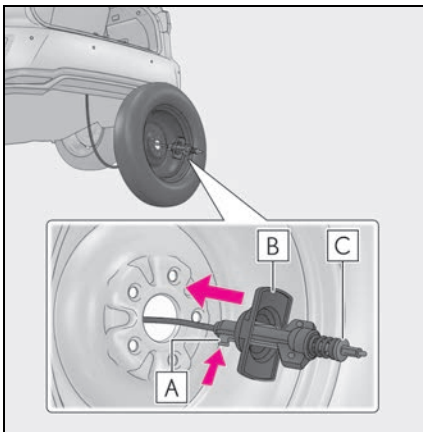
If the spare tire cannot be lowered:
→P.524



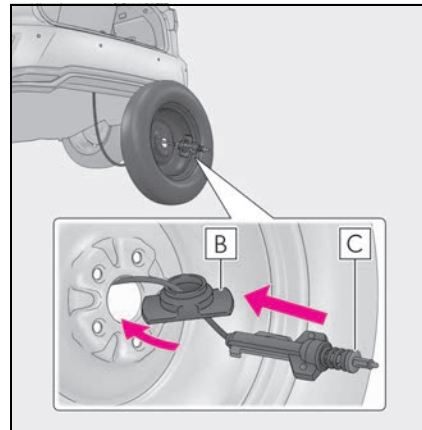
- 6 Pull out the spare tire and stand it against the bumper.



- 7 Fully depress the secondary latch **A** and remove the holding bracket **B** from the hoist assembly **C**.



- 8 Tilt the bracket **B** and pass it through the wheel opening. Then remove the hoist assembly **C**.



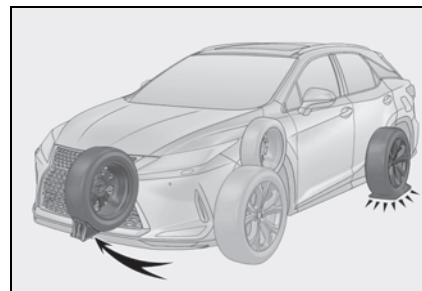
⚠ WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

Replacing a flat tire

- 1 Chock the tires.

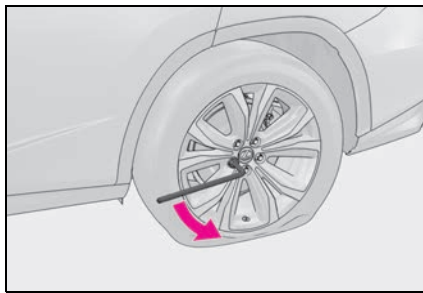


7

When trouble arises

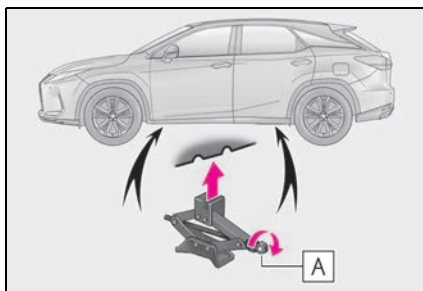
Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

- 2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

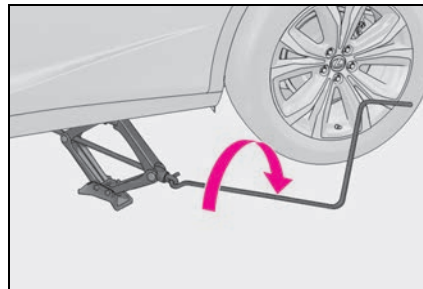


- 3 Turn the tire jack portion **A** by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

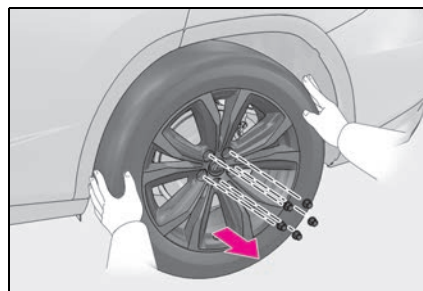


- 4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

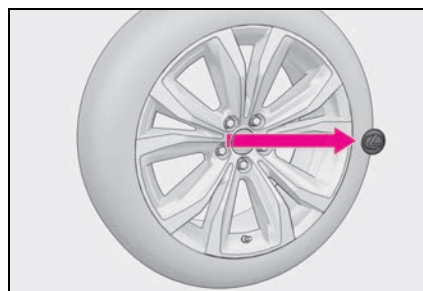


- 5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



- 6 Type B: Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.

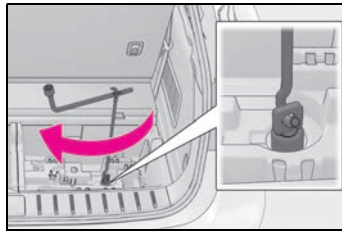


- If the spare tire cannot be lowered (Type C)

If the spare tire cannot be lowered, it may

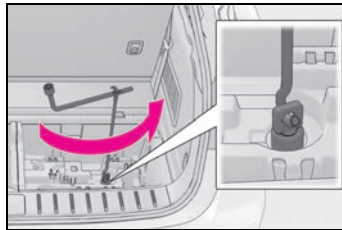
not have been stowed properly. Perform the following procedure:

- 1 Fully tighten the spare tire clamp bolt by turning the jack handle clockwise until two clicks are heard and the jack handle skips.



- 2 Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the spare tire.

If the spare tire still cannot be lowered, attempt to fully tighten the spare tire clamp bolt again by turning the jack handle clockwise. Then turn it counterclockwise at least 2 turns to lower the spare tire.



If the spare tire still cannot be lowered, the wire cable may be severed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
 - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- Observe the following precautions. (Type C) Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
 - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

- Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.

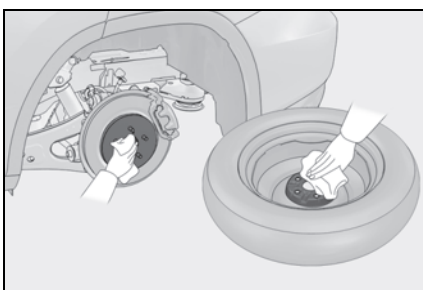
■ Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to cancel the power back door system (→P.559). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

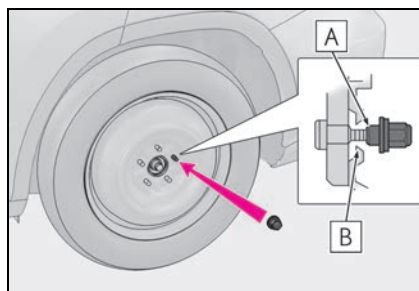
Installing the spare tire

- 1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



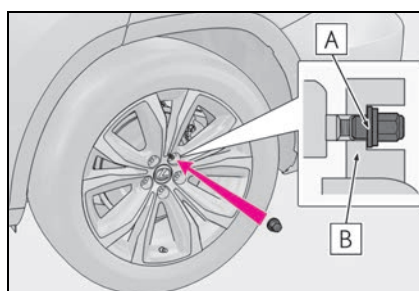
- 2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

► Vehicles with a compact spare tire**A** Tapered portion**B** Disc wheel seat

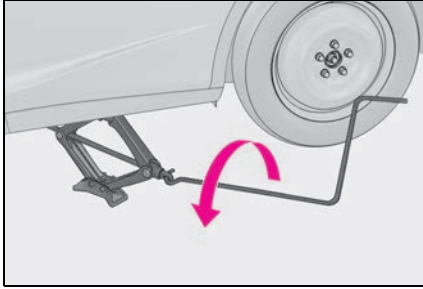
Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

► Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

Turn the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.

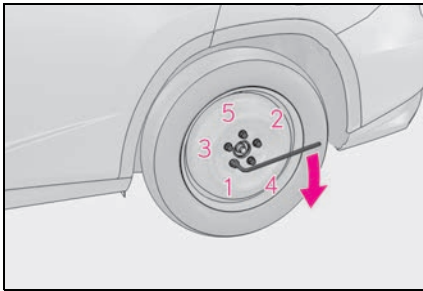
**A** Washer**B** Disc wheel

- 3** Lower the vehicle.

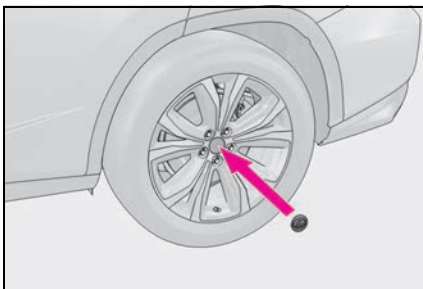


- 4** Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



- 5** Type B: Reinstall the wheel ornament.



- 6** Type A and B: Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.
Type C: →P.527

⚠ WARNING

■ Stowing the flat tire

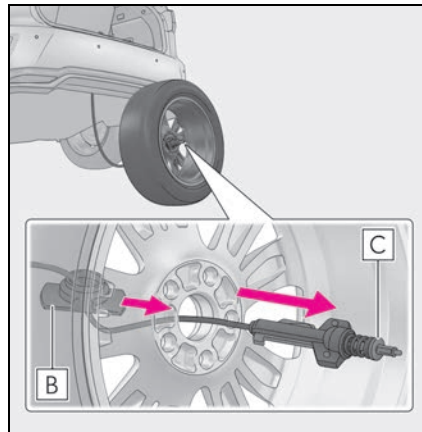
Failure to follow steps listed under stowing the tire may result in damage to the spare tire carrier and loss of the tire, which could result in serious injury or death.

Stowing the flat tire, jack and all tools (Type C)

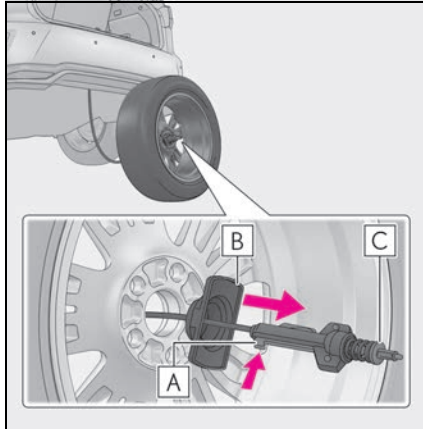
- 1** Remove the center wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.

Be careful not to lose the wheel ornament.

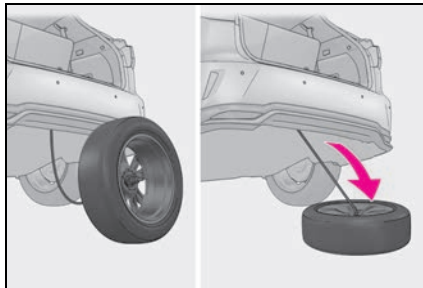
- 2** Stand the tire against the bumper with the inner surface facing toward you. Pass the hoist assembly **C** and holding bracket **B** through the wheel opening.



- 3** Fully depress the secondary latch **A** and install the bracket **B** to the hoist assembly **C**.

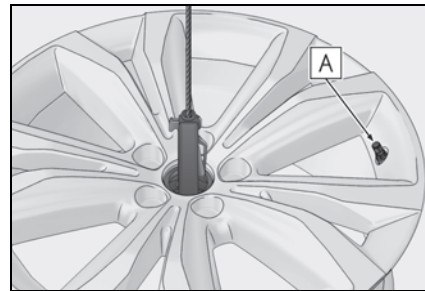


- 4** Lay the tire on the ground with the outer surface (valve stem) facing up.



- 5** Before raising the tire, make sure that the hoist assembly is perpendicular to the wheel opening. (Try to place the tire directly beneath the

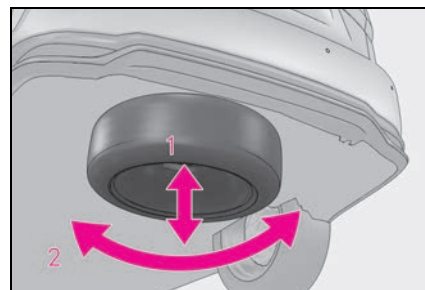
vehicle, near where the wire cable is hanging from.)



- A** Valve stem

- 6** Using the jack handle and adapter socket, tighten the tire clamp bolt by turning it clockwise until the tire is in the correct position and two clicks are heard as the jack handle skips.

- 7** Confirm it is not loose after tightening:



- 1** Push and pull the tire
2 Try rotating

Visually check to ensure tire is not hung on surrounding parts.
If looseness or misassembly exists, repeat steps **2** to **7**.

- 8** Repeat step **7**, any time the tire is lowered or disturbed.
9 Stow the jack and all tools.

■ **The compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall. Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P.554, 556)

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire and the tire pressure warning system)**

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **When the compact spare tire is equipped (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

When driving with the compact spare tire installed, the vehicle height will be different than when driving with standard tires.

■ **If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

- 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
- 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.



WARNING

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■ **When the compact spare tire is attached (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- EPS
- VDIM (if equipped)
- AVS (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)



WARNING

- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Panoramic view monitor (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (AWD models)

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.



NOTICE

■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire. Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ When replacing the tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ When stowing the flat tire (Type C)

- Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.
- Securely tighten the spare tire clamp bolt to hold the spare wheel carrier by the hook.
- Stow the flat tire in the spare tire location. Failure to do so may cause damage to the spare tire carrier. Proper storage reduces the possibility of injury in a collision or during sudden braking.
- Have the flat tire repaired and the spare tire replaced with it as soon as possible.



NOTICE

■ **Proper storage of the spare tire (Type C)**

- If the hoist assembly is slanted when stowing a tire, the hoist assembly may become stuck in the wheel opening and the tire may not be raised properly, causing damage to the wheel or the wire cable.



- Do not attempt to turn the spare tire clamp bolt without a tire on the hoist assembly, as doing so may cause the wire cable to slip off of the shaft inside the unit and the wire cable may not be able to be raised or lowered. If the spare tire clamp bolt has been turned without a tire on the hoist assembly and the wire cable cannot be raised or lowered, contact your Lexus dealer.

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.229), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.229)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.106)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.537)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.460)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.532)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.460)
- The battery may be discharged. (→P.537)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the engine in an emergency

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally.

Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

- 1** Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and check that the parking brake is set. (→P.231, 239)
- 2** Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3** Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
- 4** Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

**NOTICE****■ When an electronic key is lost**

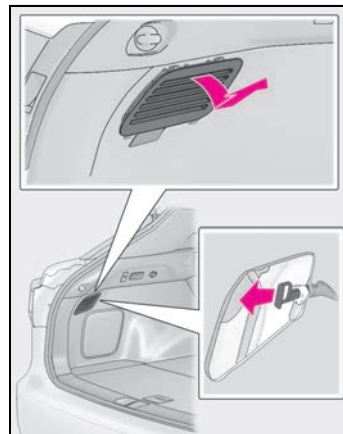
If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key (if equipped) that were provided with your vehicle.

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle. In case where refueling is urgently necessary, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

Opening the fuel filler door**► RX300/RX350**

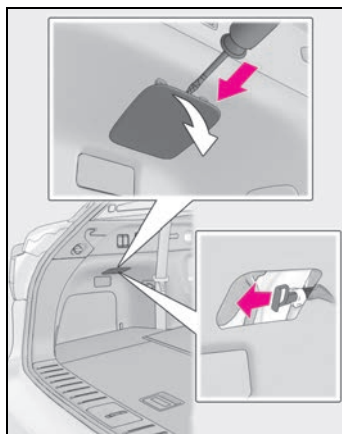
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing the rear edge of the fuel filler door with the doors unlocked, remove the cover inside the luggage compartment and pull the lever to open the fuel filler door.

**► RX350L**

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing its rear edge with the doors unlocked, remove the cover inside the luggage compartment using a tool,

such as a flathead screwdriver, and pull the lever to open the fuel filler door.

When using a screwdriver, make sure to wrap its tip with tape to protect the cover.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.168) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

- When the electronic key does not work properly
- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been disabled using the Remote Touch or at your Lexus dealer. If it has been disabled, re-enable it.
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.167)



NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

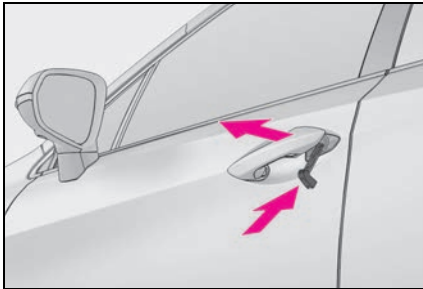
Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Locking and unlocking the doors

■ Unlocking the door

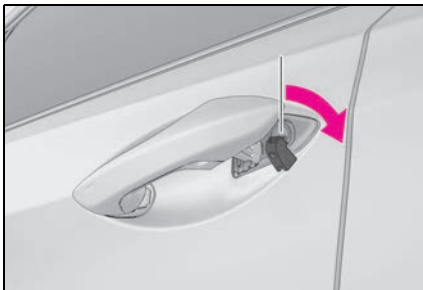
Use the mechanical key (→P.145) in order to perform the following operations:

- 1 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



- 2 Unlock the door.

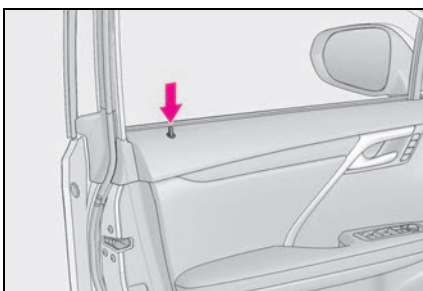
Some models: Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key again unlocks the other doors.



- 3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

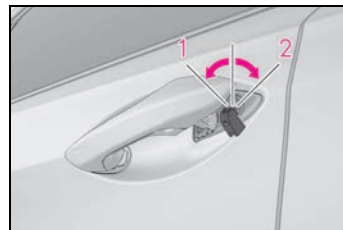
■ Locking the door

- 1 With the door open, push down the inside lock button.



- For the front doors
- 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.
- For the rear doors
- 2 Close the door.

■ Key linked functions



- 1 Closes the windows and the moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)
- 2 Opens the windows and the moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)

These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

* : If equipped

⚠ WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof

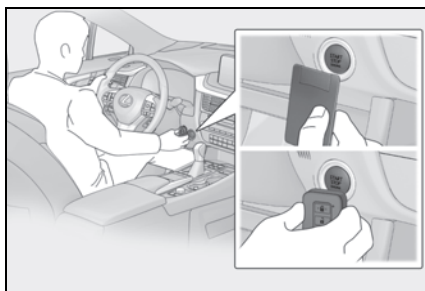
Operate the power window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Starting the engine

- 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.
- 2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.



- 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.
- 4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake, and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.482)

Alarm (For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia)

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P.110)

Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above. The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.231)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

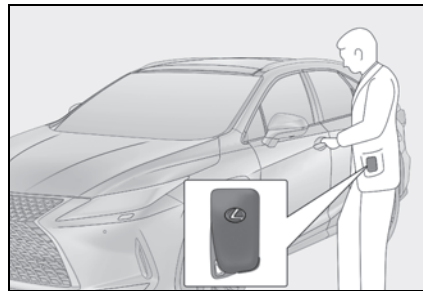
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged. You can also call your Lexus dealer.

Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

- 1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

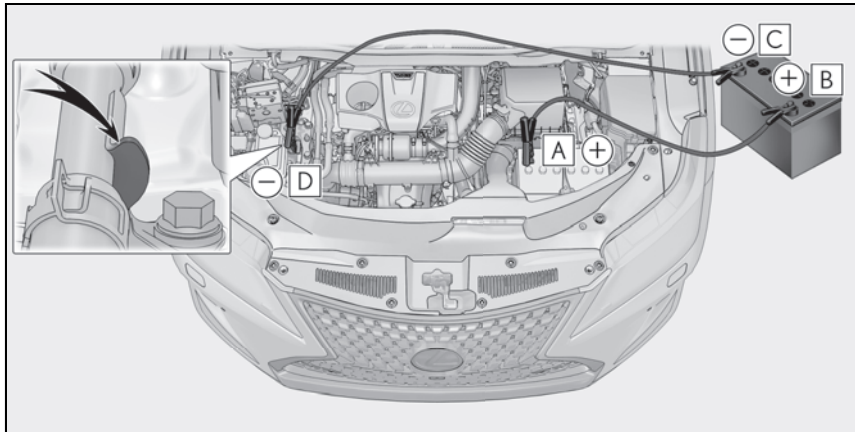
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked. (→P.111)



- 2 Open the hood. (→P.453)

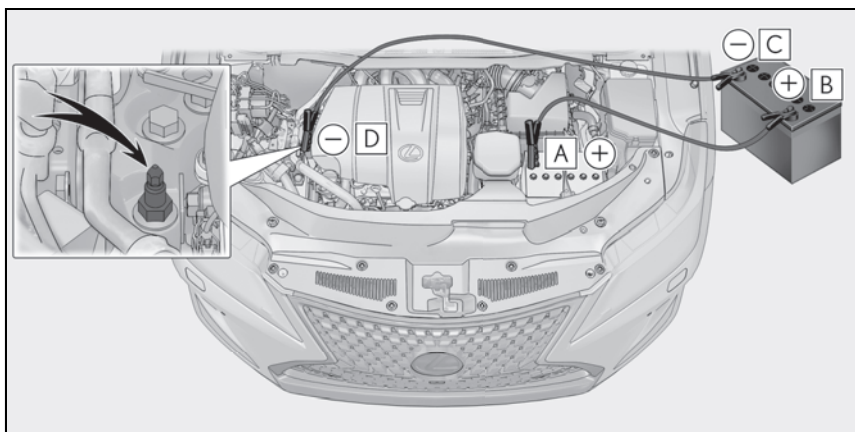
- 3 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to **A** on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to **B** on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to **C** on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to **D**.

► RX300



- A** Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)
- B** Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- C** Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- D** Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

► RX350/RX350L



- A** Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)
- B** Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- C** Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- D** Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

ing parts as shown in the illustration

- 4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.
- 5 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.
- 6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 7 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is stopped. (Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: Except when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system.)
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ When removing the battery terminals

When the battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is

cleared. Before removing the battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ When the battery is removed or discharged

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
 - The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
 - The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off. If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
 - Vehicles with power back door: The power back door must be initialized. (→P.161)
 - Vehicles with a Stop & Start system: After the battery terminals have been disconnected then reconnected or the battery has been replaced, the Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for approximately 5 to 60 minutes.
- #### ■ Replacing the battery
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Use a genuine battery specifically designed for use with the Stop & Start system or a bat-

tery with equivalent specifications to a genuine battery. If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery. Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

- Use a battery with the same case size as the previous battery and an equivalent 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) or greater.
- If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
- If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the battery may discharge and the engine may not be able to start.
- For details, consult your Lexus dealer.



WARNING

■ When removing the battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.

- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.

- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

■ When replacing the battery

- When the vent plug and indicator are close to the hold down clamp, the battery fluid (sulfuric acid) may leak.
- For information regarding battery replacement, contact your Lexus dealer.



NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

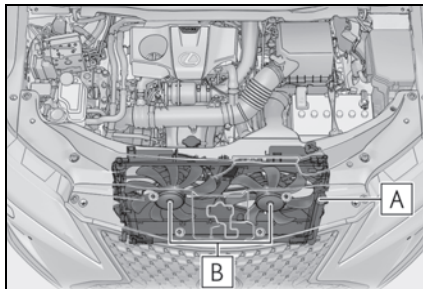
If your vehicle overheats**The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.**

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.121) enters the red zone, or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- “Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner’s Manual” is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

- 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.
- 2** If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.
- 3** After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and

radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

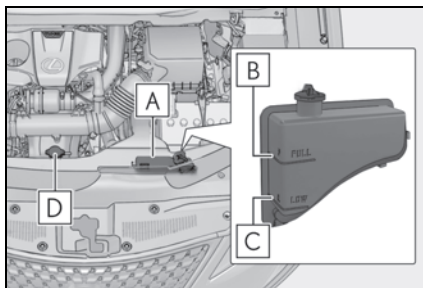


- A** Radiator
- B** Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

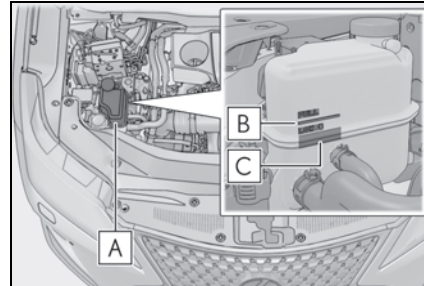
- 4** The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir.

► Engine



- A** Reservoir
- B** "FULL" line
- C** "LOW" line
- D** Radiator cap

► Intercooler (RX300 only)

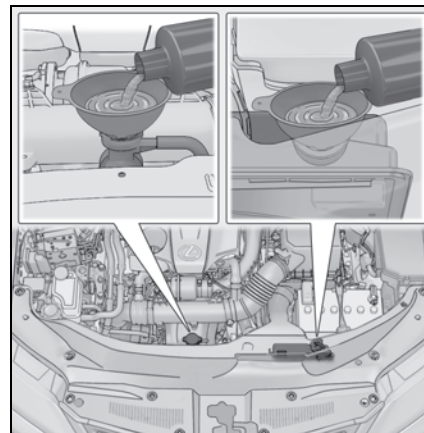


- A** Reservoir
- B** "FULL" line
- C** "LOW" line

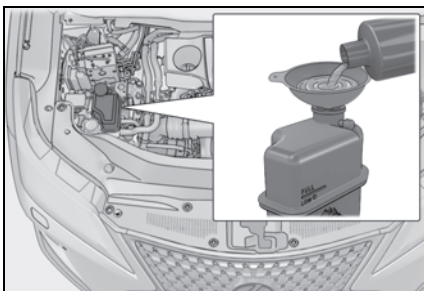
- 5** Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

► Engine



► Intercooler (RX300 only)



- 6** Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fans operate and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

- 7** If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fans are operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.
- 8** Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:
Stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the message is not displayed:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

 WARNING

■ **When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap and the coolant reservoir caps while the engine and radiator are hot. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ **To prevent damage to the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust, etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

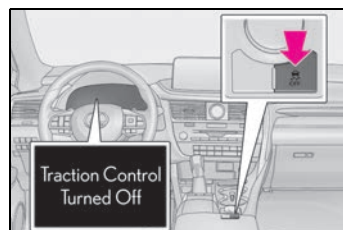
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

- 1 Stop the engine. Shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.
- 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
- 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
- 4 Restart the engine.
- 5 AWD models: Activate all-wheel drive lock mode. (→P.362)
- 6 Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press  to turn off TRC.



WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.



NOTICE

■ To avoid damage to the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications

8

545

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level,
etc.) 546

Fuel information 558

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 559

8-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 573

8

Vehicle specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4890 mm (192.5 in.) ^{*1} 5000 mm (196.9 in.) ^{*2}
Overall width		1895 mm (74.6 in.)
Overall height ^{*3}	Except for Korea	1690 mm (66.5 in.) ^{*1, 4} 1710 mm (67.3 in.) ^{*1, 5} 1700 mm (67.0 in.) ^{*2, 4} 1720 mm (67.7 in.) ^{*2, 5}
	For Korea	1720 mm (67.7 in.)
Wheelbase		2790 mm (109.8 in.)
Tread	Front	1640 mm (64.6 in.) ^{*6} 1635 mm (64.4 in.) ^{*7}
	Rear	1630 mm (64.2 in.) ^{*6} 1625 mm (64.0 in.) ^{*7}

^{*1}: RX300/RX350

^{*2}: RX350L

^{*3}: Unladen vehicle

^{*4}: Vehicles without roof antenna

^{*5}: Vehicles with roof antenna

^{*6}: Except for Korea

^{*7}: For Korea

Weights (for South Africa)

Gross vehicle mass		2575 kg (5676 lb.) ^{*1} 2720 kg (5997 lb.) ^{*2}
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1360 kg (2998 lb.)
	Rear	1590 kg (3505 lb.)
Drawbar load		80 kg (176 lb.)

Towing capacity	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)
	With brake	2000 kg (4409 lb.)

*1: RX350

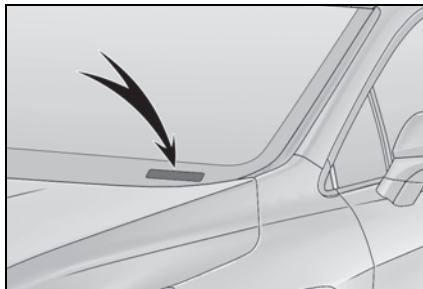
*2: RX350L

Vehicle identification

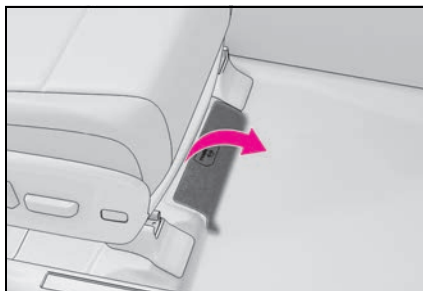
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.



This number is also on the Certification Regulation label^{*1} or the manufac-

turer's label^{*2}.



*1: For Korea, GCC countries^{*3}, Lebanon, Jordan, Iraq and Yemen

*2: Except for Korea, GCC countries^{*3}, Lebanon, Jordan, Iraq and Yemen

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries^{*}, Lebanon, Jordan, Iraq and Yemen)

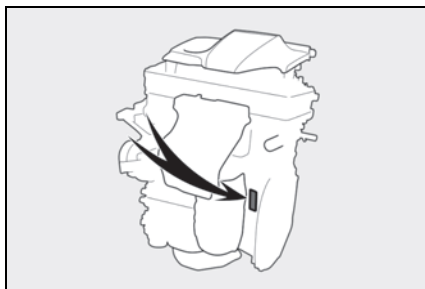
The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

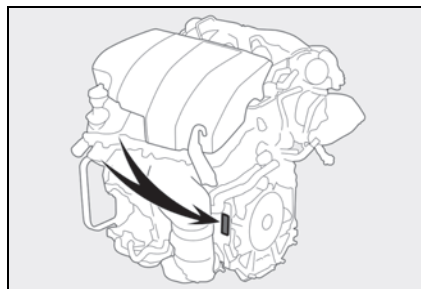
■ Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ RX300



▶ RX350/RX350L



Engine

▶ RX300

Model	8AR-FTS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	86.0 × 86.0 mm (3.39 × 3.39 in.)
Displacement	1998 cm ³ (121.9 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ RX350/RX350L

Model	2GR-FKS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	3456 cm ³ (210.9 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed ^{*1}	200 km/h (124 mph)

Maximum torque (NET) ^{*1}	370 N•m@4600 — 4700 rpm ^{*3} 358 N•m@4600 — 4700 rpm ^{*4}
Maximum output (NET) ^{*1}	221 kW@6300 rpm ^{*3} 216 kW@6300 rpm ^{*4}

^{*1}: For vehicles with model code ^{*2} that has "V" as the last letter

^{*2}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.547)

^{*3}: RX350

^{*4}: RX350L

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.) ^{*1} 72.5 L (19.2 gal., 15.9 Imp. gal.) ^{*2}

^{*1}: Except for Korea

^{*2}: For Korea

Lubrication system

► RX300

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill—reference ^{*})

With filter	4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp. qt.)

^{*}: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

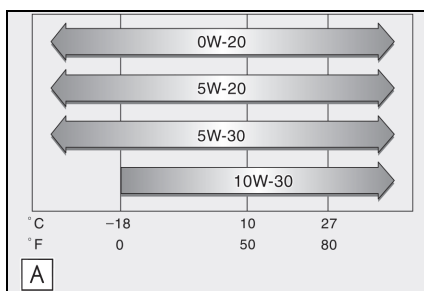
Oil grade:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Viscosity grade:

SAE 0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

If you use SAE 10W-30 engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.

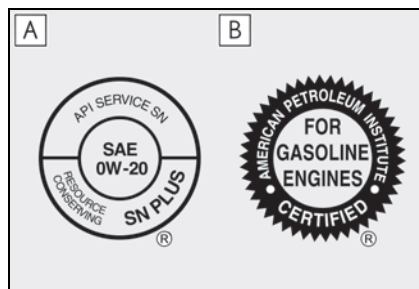
Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to

help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

► RX350/RX350L

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill—reference*)

With filter	► RX350 (for Korea)
	5.4 L (5.7 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	► RX350/RX350L (except for Korea)
	5.5 L (5.8 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	5.3 L (5.6 qt., 4.7 Imp. qt.)

* : The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and

check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

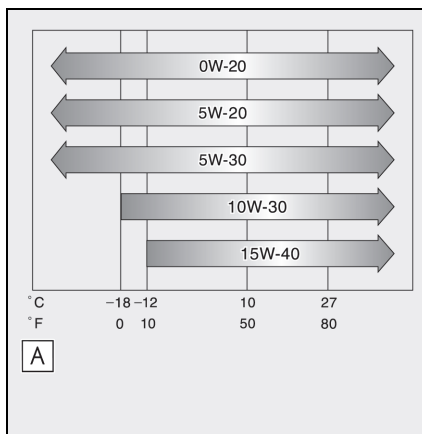
0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40:

API grade SL, SM, SN or SN PLUS multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become

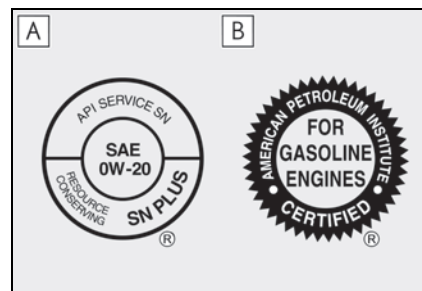
difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity ^{*1}	RX300	► Gasoline engine 8.7 L (9.2 qt., 7.7 Imp. qt.) ► Intercooler 3.2 L (3.4 qt., 2.8 Imp. qt.)
	RX350	9.0 L (9.5 qt., 7.9 Imp. qt.)^{*2} 9.9 L (10.5 qt., 8.7 Imp. qt.)^{*3}
	RX350L	12.4 L (13.1 qt., 11.0 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

^{*1}: The coolant capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

^{*2}: For GGL25L-AWZGBA models ^{*4}

^{*3}: Except for GGL25L-AWZGBA models ^{*4}

^{*4}: The model code is indicated on the Certification Regulation label or the manufacturer's label. (→P.547)

Ignition system (spark plug)

Make	RX300	NGK DILFR7K9G
	RX350/RX350L	DENSO FK20HBR8
Gap	RX300	0.9 mm (0.04 in.)
	RX350/RX350L	0.8 mm (0.03 in.)

**NOTICE**

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system (battery)

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 — 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 — 1.200 Half charged 1.060 — 1.100 Discharged (Turn the engine switch off and turn on the headlights for 20 to 30 seconds.)
Charging rates	
Quick charge	15 A max.
Slow charge	5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	RX300	6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.)
	RX350/RX350L	6.8 L (7.2 qt., 6.0 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS	

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

**NOTICE**

■ **Transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.8 L (0.8 qt., 0.7 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent

of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Rear differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance *	▶ Left-hand drive vehicles 86 mm (3.4 in.) Min. ▶ Right-hand drive vehicles 105 mm (4.1 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1.0 — 6.0 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

* : Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
-----------	---------------------------

Tires and wheels (for Korea)

▶ Type A

Tire manufacturer	Michelin
Tire rolling resistance rating (5 levels)*	2
Tire wet grip rating (5 levels)*	3

Tire size	235/65R18 106V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 33 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 33 psi) Driving at high speeds (above 160 km/h [100 mph]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 5 psi) to the front and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	18 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

* : A rating closer to “1” indicates higher performance.

► Type B

Tire manufacturer	Michelin
Tire rolling resistance rating (5 levels)*	2
Tire wet grip rating (5 levels)*	3
Tire size	235/55R20 102V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 33 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 33 psi) Driving at high speeds (above 160 km/h [100 mph]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm² or bar, 11 psi) to the front and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	20 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

* : A rating closer to “1” indicates higher performance.

▶ Compact spare tire

Tire size	T165/90D18 107M
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	18 × 4T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Tires and wheels (except for Korea)

▶ Type A

Tire size	235/65R18 106V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)* 250 (2.5, 36)*	230 (2.3, 33)* 250 (2.5, 36)*
Wheel size	18 × 8J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

* : The tire inflation pressure is specified on the tire-loading information label. (→P.475)

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/55R20 102V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)	300 (3.0, 44)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)

Wheel size	20 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

► Compact spare tire (if equipped)

Tire size	T165/90D18 107M
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	18 × 4T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Front turn signal lights ^{*1}	21	A
	Rear turn signal lights ^{*1}	21	A
	Back-up lights ^{*1}	16	B
Interior	Door courtesy lights ^{*2}	5	B
	Vanity lights	8	B

A: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

B: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

^{*1}: Vehicles with single-beam headlights

^{*2}: Vehicles without door trim ornament lights

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine (except for Korea)

► Except for Thailand

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

► For Thailand

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 20%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine (for Korea)

- Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.
DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30 (30% ethanol [**A**]), E50 (50% ethanol [**B**]), E85 (85% ethanol [**C**]) (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).



- Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a suitable Research Octane Number.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.



NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100.
The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed by using the meter control switches, the Remote Touch, or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing by using the Remote Touch

- 1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.
- 2 Select "Setup" on the menu screen and select "Vehicle".
- 3 Select "Vehicle customization" or "Drive mode customization".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

This system can also be operated by the touch screen.

For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia

Owner's Manual".

■ Changing by using the meter control switches

- 1 Press < or > to select .
- 2 Operate the meter control switches to select the desired item to be customized.
- 3 According to the display, select the desired setting and then press



To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press .

WARNING

■ During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable Features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

- A** Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch
- B** Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches
- C** Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

■ Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.116, 121, 125)

Function ^{*1}	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language ^{*2}	English	French	–	○	–
		Spanish			
		German ^{*3}			
		Italian ^{*3}			
		Russian ^{*3}			
		Simplified Chinese ^{*3}			
		Arabic ^{*3}			
Units ^{*2}	km (L/100km)	km (km/L)	○	○	–
		miles (MPG) ^{*3}			
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption	Customizable items: →P.127	–	○	–
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)				
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Drive information 3	Average fuel economy (after refuel)				
	Elapsed time (after start)				
Clock	12-hour display	24-hour display	–	○	–
Pop-up display	On	Off	–	○	–
Accent color ^{*4}	Color 1	Color 2	○	○	–
Needle ^{*5}	Color 1	Color 2	–	○	–
		Color 3			

Function ^{*1}	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Rev indicator ^{*5}	5000 r/min.	2000 - 6100 r/min. ^{*6}	-	○	-
		2000 - 6500 r/min. ^{*7}			
		Off			
Rev peak ^{*5}	On	Off	-	○	-
Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	-	○	-
Suggestion function	On	Off	-	-	○

^{*1}: For details about each function: →P.131

^{*2}: The default setting varies according to country.

^{*3}: The customized setting varies according to country.

^{*4}: Except F SPORT models

^{*5}: F SPORT models

^{*6}: RX300

^{*7}: RX350

■ Head-up Display^{*} (→P.134)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Gauge information	No content	Eco Driving Indicator	-	○	-
		Tachometer			
Route guidance to destination/street name	On	Off	-	○	-
Driving support system display	On	Off	-	○	-
Compass	On	Off	-	○	-
Audio system operation status	On	Off	-	○	-

^{*}: If equipped

■ Door lock (→P.146, 534)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key *	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	All doors unlocked in one step	–	–	○
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	○	–	○
Shift position linked door locking function	Off	On	○	–	○
Shift position linked door unlocking function *	Off	On	○	–	○
Driver's door linked door unlocking function *	Off	On	○	–	○

* : The default setting varies according to country.

■ Power back door * (→P.154)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Power back door	On	Off	–	○	–
Power back door opening position	5	1 to 5	○	–	–
Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1	–	○	–
		Level 2			
Kick sensor *	On	Off	–	○	–
Hands free close & lock function *	Off	On	–	–	○

* : If equipped

■ Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.146, 166)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation buzzer volume ^{*1}	5	Off	○	-	○
		1 to 7			
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	○	-	○
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	Off ^{*2}	-	-	○
		60 seconds			
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	-	-	○

^{*1}: Except for Malaysia

^{*2}: For Korea

■ Smart entry & start system (→P.146, 166)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	○	-	○
Smart door unlocking [*]	Driver's door	All the doors	○	-	○
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times	As many as desired	-	-	○

^{*}: The default setting varies according to countries.

■ Wireless remote control (→P.144, 146, 154)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control	On	Off	-	-	○
Unlocking operation ^{*1}	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	All doors unlocked in one step	○	-	○
Panic function ^{*2}	On	Off	-	-	○

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Opening/closing of the power back door ^{*2} using the  switch of the wireless remote control	Open: Press for 1 second with the back door unlocked Close: Press for 1 second	Off	–	–	○
		Open: One short press with the back door unlocked Close: One short press			
		Open: Press twice with the back door unlocked Close: Press twice			
		Open: Press twice ^{*3} Close: Press twice			
		Open: Press for 1 second ^{*3} Close: Press for 1 second			
Door unlocked when the power back door ^{*2} is opened using the  switch of the wireless remote control ^{*4}	All the doors	Back door	–	–	○

^{*1}: The default setting varies according to countries.

^{*2}: If equipped

^{*3}: This setting enables opening of the power back door when it is locked or unlocked.

^{*4}: This function is available only when a customized setting that enables opening of the power back door when it is either locked or unlocked is selected. (See ^{*3} above.)

■ Driving position memory* (→P.193)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Standard	Off	○	–	○
		Partial			
Selecting doors linked to the memory recall function	Driver's door	All doors	–	–	○

*: If equipped

■ Steering wheel (→P.199)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Auto tilt away function	On	Off	–	–	○

■ Outside rear view mirrors (→P.201)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation	Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	–	–	○
		Linked to operation of the engine switch			

■ Power windows, and moon roof^{*1} or panoramic moon roof^{*1} (→P.204, 207, 209)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	○
Wireless remote control linked operation ^{*2}	Off	On	–	–	○
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer) ^{*2}	On	Off	–	–	○

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Except for Korea

■ Moon roof^{*1} (→P.207)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used (open only)	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	○
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used (open only) ^{*2}	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	○

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Except for Korea

■ Turn signal lever (→P.238)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	5	-	-	○
		7			
		Off			

■ Automatic light control system (→P.244)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	○	-	○
Time elapsed before head-lights automatically turn on *	Standard	Long	-	-	○
Time elapsed before head-lights turn off (follow me home system) *	30 seconds	60 seconds	-	-	○
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

* : On some models

■ Lights (→P.244)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Daytime running lights	On	Off*	○	-	○
Welcome lighting	On	Off	-	-	○

* : On some models

■ AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*¹ (→P.247)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Adaptive High-beam System	On	Off* ²	-	-	○
Clearance between a vehicle ahead and the shaded high beams	Standard	Narrow	-	-	○
		Wide			

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Brightness and illuminated area adjustment of the high beams according to the vehicle speed	Operates at approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more	Operates at approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more	–	–	○
		Operates at approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or more			
Intensity adjustment of the high beams when driving around a curve (illuminates the area in the direction vehicle is turning more brightly)	On	Off	–	–	○
Projection distance adjustment of the low beams according to the distance to a preceding vehicle	On	Off	–	–	○

*1: If equipped

*2: The headlights will operate under Automatic High Beam control. (→P.251)

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers* (→P.255)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wiper operation when the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position	Rain-sensing operation	Intermittent operation linked to vehicle speed (with interval adjuster)	–	–	○

*: If equipped

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System)* (→P.270)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	On	Off	–	○	–
Adjust alert timing	Middle	Early	–	○	–
		Late			

*: If equipped

■ LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)* (→P.278)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lane centering function	On	Off	–	○	–
Steering assist function	On	Off	–	○	–
Alert type	Steering wheel vibration	Buzzer	–	○	–
Alert sensitivity	High	Standard	–	○	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On	Off	–	○	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	High	–	○	–
		Low			

*: If equipped

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)* (→P.287)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering assist function	On	Off	–	○	–
Alert type	Steering wheel vibration	Buzzer	–	○	–
Alert sensitivity	High	Standard	–	○	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On	Off	–	○	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	High	–	○	–
		Low			

*: If equipped

■ Stop & Start system* (→P.314)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Standard	Extended	–	○	–

*: If equipped

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)* (→P.320)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	On	Off	–	○	–
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	Bright	Dim	–	○	–
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)	Intermediate	Early	–	○	–
		Late			
		Only when vehicle detected in blind spot			

*: If equipped

■ PKSA (Parking support alert)* (→P.330)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	–	○	–
		Level 3			

*: If equipped

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor* (→P.332)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On	Off	–	○	–

*: If equipped

■ RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) function* (→P.339)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) function	On	Off	–	○	–
RCTA buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	–	○	–
		Level 3			

*: If equipped

■ PKSB (Parking Support Brake)* (→P.344)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) function	On	Off	–	○	–

*: If equipped

■ Driving mode select switch (→P.360)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in customized mode*	Normal	Power	○	–	–
		Eco			
Chassis control in customized mode*	Normal	Sport	○	–	–
Air conditioning operating in customized mode*	Normal	Eco	○	–	–

*: If equipped

■ Front automatic air conditioning system (→P.384)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	○	–	○
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	○	–	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*	Standard	-3 to 3	○	–	○

*: If equipped

■ Seat heaters*/seat ventilators* (→P.399)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○
Front passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	–	○

* : If equipped

■ Illumination (→P.402)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	-	○
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	-	-	○
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	-	-	○
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	-	-	○
Footwell lights and front center console light	On	Off	-	-	○
Instrument panel ornament light* and door trim ornament lights*	On	Off	-	-	○
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	-	○
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	-	-	○
Operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	-	-	○
Operation of the outer foot lights when a door is opened	On	Off	-	-	○
Fading out of the outer foot lights when they turn off	Long	Short	-	-	○

* : If equipped

■ Seat belt reminder (→P.505)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer *	On	Off	–	–	○

* : If equipped

■ Vehicle customization

- When the speed linked door locking function and shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
 - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
 - If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function will not operate.
 - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
- When the smart entry & start system is off, smart door unlocking cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operational signal (Emergency flashers) function setting.
- Some settings can be changed using a switch or the Remote Touch. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the Remote Touch until the engine switch is turned off and then to IGNITION ON mode.

■ Clock settings screen

If the clock adjustment screen is displayed continuously when attempting to change the clock settings, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system *	• When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed • When changing the tire size • When rotating the tires	P.473
Oil maintenance *	• After the maintenance is performed	P.458
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) *	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.349
Power back door *	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.161

* : If equipped

Index

575

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)	576
Alphabetical Index	579

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.533)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.533)



The electronic key does not operate properly

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.482)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.231)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your per-

son.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.168)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?

The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P.149)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.229)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.229)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.167)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P.230)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?

In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.536)

- Is the battery discharged? (→P.537)



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode (→P.234)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P.230)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.206)



The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.231)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the passengers wearing

the seat belts? (→P.508)

- The parking brake indicator is on
Is the parking brake released? (→P.239)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.505, 514)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle* during setting the alarm?

The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P.110)

* : If the vehicle is equipped with intrusion sensor.

Do one of the following to stop the alarm:

- ▶ Except for Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia:
- Unlock the doors.
- Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine.
- ▶ For Malaysia, South Africa, Egypt and Mongolia:
- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Start the engine.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.514)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.505, 514.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.517)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.544)

Alphabetical Index

A

A/C	
Air conditioning filter.....	478
Front automatic air conditioning system	384
Pollen removal mode	391
Rear automatic air conditioning system	396
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	364
Warning light.....	506
ACA (Active Cornering Assist).....	364
Active Cornering Assist (ACA).....	364
Adaptive High-beam System	247
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS)	365
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)...	247
Air conditioning filter.....	478
Air conditioning system	
Air conditioning filter.....	478
Front automatic air conditioning system	384
Pollen removal mode	391
Rear automatic air conditioning system	396
Airbags	
Airbag operating conditions.....	47
Airbag precautions for your child.....	50
Correct driving posture	39
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions	47
Curtain shield airbag precautions.....	50
Front passenger occupant classification system	53
General airbag precautions	50
Locations of airbags.....	44
Modification and disposal of airbags	52
Side airbag operating conditions.....	47
Side airbag precautions	50
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions.....	47

Side and curtain shield airbags precautions	50
SRS airbags.....	44
SRS warning light.....	506
Alarm	110
Warning buzzer	505
Antennas (smart entry & start system).....	166
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	364
Warning light.....	506
Approach warning	300, 309
Armrest.....	421
Assist grips.....	422
Audio system-linked display	130
Automatic headlight leveling system...	245
Automatic High Beam.....	251
Automatic light control system	245
Automatic transmission.....	233
M mode	236
Paddle shift switches.....	235, 236
Auxiliary boxes.....	410, 413
Average fuel economy	127
Average vehicle speed.....	127
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System).....	365
AWD Control	128

B

Back door.....	151, 154
Smart entry & start system	152
Back-up light	
Wattage.....	557
Back-up lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	487, 491
Battery	
Battery checking	460
If the battery is discharged	537
Preparing and checking before winter	370
Warning light	505
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM).....	320

Boost gauge	128
Bottle holders	409
Brake	
Brake hold	242
Fluid	554
Parking brake	239
Warning light	505
Brake assist	364
Break-in tips	217
Brightness control	
Instrument panel light control	124
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	320
Buzzer	
Hands off steering wheel warning (LTA)	286

C

Card key	142
Care	
Aluminum wheels	432
Exterior	432
Interior	435
Seat belts	435
Cargo capacity	222
Cargo hooks	411
Cargo net hooks	411
Center Display	380
Chains	371
Child restraint system	
Fixed with a seat belt	101
Front passenger occupant classification system	53
Points to remember	61, 96
Riding with children	60
Types of child restraint system installation method	98
Using a top tether anchorage	104
Child safety	
Airbag precautions	50
Back door precautions	151

Battery precautions	462, 540
Child restraint system	61, 98
Heated steering wheel and seat heater precautions	399
How your child should wear the seat belt	42
Installing child restraints	61
Moon roof precautions	208
Panoramic moon roof precautions	211
Power back door precautions	154
Power window lock switch	206
Power window precautions	205
Rear door child-protectors	149
Removed electronic key battery precautions	483
Seat belt precautions	60
Child-protectors	149
Cleaning	
Aluminum wheels	432
Exterior	432
Interior	435
Radar sensor	265
Seat belts	435
Clock	121, 422
Coat hooks	422
Coin box	410
Condenser	460
Console box	407
Consumption screen	138
Cooling system	459
Engine overheating	541
Cornering lights	247
Replacing light bulbs	487
Cruise control	
Dynamic radar cruise control	304
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range	295
Warning message	313
Cup holders	408
Current fuel consumption	127
Curtain shield airbags	44

Customizable features 559

D

Daytime running light system.....244

Defogger

Outside rear view mirrors..... 386

Rear window 386

Windshield..... 386

Differential

Rear differential oil.....554

Dimension546

Display

Center Display 380

Dynamic radar cruise control304

Dynamic radar cruise control with
full-speed range.....295

Head-up display.....134

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering
control).....291

Lexus parking assist-sensor.....332

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist).....283

Multi-information display125

RCTA.....339

Warning message..... 514

Distance until next engine oil change... 124

Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 438

Door courtesy lights 402

Wattage.....557

Door lock

Back door 151

Power back door..... 154

Side doors 146

Smart entry & start system..... 166

Wireless remote control.....144

Door pockets..... 409

Doors

Automatic door locking and unlocking
system150

Door glasses204

Door lock warning buzzer.....147

Open door warning buzzer..... 149

Outside rear view mirrors..... 201

Rear door child-protectors..... 149

Side doors 146

Double locking system109

Drive distance..... 127

Driver's seat position memory

Driving position memory193

Memory recall function.....195

Power easy access system193

Drive-start control 217

Driving

Break-in tips.....217

Correct driving posture39

Driving mode select switch360

Eco-friendly driving tips.....373

Procedures..... 216

Winter drive tips370

Driving assist system information.....130

Driving information display..... 127

Driving position memory193

Memory recall function.....195

Power easy access system193

Driving range..... 127

Dynamic radar cruise control 304

Warning message..... 310

Dynamic radar cruise control with

full-speed range.....295

Warning message..... 302

Dynamic Torque Control AWD system

.....364

E

Eco Driving Indicator128, 138

Eco Driving Indicator Light..... 128

Eco-friendly driving tips373

EDR (Event data recorder).....7, 8

Elapsed time..... 127

Electric Power Steering (EPS).....364

Warning light 507

F

Footwell light.....	402
Front automatic air conditioning system	384
Front fog lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Front passenger footwell hooks	424
Front passenger occupant classification system	53
Front seats	
Adjustment.....	179
Cleaning.....	435
Correct driving posture	39
Driving position memory	193
Head restraints.....	196
Memory recall function	195
Power easy access system	193
Seat heaters	399
Seat position memory	193
Seat ventilators.....	399
Front turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Turn signal lever	238
Wattage.....	557
Fuel	
Capacity	549
Fuel gauge.....	121
Fuel pump shut off system.....	504
Information.....	558
Refueling	261
Type	549
Warning light.....	507
Fuel consumption	
Average fuel economy	127
Current fuel consumption.....	127
Fuel filler door	
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened	533
Refueling	261
Fuel gauge.....	121
Fuel pump shut off system	504
Fuses.....	484

G

Garage door opener.....	425
Gauges.....	121
G-force	129
Glove box	407
Glove box light.....	407
GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system	363
Grocery bag hooks.....	411

H

Hands Free Power Back Door.....	157
Head restraints.....	196
Headlights	
Adaptive High-beam System.....	247
Automatic High Beam system.....	251
Follow me home system	246
Light switch	244
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Head-up display.....	134
Driving information display area	134
Eco Driving Indicator.....	138
HUD (Head-up display) switch.....	135
Navigation system-linked display.....	137
Settings.....	136
Heated steering wheel.....	399
Heaters	
Front automatic air conditioning system	384
Heated steering wheel.....	399
Outside rear view mirrors.....	386
Rear automatic air conditioning system	396
Seat heaters	399
High mounted stoplight	
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Hill-start assist control.....	364
Hood	
Open.....	453

Hooks

Cargo hooks.....	411
Cargo net hooks.....	411
Coat hooks.....	422
Front passenger footwell hooks.....	424
Grocery bag hooks.....	411
Retaining hooks (floor mat).....	38
Horn.....	199
HUD (Head-up display) switch.....	135

I

Identification

Engine.....	547
Vehicle.....	547

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an

emergency.....	496
----------------	-----

Ignition switch (engine switch).....

Auto power off function.....	231
Changing the engine switch modes.....	231
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.....	496

Indicators.....

Initialization

Items to initialize.....	573
Maintenance.....	458
Power windows.....	204
Tire pressure warning system.....	473

Inside rear view mirror.....

Installing a CRS to a front passenger seat

.....	62
-------	----

Instrument panel light control.....

Intercooler.....

Intercooler coolant

Capacity.....	552
Checking.....	459

Interior lights.....

Front interior light.....	402
Rear interior light.....	402

ISOFIX lower anchorage.....

J

Jack

Positioning a floor jack.....	453
Vehicle-equipped jack.....	518

Jack handle.....

Jam protection function

Electronic sunshade.....	210
Moon roof.....	207
Panoramic moon roof.....	210
Power back door.....	161
Power windows.....	204
Rear seats.....	180

K

Keyless entry

Smart entry & start system.....	166
Wireless remote control.....	144

Keys

Battery-saving function.....	167
Electronic key.....	142
Engine switch.....	229
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	534
If you lose your keys.....	533
Key number plate.....	142
Keyless entry.....	144, 166
Mechanical key.....	142
Replacing the battery.....	482
Warning buzzer.....	167
Wireless remote control.....	144

Knee airbags.....

L

Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA)

Operation.....	287
Warning messages.....	294

Lane Tracing Assist (LTA)

Operation.....	278
----------------	-----

Warning messages.....	286
Language (multi-information display)....	131
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)	
Operation.....	287
Warning messages.....	294
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch.....	291
Lever	
Auxiliary catch lever	453
Hood lock release lever	453
Shift lever.....	233
Turn signal lever	238
Wiper lever.....	255
Lexus climate concierge.....	383
Lexus parking assist-sensor.....	330, 332
Function.....	332
Warning message.....	334
Lexus Safety System +	
Adaptive High-beam System.....	247
Automatic High Beam.....	251
Dynamic radar cruise control	304
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range.....	295
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control).....	287
LTA(Lane Tracing Assist)	278
PCS (Pre-Collision System).....	270
License plate lights	
Light switch.....	244
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Light bulbs	
Replacing.....	485
Lights	
Adaptive High-beam System.....	247
Automatic High Beam system.....	251
Fog light switch.....	253
Follow me home system.....	246
Front interior lights.....	403
Front personal lights.....	403
Headlight switch.....	244

Interior lights.....	402
Interior lights list	402
Rear interior lights.....	403
Rear personal lights	403
Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Turn signal lever	238
Vanity lights.....	424
Wattage.....	557
Lock steering column.....	230
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)	
Operation.....	278
Warning messages.....	286
Luggage cover.....	412

M

Maintenance	
Do-it-yourself maintenance.....	451
Maintenance data	546
Maintenance requirements.....	438
Scheduled maintenance.....	440
Malfunction indicator lamp.....	506
Master warning light.....	511
Menu icons	126
Meter	
Clock.....	121
Indicators.....	118
Instrument panel light control.....	124
Meter control switches	126
Meters.....	121
Multi-information display	125
Settings.....	131
Warning lights	505
Warning message.....	514
Mirrors	
Inside rear view mirror	200
Outside rear view mirror defoggers.....	386
Outside rear view mirrors.....	201
Vanity mirrors.....	424

Moon roof

Door lock linked moon roof operation	207
Door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation	211
Jam protection function	207
Operation	207
Multi-information display	125
Audio system-linked display	130
AWD Control	128
Boost gauge	128
Cruise control	312
Drive information	127
Driving assist system information	130
Driving information display	127
Dynamic radar cruise control	304
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range	295
Eco Driving Indicator	128
Engine oil pressure gauge	128
Engine oil temperature gauge	128
G-force	129
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)	291
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)	283
Menu icons	126
Meter control switches	126
Navigation system-linked display	130
Pop-up display	125
Settings	131
Stop & Start system information	130
Suggestion function	132
Tire pressure	466
Warning message	514

N

nanoe™	391
Navigation system-linked display	130, 137
Noise from under vehicle	6

O

"ODO TRIP" switch	124
Odometer	124
Odometer and trip meter display	
Display items	124
"ODO TRIP" switch	124
Pop-up display	124
Oil	
Engine oil	549
Rear differential oil	554
Opener	
Fuel filler door	261
Hood	453
Outer foot lights	
Location	402
Outside door handle lights	402
Outside rear view mirrors	
Adjustment	201
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	320
Folding	202
Linked mirror function when reversing	202
Mirror position memory	193
Outside rear view mirror defoggers	386
RCTA function	339
Outside temperature	121
Overheating	541

P

Paddle shift switches	235, 236
Panic mode	144
Panoramic moon roof	
Jam protection function	210
Operation	209
Parking assist sensors (Lexus parking assist-sensor)	332
Parking brake	
Operation	239
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer	241

Warning light.....	511	Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range)	295
Warning message.....	241	Radiator.....	460
Parking lights		RCTA	
Light switch.....	244	Function	339
Parking Support Brake function (for rear-crossing vehicles).....	356	Warning message.....	340
Function	356	RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert).....	330
Parking Support Brake function (static objects).....	350	RCTA function.....	340
Function	350	Rear automatic air conditioning system	396
PCS (Pre-Collision System)		Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	339
Function	270	Rear door sunshades.....	425
PCS OFF switch.....	272	Rear fog lights	
Warning light.....	510	Switch.....	253
Personal lights	402	Rear seats.....	180
PKSA (Parking Support Alert).....	330	Adjustment.....	181
PKSB (Parking Support Brake)	344	Folding down the rear seatbacks	181
Warning message.....	348	Head restraints.....	196
Pollen removal mode	391	Seat heaters	399
Power back door.....	154	Rear side marker lights	
Hands Free Power Back Door	157	Replacing light bulbs.....	487
Smart entry & start system.....	155	Rear turn signal lights	
Power easy access system.....	193	Replacing light bulbs.....	487, 489
Power outlets.....	422	Turn signal lever	238
Power steering (Electric power steering system)	364	Wattage.....	557
Warning light.....	507	Rear view mirror	
Power windows		Inside rear view mirror	200
Door lock linked window operation.....	205	Outside rear view mirrors.....	201
Jam protection function.....	204	Rear window defogger.....	386
Operation.....	204	Rear window wiper	260
Window lock switch.....	206	Refueling	
Pre-Collision System (PCS)		Capacity	549
Function	270	Fuel types	549
PCS OFF switch.....	272	If the fuel filler door cannot be opened	533
Warning light.....	510	Opening the fuel tank cap.....	261
		Remote Touch.....	378
		Replacing	
		Electronic key battery.....	482
		Fuses.....	484
		Light bulbs	485

R

Radar cruise control.....	304
---------------------------	-----

Tires	517
Rev indicator	122
Rev peak	123

S

Seat belt reminder light	508
Seat belts	40
Child restraint system installation	61, 98
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt	435
Emergency Locking Retractor	42
How to wear your seat belt	41
How your child should wear the seat belt	42
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use	41
Reminder light and buzzer	508
Seat belt pretensioners	43
SRS warning light	506
Seat heaters	399
Seat position memory	193
Seat ventilators	399
Seats	
Adjustment	179, 181
Adjustment precautions	179, 180
Child seats/child restraint system installation	61, 96
Cleaning	435
Driving position memory	193
Folding down the rear seatbacks	181
Head restraints	196
Power easy access system	193
Properly sitting in the seat	39
Seat heaters	399
Seat position memory	193
Seat ventilators	399
Sensor	
Automatic headlight system	245
Automatic High Beam system	251
Inside rear view mirror	201

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)	287
Lexus parking assist-sensor	332
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)	278
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)	356
Parking Support Brake function (static objects)	351
Radar sensor	264, 326
Rain-sensing windshield wipers	257
RCTA	340
Shift lever	
Automatic transmission	233
Shift lever light	402
Side airbags	44
Side doors	146
Side mirrors	
Adjustment	201
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	320
Folding	202
Linked mirror function when reversing	202
Mirror position memory	193
RCTA function	339
Side turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs	487
Turn signal lever	238
Side windows	204
Smart entry & start system	
Antenna location	166
Entry functions	146, 152, 155
Starting the engine	229
Smartphone holder	407
Snow tires	370
Spare tire	517
Storage location	518
Spark plug	552
Specifications	546
Speedometer	121
Steering lock	
Column lock release	230

Steering lock system warning message	230	HUD (Head-up display) switch	135
Steering wheel		Ignition switch	229
Adjustment	199	Instrument panel light control switches	124
Heated steering wheel	399	Lexus parking assist-sensor switch	333
Meter control switches	126	Light switches	244
Power easy access system	193	LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch	283
Steering wheel position memory	193	Meter control switches	126
Stop & Start system		Moon roof switches	207
Pop-up display	124	"ODO TRIP" switch	124
System information display	130	Outside rear view mirror switches	201
Warning light	509	Paddle shift switches	235, 236
Stop & Start system information display		Panoramic moon roof switches	209
.....	130	Parking brake switch	239
Stop lights		PCS OFF switch	272
Emergency brake signal	365	PKSB (Parking Support Brake) switch	344
Replacing light bulbs	487	Power window switches	204
Storage features	405	RCTA switch	339
Stuck		Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch	384
If the vehicle becomes stuck	544	Seat heater switches	399
Suggestion function	132	Seat ventilator switches	399
Sun visors	424	Stop & Start cancel switch	315
Sunshade		Tilt and telescopic steering control switch	199
Panoramic moon roof	209	Tire pressure warning reset switch	473
Roof	207	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch	295, 304
Switches		VSC OFF switch	365
Adaptive High-beam System switch	248	Window lock switch	206
Automatic High Beam switch	251	Windshield wiper and washer switch	255
Brake Hold switch	242	Windshield wiper de-icer switch	389
Door lock switches	148		
Driving mode select switch	360		
Driving position memory switches	193		
Dynamic radar cruise control switch	304		
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range switch	295		
Electronic sunshade switch	209		
Emergency flashers switch	496		
Engine switch	229		
Fog light switch	253		
Garage door opener switches	425		
Heated steering wheel switch	399		

T

Tachometer	121
Rev indicator	122
Rev peak	123

- Tail lights
 - Light switch 244
 - Replacing light bulbs 487
 - The Secondary Collision Brake 365
 - Theft deterrent system
 - Alarm 110
 - Double locking system 109
 - Engine immobilizer system 106
 - Tire inflation pressure
 - Maintenance data 554, 556
 - Tire inflation pressure display function 466
 - Warning light 509
 - Tire pressure display 466
 - Tire pressure warning system
 - Function 466
 - Initializing 473
 - Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 472
 - Registering ID codes 475
 - Warning light 509
 - Tires
 - Chains 371
 - Checking 464
 - If you have a flat tire 517
 - Inflation pressure 475
 - Replacing 517
 - Rotating tires 466
 - Size 554, 556
 - Snow tires 370
 - Spare tire 517
 - Tire inflation pressure display function 466
 - Tire pressure warning system 466
 - Warning light 509
 - Tools 518
 - Top tether anchorage 98, 104
 - Top tether anchorages 90
 - Towing
 - Emergency towing 499
 - Towing eyelet 502
 - Trailer towing 223, 224
 - Traction Control (TRC) 364
 - Trailer Sway Control 364
 - Trailer towing 223, 224
 - Transmission
 - Automatic transmission 233
 - Driving mode select switch 360
 - M mode 236
 - Paddle shift switches 235, 236
 - TRC (Traction Control) 364
 - Trip meters 124
 - Turn signal lights
 - Replacing light bulbs 487
 - Turn signal lever 238
 - Wattage 557
- U
- USB charging ports 416
- V
- Vanity lights 424
 - Wattage 557
 - Vanity mirrors 424
 - VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 365
 - Vehicle data recording 7
 - Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 365
 - Vehicle identification number 547
 - Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 364
 - Ventilators (seat ventilators) 399
 - VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 364
- W
- Warning buzzers
 - Approach warning 300, 309
 - Brake Override System 507
 - Door lock 147
 - Downshifting 236

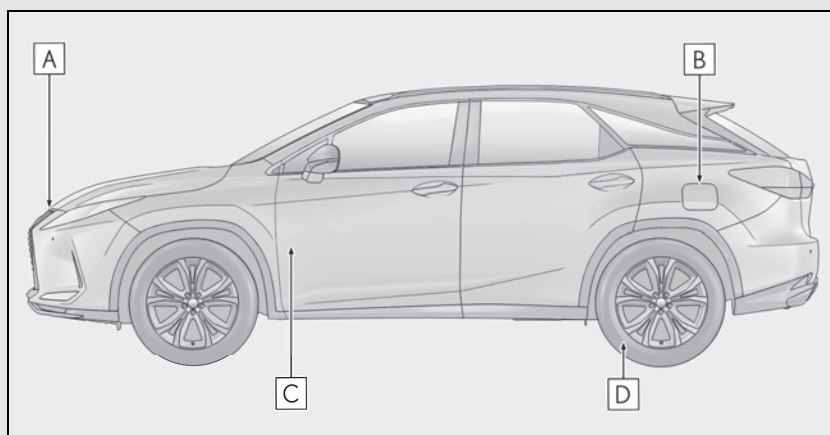
Drive-Start Control	507	Stop & Start cancel indicator	509
Electric power steering	507	Tire pressure	509
Hands off steering wheel warning (LTA)	286	Warning messages.....	514
High coolant temperature	505	Washer	
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control).....	287, 509	Adding.....	463
Lexus parking assist-sensor	338, 509	Preparing and checking before winter	370
Low engine oil pressure.....	506	Switch.....	255
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist).....	278, 281, 509	Washing and waxing	432
Open door.....	149	Weight	
Open window	205	Cargo capacity	222
PKSA (Parking Support Alert)	330	Wheels.....	477
PKSB (Parking Support Brake).....	510	Size.....	554, 556
Pre-collision braking.....	272	Window lock switch.....	206
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)	510	Windows	
Seat belt	508	Power windows	204
Warning lights	505	Rear window defogger.....	386
ABS.....	506	Washer.....	255
Brake hold operated indicator	511	Windshield wiper de-icer	391
Brake Override System	507	Windshield wiper inserts	480
Brake system	505	Windshield wipers	
Charging system.....	505	Position.....	258
Drive-Start Control	507	Rain-sensing windshield wipers	255
Electric power steering	507	Replacing a windshield wiper insert.....	480
High coolant temperature	505	Winter driving tips	370
LDA indicator	509	Wireless charger.....	417
Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indica- tor	509	Wireless remote control	
Low engine oil pressure.....	506	Battery-Saving Function.....	167
Low fuel level	507	Locking/Unlocking.....	144
LTA indicator	509	Replacing the battery	482
Malfunction indicator lamp.....	506		
Master warning light	511		
Parking brake indicator	511		
PKSB OFF indicator	510		
Pre-collision system	510		
RCTA OFF indicator.....	510		
Seat belt reminder light.....	508		
Slip indicator.....	511		
SRS.....	506		

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual” or “Multimedia Owner’s Manual”.

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system

- Rear seat entertainment system
- Panoramic view monitor
- Lexus parking assist monitor

GAS STATION INFORMATION



- A** Auxiliary catch lever (→P.453)
- B** Fuel filler door (→P.262)
- C** Hood lock release lever (→P.453)
- D** Tire inflation pressure (→P.554, 556)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	► Except for Korea	
	72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.)	
	► For Korea	
	72.5 L (19.2 gal., 15.9 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.549
		P.558
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.554
		P.556
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.549
Engine oil type		P.549

Publication No. OM48J33E

Part No. 01999-48J33

Printed in Japan 02-1910-01 

RX 300 / RX 350 / RX 350L (一般E)